

DOCTRINE AND COVENANTS

THE BOOK OF
THE PRESIDENTS OF THE CHURCH



Table of Contents

Sections Glossary

[Sections 1-113 | Joseph Smith Jr. \(1830-1844\)](#)

[Sections 114-131 | Joseph Smith III \(1860-1914\)](#)

[Sections 132-138 | Fredrick M. Smith \(1915-1946\)](#)

[Sections 139-144 | Israel A. Smith \(1946-1958\)](#)

[Sections 145-152 | W. Wallace Smith \(1958-1978\)](#)

[Sections 153-160 | Wallace B. Smith \(1978-1996\)](#)

[Sections 161-162 | W. Grant McMurray \(1996-2004\)](#)

[Sections 163-165 | Stephen M. Veazey \(2005-2025\)](#)

[History of this Edition](#)

[Scripture Affirmations](#)

[Church History Principles](#)

Sections

Sections 1-113 | Joseph Smith Jr. (1830-1844)

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Section 1	Section 31	Section 61	Section 91
Section 2	Section 32	Section 62	Section 92
Section 3	Section 33	Section 63	Section 93
Section 4	Section 34	Section 64	Section 94
Section 5	Section 35	Section 65	Section 95
Section 6	Section 36	Section 66	Section 96
Section 7	Section 37	Section 67	Section 97
Section 8	Section 38	Section 68	Section 98
Section 9	Section 39	Section 69	Section 99
Section 10	Section 40	Section 70	Section 100
Section 11	Section 41	Section 71	Section 101
Section 12	Section 42	Section 72	Section 102
Section 13	Section 43	Section 73	Section 103
Section 14	Section 44	Section 74	Section 104
Section 15	Section 45	Section 75	Section 105
Section 16	Section 46	Section 76	Section 106
Section 17	Section 47	Section 77	Section 107
Section 18	Section 48	Section 78	Section 108
Section 19	Section 49	Section 79	Section 108A
Section 20	Section 50	Section 80	Section 109
Section 21	Section 51	Section 81	Section 110
Section 22	Section 52	Section 82	Section 111
Section 23	Section 53	Section 83	Section 112
Section 24	Section 54	Section 84	Section 113
Section 25	Section 55	Section 85	
Section 26	Section 56	Section 86	
Section 27	Section 57	Section 87	
Section 28	Section 58	Section 88	
Section 29	Section 59	Section 89	
Section 30	Section 60	Section 90	

Sections 114-131 | Joseph Smith III (1860-1914)

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

[Section 114](#)

[Section 119](#)

[Section 124](#)

[Section 129](#)

[Section 115](#)

[Section 120](#)

[Section 125](#)

[Section 130](#)

[Section 116](#)

[Section 121](#)

[Section 126](#)

[Section 131](#)

[Section 117](#)

[Section 122](#)

[Section 127](#)

[Section 118](#)

[Section 123](#)

[Section 128](#)

Sections 132-138 | Fredrick M. Smith (1915-1946)

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

[Section 132](#)

[Section 134](#)

[Section 136](#)

[Section 138](#)

[Section 133](#)

[Section 135](#)

[Section 137](#)

Sections 139-144 | Israel A. Smith (1946-1958)

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

[Section 139](#)

[Section 141](#)

[Section 143](#)

[Section 140](#)

[Section 142](#)

[Section 144](#)

Sections 145-152 | W. Wallace Smith (1958-1978)

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

[Section 145](#)

[Section 148](#)

[Section 150](#)

[Section 146](#)

[Section 149](#)

[Section 151](#)

[Section 147](#)

[Section 149A](#)

[Section 152](#)

Sections 153-160 | Wallace B. Smith (1978-1996)

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

[Section 153](#)

[Section 156](#)

[Section 159](#)

[Section 154](#)

[Section 157](#)

[Section 160](#)

[Section 155](#)

[Section 158](#)

Sections 161-162 | W. Grant McMurray (1996-2004)

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

[Section 161](#)

[Section 162](#)

Sections 163-165 | Stephen M. Veazey (2005-2025)

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

[Section 163](#)

[Section 164](#)

[Section 165](#)

History of this Edition

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Our scriptures tell the story of how we as a people have walked with God to become more peaceful and grow more wise. They are an invaluable resource to every disciple. However, these bold and powerful gems have historically not been made publically available on the internet, and many people who would otherwise be interested in our church did not learn more.

To rectify this problem, on August 22nd, 2021 the Beyond The Walls congregation passed the "Universal Scripture Access" Resolution, which, in full, read:

"Whereas, World Conference Resolution 1216 declares that "A primary purpose of the church is to fulfill Christ's mission of preaching good news to the poor";

Whereas, the Mission Initiative of "Abolish Poverty, End Suffering" specifies that we are to be "reaching out through compassionate ministries that serve the poor";

Whereas, Doctrine and Covenants section 1:6A teaches: "And again, verily I say unto you, O inhabitants of the earth, I, the Lord, am willing to make [the scriptures] known unto all flesh, for I am no respecter of persons";

Whereas, Doctrine and Covenants section 42:15B teaches: "And I give unto you a commandment, that then ye shall teach [the scriptures] unto all men; for they shall be taught unto all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people";

Whereas, Community of Christ currently only makes the Inspired Version of the Bible, the Book of Mormon, and the Doctrine and Covenants available for purchase through Herald House or Amazon;

Whereas, Community of Christ fosters the concept of the worth and equality of all persons and it is important to understand that there are many people whose financial situations bar them from being able to expend the resources to purchase a copy of scriptures, therefore be it

Resolved, That the First Presidency, or a committee it so designates, be directed to explore ways that digital editions of the scriptures be made available for no charge and be easy-to-access through the church's website (or similar platform) in Community of Christ's current three core languages of English, Spanish, and French, and other language translations as they become available."

This resolution went on to be passed at the March 26th, 2022 Canada East Mission Centre Conference, with over 96% of the delegates supporting the Resolution.

After this, the Universal Scripture Access Resolution was discussed on the World Conference floor. It was here that this resolution met its fate, as it did not get passed by only 56 votes (727 for vs 783 against). The rationale was that the delegates from non-english speaking countries wanted to allocate financial resources elsewhere.

Nevertheless, Beyond the Walls and the Canada East Mission Center still passed this resolution, and it was binding upon them. The website Doctrine-and-Covenants.com was a ministry which was created independently by a member of this congregation in order to provide easy access to the Doctrine and Covenants and includes many study helps. All of this was done without expending a single cent of church resources. It was a labor of love of the members of the church who want the scriptures to have greater accessibility.

Scripture Affirmations

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Scripture provides divine guidance and inspired insight for life when responsibly interpreted and faithfully applied. Scripture helps us believe in Jesus Christ. Its witness guides us to eternal life and enables us to grow spiritually, to transform our lives, and to participate actively in the life and ministry of the church.

1

We declare that Jesus Christ—who lived, was crucified, was raised from the dead, and comes again—is the Living Word of God. It is to Christ that scripture points. It is through Christ that we have life (John 5:39–40). It is Christ whom we must hear (Mark 9:7).

2

We find the Living Word in and through scripture. Scripture is the indispensable witness of the saving, transforming message that God has entrusted to the church. The church formed the canon of scripture so that it might always have a way to hear the good news, nurture its faith, measure its life, test its experience, and remember its identity.

3

Scripture is a library of books that speaks in many voices. These books were written in diverse times and places, and reflect the languages, cultures, and conditions under which they were written. God's revelation through scripture does not come to us apart from the humanity of the writers, but in and through that humanity. In the earthen vessels of scripture we have been given the treasure of divine love and grace (2 Corinthians 4:7).

4

Scripture's authority is derived from the model of Christ, who came to be a servant (Mark 10:45). Therefore, the authority of scripture is not the authority to oppress, control, or dominate. If Jesus came to serve, how much more should the books that point to him be treated as a servant of the saving purposes of God.

5

Scripture is vital and essential to the church, but not because it is inerrant (in the sense that every detail is historically or scientifically correct). Scripture makes no such claim for itself. Rather, generations of Christians have found scripture simply to be trustworthy in keeping them anchored in revelation, in promoting faith in Christ, and in nurturing the life of discipleship. For these purposes, scripture is unfailingly reliable (2 Timothy 3:16–17).

6

Faith, experience, tradition, and scholarship each have something to contribute to our understanding of scripture. In wrestling to hear and respond to the witness of scripture, the church must value the light that each of these sources may offer.

7

As the church tries to interpret scripture responsibly, it seeks the help of the Holy Spirit. Jesus promised that the Spirit would guide his disciples into new truth (John 16:12–15). By the Spirit, the ancient words of scripture can become revelatory, allowing us to grasp what may not have been seen or heard before.

8

Disciples are called to grow in their knowledge and understanding of the scriptures so that they may ever increase in love for God, neighbor, and self (Matthew 22:37–40; Mosiah 1:49), uphold the dignity and worth of all persons (Doctrine and Covenants 16:3c–d), and faithfully follow the way of Jesus Christ.

9

With other Christians, we affirm the Bible as the foundational scripture for the church. In addition, Community of Christ uses the Book of Mormon and the Doctrine and Covenants as scripture. We do not use these sacred writings to replace the witness of the Bible or improve upon it, but because they confirm its message that Jesus Christ is the Living Word of God (Preface of the Book of Mormon; Doctrine and Covenants 76:3g). We have heard Christ speak in all three books of scripture, and bear witness that he is “alive forever and ever” (Revelation 1:18).

For our time we shall seek to live and interpret the witness of scripture by the Spirit, with the community, for the sake of mission, in the name of the Prince of Peace.

Church History Principles

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Our principles help guide the church's reflections and discussions on the study of Restoration history. President Steve Veazey provides an introduction to the principles.

1. Continuing Exploration

Continuing exploration of our history is part of identity formation. As a church we seek always to clarify our identity, message, and mission. In our faith story, we see clearly God's Spirit giving this faith community tools, insights, and experiences for divine purposes. A people with a shared memory of their past, and an informed understanding of its meaning, are better prepared to chart their way into the future.

2. History Informs

History informs but does not dictate our faith and beliefs. The foundation and continuing source for our faith is God's revelation in Jesus Christ. Studying history is not about proving or disproving mystical, spiritual, or revelatory experiences that birth or transform religious movements. Sound history informs faith, and healthy faith leads to insights about history. Theology and faith, guided by the Holy Spirit, must play an important role in discovering the enduring meaning of such events as well as the deeper truths found in them. Our understanding of our history affects our faith and beliefs. However, our past does not limit our faith and beliefs to what they were historically.

3. Honest, Responsible Historical Scholarship

The church encourages honest, responsible historical scholarship. Studying history involves related fields. Historians use academic research to get as many facts as they can; then, they interpret those facts to construct as clear a picture as possible of what was going on in the past. This includes analyzing human culture to see how it affected events. Historians try to understand patterns of meaning to interpret what the past means for our future. This process should avoid "presentism," or interpreting the past based on a current worldview and culture instead of the culture of the time.

4. Unfolding Journey

The study of church history is a continuing journey. If we say that a book on history is the only true telling of the story, we risk "canonizing" one version, a tendency we have shown in the past. This blocks further insights from continuing research. Good historical inquiry understands that conclusions are open to correction as new understanding and information comes from ongoing study.

5. Faithfulness and Human Flaws

Seeing both the faithfulness and human flaws in our history makes it more believable and realistic, not less. Our history has stories of great faith and courage that inspire us. Our history also includes human leaders who said and did things that can be shocking to us from our current perspective and culture. Historians try not to judge—instead, they try to understand by learning as much as possible about the context and the meaning of those words and actions at the time. The result is empathy instead of judgment. Our scriptures are consistent in pointing out that God, through grace, uses imperfect people for needed ministry and leadership.

6. Learning, Repentance, and Transformation

The responsible study of church history involves learning, repentance, and transformation. A church with a mission focused on promoting communities of reconciliation, justice, and peace should be self-critical and honest about its history. It is important for us to confess when we have been less than what the gospel of Jesus Christ calls us to be. This honesty prompts us to repent, and it strengthens our integrity. Admitting past mistakes helps us avoid repeating them and frees us from the influences of past injustices and violence in our history. We must be humble and willing to repent, individually and as a community, to contribute as fully as possible to restoring God's shalom on earth.

7. Drawing Our Own Conclusions

The church has a long-standing tradition that it does not legislate or mandate positions on matters of church history. Historians should be free to draw their own conclusions after thorough consideration of evidence. Through careful study and the Holy Spirit's guidance, the church is learning how to accept and responsibly interpret all of its history. This includes putting new information and changing understandings into proper perspective, while emphasizing the parts of our history that continue to play a role in guiding the church's identity and mission today.

8. Foster Dialogue

The study of church history is a continuing journey. If we say that a book on history is the only true telling of the story, we risk "canonizing" one version, a tendency we have shown in the past. This blocks further insights from continuing research. Good historical inquiry understands that conclusions are open to correction as new understanding and information comes from ongoing study.

9. Grounded in God's Revelation

Our faith is grounded in God's revelation in Jesus Christ and the continuing guidance of the Holy Spirit. We must keep our hearts and minds centered on God's revelation in Jesus Christ. As God's Word alive in human history, Jesus Christ was and is the foundation of our faith and the focus of the church's mission and message.

Section 1

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Hearken, O ye people of my church, saith the voice of him who dwells on high, and whose eyes are upon all men; yea, verily I say, Hearken ye people from afar, and ye that are upon the islands of the sea, listen together;

B. for verily the voice of the Lord is unto all men, and there is none to escape, and there is no eye that shall not see, neither ear that shall not hear, neither heart that shall not be penetrated;

C. and the rebellious shall be pierced with much sorrow, for their iniquities shall be spoken upon the housetops, and their secret acts shall be revealed;

D. and the voice of warning shall be unto all people, by the mouths of my disciples, whom I have chosen in these last days, and they shall go forth and none shall stay them, for I the Lord have commanded them.

2

A. Behold, this is mine authority, and the authority of my servants, and my preface unto the book of my commandments, which I have given them to publish unto you, O inhabitants of the earth;

B. wherefore fear and tremble, O ye people, for what I the Lord have decreed, in them, shall be fulfilled.

C. And verily, I say unto you, that they who go forth, bearing these tidings unto the inhabitants of the earth, to them is power given to seal, both on earth and in heaven, the unbelieving and rebellious;

D. yea, verily, to seal them up unto the day when the wrath of God shall be poured out upon the wicked without measure;

E. unto the day when the Lord shall come to recompense unto every man according to his work, and measure to every man according to the measure which he has measured to his fellowman.

3

A. Wherefore the voice of the Lord is unto the ends of the earth, that all that will hear may hear; **B.** prepare ye, prepare ye for that which is to come, for the Lord is nigh; and the anger of the Lord is kindled, and his sword is bathed in heaven, and it shall fall upon the inhabitants of the earth; and the arm of the Lord shall be revealed;

C. and the day cometh that they who will not hear the voice of the Lord, neither the voice of his servants, neither give heed to the words of the prophets and apostles, shall be cut off from among the people;

D. for they have strayed from mine ordinances, and have broken mine everlasting covenant; they seek not the Lord to establish his righteousness,

E. but every man walketh in his own way, and after the image of his own god, whose image is in the likeness of the world, and whose substance is that of an idol, which waxeth old and shall perish in Babylon, even Babylon the great, which shall fall.

4

A. Wherefore I the Lord, knowing the calamity which should come upon the inhabitants of the earth, called upon my servant Joseph Smith, Jr., and spake unto him from heaven, and gave him commandments, and also gave commandments to others, that they should proclaim these things unto the world;

B. and all this that it might be fulfilled, which was written by the prophets;

C. the weak things of the world shall come forth and break down the mighty and strong ones, that man should not counsel his fellowman, neither trust in the arm of flesh, but that every man might speak in the name of God the Lord, even the Savior of the world;

D. that faith also might increase in the earth; that mine everlasting covenant might be established;

E. that the fullness of my gospel might be proclaimed by the weak and the simple, unto the ends of the world, and before kings and rulers.

5

A. Behold, I am God, and have spoken it; these commandments are of me, and were given unto my servants in their weakness, after the manner of their language, that they might come to understanding;

B. and inasmuch as they erred it might be made known; and inasmuch as they sought wisdom they might be instructed;

C. and inasmuch as they sinned they might be chastened, that they might repent; and inasmuch as they were humble, they might be made strong, and blessed from on high, and receive knowledge from time to time; **D.** and after having received the record of the Nephites, yea, even my servant Joseph Smith, Jr., might have power to translate, through the mercy of God, by the power of God, the Book of Mormon;

E. and also those to whom these commandments were given might have power to lay the foundation of this church, and to bring it forth out of obscurity, and out of darkness, the only true

and living church upon the face of the whole earth, with which I the Lord am well pleased, speaking unto the church collectively and not individually;

F. for I the Lord cannot look upon sin with the least degree of allowance; nevertheless, he that repents and does the commandments of the Lord shall be forgiven;

G. and he that repents not, from him shall be taken even the light which he has received, for my Spirit shall not always strive with man, saith the Lord of Hosts.

6

A. And again, verily I say unto you, O inhabitants of the earth, I, the Lord, am willing to make these things known unto all flesh, for I am no respecter of persons,

B. and will that all men shall know that the day speedily cometh—the hour is not yet, but is nigh at hand—when peace shall be taken from the earth, and the Devil shall have power over his own dominion;

C. and also the Lord shall have power over his saints, and shall reign in their midst, and shall come down in judgment upon *Idumea, or the world.

7

Search these commandments, for they are true and faithful, and the prophecies and promises which are in them shall all be fulfilled.

8

A. What I, the Lord, have spoken I have spoken, and I excuse not myself;

B. and though the heavens and the earth pass away, my word shall not pass away, but shall all be fulfilled, whether by mine own voice, or by the voice of my servants, it is the same;

C. for behold, and lo, the Lord is God, and the Spirit beareth record, and the record is true, and the truth abideth for ever and ever. Amen.

*Idumea: Edom (ancient).

Section 2

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. The works, and the designs, and the purposes of God, cannot be frustrated, neither can they come to naught, for God doth not walk in crooked paths;

B. neither doth he turn to the right hand nor to the left;

C. neither doth he vary from that which he hath said; therefore his paths are straight and his course is one eternal round.

2

A. Remember, remember, that it is not the work of God that is frustrated, but the work of men;

B. for although a man may have many revelations, and have power to do many mighty works, yet, if he boast in his own strength, and sets at naught the counsels of God, and follows after the dictates of his own will and carnal desires, he must fall and incur the vengeance of a just God upon him.

3

A. Behold, you have been intrusted with these things, but how strict were your commandments;

B. and remember, also, the promises which were made to you, if you did not transgress them; and, behold, how oft you have transgressed the commandments and the laws of God, and have gone on in the persuasions of men:

C. for, behold, you should not have feared man more than God, although men set at naught the counsels of God, and despise his words, yet you should have been faithful and he would have extended his arm, and supported you against all the fiery darts of the adversary; and he would have been with you in every time of trouble.

4

A. Behold, thou art Joseph, and thou wast chosen to do the work of the Lord, but because of transgression, if thou art not aware thou wilt fall, but remember God is merciful;

B. therefore, repent of that which thou hast done, which is contrary to the commandment which I gave you, and thou art still chosen, and art again called to the work;

C. except thou doest this, thou shalt be delivered up and become as other men, and have no more gift.

5

A. And when thou deliveredst up that which God had given thee sight and power to translate thou deliveredst up that which was sacred into the hands of a wicked man who has set at naught the counsels of God, and has broken the most sacred promises, which were made before God, and has depended upon his own judgment, and boasted in his own wisdom;

B. and this is the reason that thou hast lost thy privileges for a season, for thou hast suffered the counsel of thy director to be trampled upon from the beginning.

6

A. Nevertheless, my work shall go forth, for, inasmuch as the knowledge of a Savior has come unto the world, through the testimony of the Jews, even so shall the knowledge of a Savior come unto my people, and to the Nephites, and the Jacobites, and the Josephites, and the Zoramites, through the testimony of their fathers;

B. and this testimony shall come to the knowledge of the Lamanites, and the Lemuelites, and the Ishmaelites, who dwindled in unbelief because of the iniquity of their fathers, whom the Lord has suffered to destroy their brethren the Nephites, because of their iniquities and their abominations;

C. and for this very purpose are these plates preserved which contain these records, that the promises of the Lord might be fulfilled, which he made to his people;

D. and that the Lamanites might come to the knowledge of their fathers, and that they might know the promises of the Lord,

E. and that they may believe the gospel and rely upon the merits of Jesus Christ, and be glorified through faith in his name, and that through their repentance they might be saved. Amen.

Section 3

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Now, behold, I say unto you, that because you delivered up those writings which you had power given unto you to translate, by the means of the Urim and Thummim, into the hands of a wicked man, you have lost them;

B. and you also lost your gift at the same time, and your mind became darkened;

C. nevertheless, it is now restored unto you again, therefore see that you are faithful and continue on unto the finishing of the remainder of the work of translation as you have begun.

D. Do not run faster, or labor more than you have strength and means provided to enable you to translate;

E. but be diligent unto the end; pray always, that you may come off conqueror; yea, that you may conquer Satan, and that you may escape the hands of the servants of Satan, that do uphold his work.

F. Behold, they have sought to destroy you; yea, even the man in whom you have trusted, has sought to destroy you.

G. And for this cause I said, that he is a wicked man, for he has sought to take away the things wherewith you have been intrusted;

H. and he has also sought to destroy your gift, and because you have delivered the writings into his hands, behold, wicked men have taken them from you; therefore, you have delivered them up; yea, that which was sacred unto wickedness.

I. And, behold, Satan has put it into their hearts to alter the words which you have caused to be written, or which you have translated, which have gone out of your hands;

J. and, behold, I say unto you, that because they have altered the words, they read contrary from that which you translated and caused to be written;

K. and on this wise the Devil has sought to lay a cunning plan, that he may destroy this work; for he has put it into their hearts to do this, that by lying they may say they have caught you in the words which you have pretended to translate.

2

A. Verily I say unto you, that I will not suffer that Satan shall accomplish his evil design in this thing, for, behold, he has put it into their hearts to get thee to tempt the Lord thy God, in asking to translate it over again;

B. and then, behold, they say and think in their hearts, We will see if God has given him power to translate, if so, he will also give him power again; and if God giveth him power again, or if he translate again, or in other words, if he bringeth forth the same words, behold, we have the same with us, and we have altered them;

C. therefore, they will not agree, and we will say that he has lied in his words, and that he has no gift, and that he has no power;

D. therefore, we will destroy him, and also the work, and we will do this that we may not be ashamed in the end, and that we may get glory of the world.

3

A. Verily, verily I say unto you, that Satan has great hold upon their hearts; he stirreth them up to iniquity against that which is good, and their hearts are corrupt, and full of wickedness and abominations, and they love darkness rather than light, because their deeds are evil; therefore they will not ask of me.

B. Satan stirreth them up, that he may lead their souls to destruction.

C. And thus he has laid a cunning plan, thinking to destroy the work of God, but I will require this at their hands, and it shall turn to their shame and condemnation in the day of judgment;

D. yea, he stirreth up their hearts to anger against this work; yea, he saith unto them, Deceive and lie in wait to catch, that ye may destroy; behold, this is no harm;

E. and thus he flattereth them, and telleth them that it is no sin to lie, that they may catch a man in a lie, that they may destroy him; and thus he flattereth them, and leadeth them along until he draggeth their souls down to hell;

F. and thus he causeth them to catch themselves in their own snare; and thus he goeth up and down, to and fro in the earth, seeking to destroy the souls of men.

4

Verily, verily I say unto you, Woe be unto him that lieth to deceive, because he supposes that another lieth to deceive, for such are not exempt from the justice of God.

5

Now, behold, they have altered those words, because Satan saith unto them, He hath deceived you; and thus he flattereth them away to do iniquity, to get thee to tempt the Lord thy God.

6

- A.** Behold, I say unto you, that you shall not translate again those words which have gone forth out of your hands; for, behold, they shall not accomplish their evil designs in lying against those words.
- B.** For, behold, if you should bring forth the same words they will say that you have lied; that you have pretended to translate, but that you have contradicted yourself;
- C.** and, behold, they will publish this, and Satan will harden the hearts of the people to stir them up to anger against you, that they will not believe my words.
- D.** Thus Satan thinketh to overpower your testimony in this generation, that the work may not come forth in this generation;
- E.** but, behold, here is wisdom, and because I show unto you wisdom, and give you commandments concerning these things, what you shall do, show it not unto the world until you have accomplished the work of translation.

7

- A.** Marvel not that I said unto you, Here is wisdom, show it not unto the world; for I said, Show it not unto the world, that you may be preserved.
- B.** Behold, I do not say that you shall not show it unto the righteous; but as you cannot always judge the righteous, or as you cannot always tell the wicked from the righteous;
- C.** therefore, I say unto you, Hold your peace until I shall see fit to make all things known unto the world concerning the matter.

8

- A.** And now, verily I say unto you, that an account of those things that you have written, which have gone out of your hands, are engraven upon the plates of Nephi;
- B.** yea, and you remember, it was said in those writings, that a more particular account was given of these things upon the plates of Nephi.

9

- A.** And now, because the account which is engraven upon the plates of Nephi, is more particular concerning the things which in my wisdom I would bring to the knowledge of the people in this account,

B. therefore, you shall translate the engravings which are on the plates of Nephi, down even till you come to the reign of King Benjamin, or until you come to that which you have translated, which you have retained;

C. and, behold, you shall publish it as the record of Nephi, and thus I will confound those who have altered my words.

D. I will not suffer that they shall destroy my work; yea, I will show unto them that my wisdom is greater than the cunning of the Devil.

10

A. Behold, they have only got a part, or an abridgment of the account of Nephi.

B. Behold, there are many things engraven on the plates of Nephi, which do throw greater views upon my gospel; therefore, it is wisdom in me, that you should translate this first part of the engravings of Nephi, and send forth in this work.

C. And, behold, all the remainder of this work, does contain all those parts of my gospel which my holy prophets, yea, and also my disciples, desired in their prayers, should come forth unto this people.

D. And I said unto them, that it should be granted unto them according to their faith in their prayers;

E. yea, and this was their faith, that my gospel which I gave unto them, that they might preach in their days, might come unto their brethren, the Lamanites, and also, all that had become Lamanites, because of their dissensions.

11

A. Now this is not all, their faith in their prayers was, that this gospel should be made known also, if it were possible that other nations should possess this land;

B. and thus they did leave a blessing upon this land in their prayers, that whosoever should believe in this gospel, in this land, might have eternal life;

C. yea, that it might be free unto all of whatsoever nation, kindred, tongue, or people, they may be.

12

And now, behold, according to their faith in their prayers, will I bring this part of my gospel to the knowledge of my people. Behold, I do not bring it to destroy that which they have received, but to build it up.

13

A. And for this cause have I said, If this generation harden not their hearts, I will establish my church among them.

B. Now I do not say this to destroy my church, but I say this to build up my church; therefore, whosoever belongeth to my church need not fear, for such shall inherit the kingdom of heaven;

C. but it is they who do not fear me, neither keep my commandments, but build up churches unto themselves, to get gain; yea, and all those that do wickedly, and build up the kingdom of the Devil;

D. yea, verily, verily I say unto you, that it is they that I will disturb, and cause to tremble and shake to the center.

14

A. Behold, I am Jesus Christ, the Son of God. I came unto my own, and my own received me not.

B. I am the light which shineth in darkness, and the darkness comprehendeth it not.

C. I am he who said, Other sheep have I which are not of this fold, unto my disciples, and many there were that understood me not.

15

A. And I will show unto this people, that I had other sheep, and that they were a branch of the house of Jacob; and I will bring to light their marvelous works, which they did in my name;

B. yea, and I will also bring to light my gospel, which was ministered unto them, and, behold, they shall not deny that which you have received, but they shall build it up, and shall bring to light the true points of my doctrine; yea, and the only doctrine which is in me;

C. and this I do, that I may establish my gospel, that there may not be so much contention;

D. yea, Satan doth stir up the hearts of the people to contention, concerning the points of my doctrine; and in these things they do err, for they do wrest the Scriptures, and do not understand them;

E. therefore, I will unfold unto them this great mystery; for, behold, I will gather them as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, if they will not harden their hearts; yea, if they will come, they may, and partake of the waters of life freely.

16

A. Behold, this is my doctrine: Whosoever repenteth and cometh unto me, the same is my church;

B. whosoever declareth more or less than this, the same is not of me, but is against me; therefore, he is not of my church.

17

And now, behold, whosoever is of my church, and endureth of my church to the end, him will I establish upon my Rock, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against him.

18

And now, remember the words of him who is the life and light of the world, your Redeemer, your Lord, and your God. Amen.

Section 4

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

- A.** Now, behold, a marvelous work is about to come forth among the children of men,
- B.** therefore, O ye that embark in the service of God, see that ye serve him with all your heart, might, mind, and strength, that ye may stand blameless before God at the last day;
- C.** therefore, if ye have desires to serve God, ye are called to the work, for, behold, the field is white already to harvest,
- D.** and lo, he that thrusteth in his sickle with his might, the same layeth up in store that he perish not, but bringeth salvation to his soul;
- E.** and faith, hope, charity, and love, with an eye single to the glory of God, qualifies him for the work.

2

- A.** Remember, faith, virtue, knowledge, temperance, patience, brotherly kindness, godliness, charity, humility, diligence.
- B.** Ask and ye shall receive, knock and it shall be opened unto you. Amen.

Section 5

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Behold, I say unto you, that as my servant Martin Harris has desired a witness at my hand, that you, my servant Joseph Smith, Jr., have got the plates of which you have testified and borne record that you have received of me;

B. and now, behold, this shall you say unto him: He who spake unto you said unto you, I, the Lord, am God, and have given these things unto you, my servant Joseph Smith, Jr., and have commanded you that you should stand as a witness of these things,

C. and I have caused you that you should enter into a covenant with me, that you should not show them except to those persons to whom I command you; and you have no power over them except I grant it unto you.

D. And you have a gift to translate the plates, and this is the first gift that I bestowed upon you, and I have commanded that you should pretend to no other gift until my purpose is fulfilled in this; for I will grant unto you no other gift until it is finished.

2

A. Verily, I say unto you, that woe shall come unto the inhabitants of the earth if they will not hearken unto my words;

B. for hereafter you shall be ordained and go forth and deliver my words unto the children of men.

C. Behold, if they will not believe my words, they would not believe you, my servant Joseph, if it were possible that you could show them all these things which I have committed unto you.

D. Oh, this unbelieving and stiff-necked generation, mine anger is kindled against them!

3

A. Behold, verily, I say unto you, I have reserved those things which I have intrusted unto you, my servant Joseph, for a wise purpose in me, and it shall be made known unto future generations; but this generation shall have my word through you;

B. and in addition to your testimony, the testimony of three of my servants, whom I shall call and ordain, unto whom I will show these things;

C. and they shall go forth with my words that are given through you; yea, they shall know of a surety that these things are true; for from heaven will I declare it unto them;

D. I will give them power that they may behold and view these things as they are; and to none else will I grant this power, to receive this same testimony, among this generation, in this, the beginning of the rising up, and the coming forth of my church out of the wilderness; clear as the moon and fair as the sun, and terrible as an army with banners.

E. And the testimony of three witnesses will I send forth of my word; and, behold, whosoever believeth on my words, them will I visit with the manifestation of my Spirit, and they shall be born of me, even of water and of the Spirit.

F. And you must wait yet a little while, for you are not yet ordained; and their testimony shall also go forth unto the condemnation of this generation, if they harden their hearts against them;

G. for a desolating scourge shall go forth among the inhabitants of the earth, and shall continue to be poured out, from time to time, if they repent not, until the earth is empty, and the inhabitants thereof are consumed away, and utterly destroyed by the brightness of my coming.

H. Behold, I tell you these things even as I also told the people of the destruction of Jerusalem, and my word shall be verified at this time as it hath hitherto been verified.

4

A. And now I command you, my servant Joseph, to repent and walk more uprightly before me, and yield to the persuasions of men no more;

B. and that you be firm in keeping the commandments wherewith I have commanded you, and if you do this, behold, I grant unto you eternal life, even if you should be slain.

5

A. And now again I speak unto you, my servant Joseph, concerning the man that desires the witness:

B. Behold, I say unto him, he exalts himself and does not humble himself sufficiently before me; but if he will bow down before me, and humble himself in mighty prayer and faith, in the sincerity of his heart, then will I grant unto him a view of the things which he desires to see.

C. And then he shall say unto the people of this generation, Behold, I have seen the things which the Lord has shown unto Joseph Smith, Jr., and I know of a surety that they are true, for I have seen them; for they have been shown unto me by the power of God and not of man.

D. And I, the Lord, command him, my servant Martin Harris, that he shall say no more unto them concerning these things, except he shall say, I have seen them, and they have been shown unto me by the power of God, and these are the words which he shall say:

E. but if he deny this he will break the covenant which he has before covenanted with me, and behold he is condemned.

F. And now, except he humble himself and acknowledge unto me the things that he has done which are wrong, and covenant with me that he will keep my commandments, and exercise faith in me, behold, I say unto him, he shall have no such views;

G. for I will grant unto him no views of the things of which I have spoken.

H. And if this be the case, I command you, my servant Joseph, that you shall say unto him, that he shall do no more, nor trouble me anymore concerning this matter.

6

A. And if this be the case, behold, I say unto thee, Joseph, When thou hast translated a few more pages thou shalt stop for a season, even until I command thee again; then thou mayest translate again.

B. And except thou do this, behold, thou shalt have no more gift, and I will take away the things which I have intrusted with thee.

C. And now, because I foresee the lying in wait to destroy thee; yea, I foresee that if my servant Martin Harris humbleth not himself, and receive a witness from my hand, that he will fall into transgression; and there are many that lie in wait to destroy thee from off the face of the earth;

D. and for this cause, that thy days may be prolonged, I have given unto thee these commandments; yea, for this cause I have said, Stop and stand still until I command thee, and I will provide means whereby thou mayest accomplish the thing which I have commanded thee;

E. and if thou art faithful in keeping my commandments, thou shalt be lifted up at the last day. Amen.

Section 6

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

- A.** A great and marvelous work is about to come forth unto the children of men:
- B.** behold, I am God, and give heed unto my word, which is quick and powerful, sharper than a two-edged sword, to the dividing asunder of both joints and marrow:
- C.** therefore, give heed unto my words.

2

- A.** Behold, the field is white already to harvest, therefore whoso desireth to reap, let him thrust in his sickle with his might, and reap while the day lasts, that he may treasure up for his soul everlasting salvation in the kingdom of God;
- B.** yea, whosoever will thrust in his sickle and reap, the same is called of God;
- C.** therefore, if you will ask of me you shall receive, if you will knock it shall be opened unto you.

3

- A.** Now, as you have asked, behold, I say unto you, Keep my commandments, and seek to bring forth and establish the cause of Zion:
- B.** seek not for riches but for wisdom; and, behold, the mysteries of God shall be unfolded unto you, and then shall you be made rich.
- C.** Behold, he that hath eternal life is rich.

4

- A.** Verily, verily I say unto you, Even as you desire of me, so shall it be unto you; and if you desire, you shall be the means of doing much good in this generation.
- B.** Say nothing but repentance unto this generation: keep my commandments, and assist to bring forth my work according to my commandments, and you shall be blessed.

5

- A.** Behold, thou hast a gift, and blessed art thou because of thy gift.

B. Remember it is sacred and cometh from above: and if thou wilt inquire, thou shalt know mysteries which are great and marvelous;

C. therefore, thou shalt exercise thy gift, that thou mayest find out mysteries, that thou mayest bring many to the knowledge of the truth; yea, convince them of the error of their ways.

D. Make not thy gift known unto any, save it be those who are of thy faith. Trifle not with sacred things.

E. If thou wilt do good, yea, and hold out faithful to the end, thou shalt be saved in the kingdom of God, which is the greatest of all the gifts of God; for there is no gift greater than the gift of salvation.

6

A. Verily, verily I say unto thee, Blessed art thou for what thou hast done, for thou hast inquired of me, and, behold, as often as thou hast inquired, thou hast received instruction of my Spirit.

B. If it had not been so, thou wouldst not have come to the place where thou art at this time.

7

A. Behold, thou knowest that thou hast inquired of me, and I did enlighten thy mind; and now I tell thee these things, that thou mayest know that thou hast been enlightened by the spirit of truth;

B. yea, I tell thee, that thou mayest know that there is none else save God, that knowest thy thoughts and the intents of thy heart.

C. I tell thee these things as a witness unto thee, that the words or the work which thou hast been writing is true.

8

A. Therefore be diligent, stand by my servant Joseph faithfully in whatsoever difficult circumstances he may be, for the word's sake.

B. Admonish him in his faults and also receive admonition of him.

C. Be patient; be sober; be temperate: have patience, faith, hope, and charity.

9

A. Behold, thou art Oliver, and I have spoken unto thee because of thy desires; therefore, treasure up these words in thy heart.

B. Be faithful and diligent in keeping the commandments of God, and I will encircle thee in the arms of my love.

10

A. Behold, I am Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

B. I am the same that came unto my own and my own received me not.

C. I am the light which shineth in darkness, and the darkness comprehendeth it not.

11

A. Verily, verily I say unto you, If you desire a further witness, cast your mind upon the night that you cried unto me in your heart, that you might know concerning the truth of these things; did I not speak peace to your mind concerning the matter?

B. What greater witness can you have than from God?

C. And now, behold, you have received a witness, for if I have told you things which no man knoweth, have you not received a witness?

D. And, behold, I grant unto you a gift, if you desire of me, to translate even as my servant Joseph.

12

A. Verily, verily I say unto you, that there are records which contain much of my gospel, which have been kept back because of the wickedness of the people;

B. and now I command you, that if you have good desires, a desire to lay up treasures for yourself in heaven, then shall you assist in bringing to light, with your gift, those parts of my Scriptures which have been hidden because of iniquity.

13

A. And now, behold, I give unto you, and also unto my servant Joseph, the keys of this gift, which shall bring to light this ministry;

B. and in the mouth of two or three witnesses, shall every word be established.

14

A. Verily, verily I say unto you, If they reject my words, and this part of my gospel and ministry, blessed are ye, for they can do no more unto you than unto me;

B. and if they do unto you, even as they have done unto me, blessed are ye, for you shall dwell with me in glory:

C. but if they reject not my words, which shall be established by the testimony which shall be given, blessed are they; and then shall ye have joy in the fruit of you labors.

15

A. Verily, verily I say unto you, as I said unto my disciples,

B. Where two or three are gathered together in my name, as touching one thing, behold, there will I be in the midst of them; even so am I in the midst of you.

C. Fear not to do good, my sons, for whatsoever ye sow, that shall ye also reap:

D. therefore, if ye sow good, ye shall also reap good for your reward:

16

A. Therefore fear not, little flock, do good, let earth and hell combine against you, for if ye are built upon my Rock, they cannot prevail.

B. Behold, I do not condemn you, go your ways and sin no more: perform with soberness the work which I have commanded you; look unto me in every thought, doubt not, fear not:

C. behold the wounds which pierced my side, and also the prints of the nails in my hands and feet; be faithful; keep my commandments, and ye shall inherit the kingdom of heaven. Amen.

Section 7

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. And the Lord said unto me, John, my beloved, what desirest thou? For if ye shall ask what you will, it shall be granted unto you.

B. And I said unto him, Lord, give unto me power over death, that I may live and bring souls unto thee.

C. And the Lord said unto me, Verily, verily I say unto thee, because thou desirest this thou shalt tarry until I come in my glory, and shalt prophesy before nations, kindreds, tongues, and people.

2

A. And for this cause the Lord said unto Peter, If I will that he tarry till I come, what is that to thee? For he desiredst of me that he might bring souls unto me; but thou desiredst that thou might speedily come unto me in my kingdom.

B. I say unto thee, Peter, this was a good desire, but my beloved has desired that he might do more, or a greater work yet among men, than what he has before done; yea, he has undertaken a greater work;

C. therefore, I will make him as flaming fire, and a ministering angel; he shall minister for those who shall be heirs of salvation who dwell on the earth;

D. and I will make thee to minister for him and for thy brother James; and unto you three I give this power and the keys of this ministry until I come.

3

Verily I say unto you, Ye shall both have according to your desires, for ye both joy in that which ye have desired.

Section 8

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Oliver Cowdery, verily, verily I say unto you, that assuredly as the Lord liveth, who is your God and your Redeemer,

B. even so sure shall you receive a knowledge of whatsoever things you shall ask in faith, with an honest heart, believing that you shall receive a knowledge concerning the engravings of old records, which are ancient, which contain those parts of my scripture of which have been spoken, by the manifestation of my Spirit;

C. yea, behold, I will tell you in your mind and in your heart by the Holy Ghost, which shall come upon you, and which shall dwell in your heart.

2

A. Now, behold, this is the spirit of revelation; behold, this is the Spirit by which Moses brought the children of Israel through the Red Sea on dry ground;

B. therefore this is thy gift; apply unto it and blessed art thou, for it shall deliver you out of the hands of your enemies, when, if it were not so, they would slay you, and bring your soul to destruction.

3

A. Oh, remember these words, and keep my commandments! Remember this is your gift.

B. Now this is not all your gift, for you have another gift, which is the gift of Aaron; behold, it has told you many things; behold, there is no other power save the power of God that can cause this gift of Aaron to be with you;

C. therefore doubt not, for it is the gift of God, and you shall hold it in your hands, and do marvelous works; and no power shall be able to take it away out of your hands, for it is the work of God.

D. And, therefore, whatsoever you shall ask me to tell you by that means, that will I grant unto you, and you shall have knowledge concerning it; remember, that without faith you can do nothing.

E. Therefore, ask in faith.

F. Trifle not with these things; do not ask for that which you ought not; ask that you may know the mysteries of God, and that you may translate and receive knowledge from all those ancient

records which have been hid up, that are sacred, and according to your faith shall it be done unto you.

G. Behold, it is I that have spoken it; and I am the same who spake unto you from the beginning. Amen.

Section 9

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Behold, I say unto you, my son, that because you did not translate according to that which you desired of me, and did commence again to write for my servant Joseph Smith, Jr., even so I would that you should continue until you have finished this record, which I have intrusted unto him;

B. and then, behold, other records have I, that I will give unto you power that you may assist to translate.

2

A. Be patient, my son, for it is wisdom in me, and it is not expedient that you should translate at this present time.

B. Behold, the work which you are called to do is to write for my servant Joseph;

C. and, behold, it is because that you did not continue as you commenced, when you began to translate, that I have taken away this privilege from you.

D. Do not murmur, my son, for it is wisdom in me that I have dealt with you after this manner.

3

A. Behold, you have not understood; you have supposed that I would give it unto you, when you took no thought, save it was to ask me;

B. but, behold, I say unto you, that you must study it out in your mind;

C. then you must ask me if it be right, and if it is right, I will cause that your bosom shall burn within you; therefore, you shall feel that it is right;

D. but if it be not right, you shall have no such feelings, but you shall have a stupor of thought, that shall cause you to forget the thing which is wrong;

E. therefore, you cannot write that which is sacred, save it be given you from me.

4

A. Now, if you had known this, you could have translated; nevertheless, it is not expedient that you should translate now. Behold, it was expedient when you commenced, but you feared, and the time is past, and it is not expedient now;

B. for, do you not behold that I have given unto my servant Joseph sufficient strength, whereby it is made up, and neither of you have I condemned?

5

A. Do this thing which I have commanded you, and you shall prosper. Be faithful, and yield to no temptation.

B. Stand fast in the work wherewith I have called you, and a hair of your head shall not be lost, and you shall be lifted up at the last day. Amen.

Section 10

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

- A.** A great and marvelous work is about to come forth among the children of men.
- B.** Behold, I am God, and give heed to my word, which is quick and powerful, sharper than a two-edged sword, to the dividing asunder of both joints and marrow;
- C.** therefore, give heed unto my word.

2

- A.** Behold, the field is white already to harvest, therefore, whoso desireth to reap, let him thrust in his sickle with his might, and reap while the day lasts, that he may treasure up for his soul everlasting salvation in the kingdom of God;
- B.** yea, whosoever will thrust in his sickle and reap, the same is called of God;
- C.** therefore, if you will ask of me, you shall receive; if you will knock, it shall be opened unto you.

3

- A.** Now as you have asked, behold, I say unto you, Keep my commandments, and seek to bring forth and establish the cause of Zion.
- B.** Seek not for riches, but for wisdom, and, behold, the mysteries of God shall be unfolded unto you, and then shall you be made rich;
- C.** behold, he that hath eternal life is rich.

4

- A.** Verily, verily I say unto you, Even as you desire of me, so shall it be done unto you; and, if you desire you shall be the means of doing much good in this generation.
- B.** Say nothing but repentance unto this generation.
- C.** Keep my commandments, and assist to bring forth my work according to my commandments, and you shall be blessed.

5

A. Behold, thou hast a gift, or thou shalt have a gift if thou wilt desire of me in faith, with an honest heart, believing in the power of Jesus Christ, or in my power which speaketh unto thee;

B. for, behold, it is I that speak; behold, I am the light which shineth in darkness, and by my power I give these words unto thee.

6

And now, verily, verily I say unto thee, Put thy trust in that Spirit which leadeth to do good; yea, to do justly, to walk humbly, to judge righteously; and this is my Spirit.

7

A. Verily, verily I say unto you, I will impart unto you of my Spirit, which shall enlighten your mind, which shall fill your soul with joy,

B. and then shall ye know, or by this shall you know, all things whatsoever you desire of me, which is pertaining unto things of righteousness, in faith believing in me that you shall receive.

8

A. Behold, I command you, that you need not suppose that you are called to preach until you are called:

B. wait a little longer, until you shall have my word, my rock, my church, and my gospel, that you may know of a surety my doctrine;

C. and then, behold, according to your desires, yea, even according to your faith, shall it be done unto you.

9

A. Keep my commandments; hold your peace; appeal unto my Spirit;

B. yea, cleave unto me with all your heart, that you may assist in bringing to light those things of which have been spoken; yea, the translation of my work; be patient until you shall accomplish it.

10

A. Behold, this is your work, to keep my commandments; yea, with all your might, mind, and strength; seek not to declare my word, but first seek to obtain my word, and then shall your tongue be loosed;

B. then, if you desire, you shall have my Spirit, and my word; yea, the power of God unto the convincing of men;

C. but now hold your peace; study my word which hath gone forth among the children of men, and also study my word which shall come forth among the children of men, or that which is now translating;

D. yea, until you have obtained all which I shall grant unto the children of men in this generation; and then shall all things be added thereunto.

11

A. Behold, thou art Hyrum, my son; seek the kingdom of God, and all things shall be added according to that which is just.

B. Build upon my rock, which is my gospel; deny not the spirit of revelation, nor the spirit of prophecy, for woe unto him that denieth these things;

C. therefore, treasure up in your hearts until the time which is in my wisdom that you shall go forth: behold, I speak unto all who have good desires, and have thrust in their sickles to reap.

12

A. Behold, I am Jesus Christ, the Son of God. I am the life and the light of the world. I am the same who came unto my own, and my own received me not;

B. but verily, verily I say unto you, that as many as receive me, them will I give power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on my name. Amen.

Section 11

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

- A.** A great and marvelous work is about to come forth among the children of men.
- B.** Behold, I am God, and give heed to my word, which is quick and powerful, sharper than a two-edged sword, to the dividing asunder of both joints and marrow;
- C.** therefore, give heed unto my word.

2

- A.** Behold, the field is white already to harvest; therefore, whoso desireth to reap, let him thrust in his sickle with his might, and reap while the day lasts, that he may treasure up for his soul everlasting salvation in the kingdom of God;
- B.** yea, whosoever will thrust in his sickle and reap, the same is called of God;
- C.** therefore, if you will ask of me you shall receive, if you will knock it shall be opened unto you.

3

- A.** Now, as you have asked, behold, I say unto you,
- B.** Keep my commandments, and seek to bring forth and establish the cause of Zion.

4

- A.** Behold, I speak unto you, and also to all those who have desires to bring forth and establish this work;
- B.** and no one can assist in this work, except he shall be humble and full of love, having faith, hope, and charity, being temperate in all things whatsoever shall be intrusted to his care.

5

- A.** Behold, I am the light and the life of the world, that speak these words;
- B.** therefore, give heed with your might, and then you are called. Amen.

Section 12

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

- A.** A great and marvelous work is about to come forth unto the children of men.
- B.** Behold, I am God, and give heed to my word, which is quick and powerful, sharper than a two-edged sword, to the dividing asunder of both joints and marrow;
- C.** therefore, give heed unto my word.

2

- A.** Behold, the field is white already to harvest, therefore, whoso desireth to reap, let him thrust in his sickle with his might, and reap while the day lasts, that he may treasure up for his soul everlasting salvation in the kingdom of God;
- B.** yea, whosoever will thrust in his sickle and reap, the same is called of God; therefore, if you will ask of me you shall receive, if you will knock it shall be opened unto you.

3

- A.** Seek to bring forth and establish my Zion.
- B.** Keep my commandments in all things; and if you keep my commandments and endure to the end, you shall have eternal life; which gift is the greatest of all the gifts of God.

4

- A.** And it shall come to pass, that if you shall ask the Father in my name, in faith believing, you shall receive the Holy Ghost, which giveth utterance, that you may stand as a witness of the things of which you shall both hear and see;
- B.** and also, that you may declare repentance unto this generation.

5

- A.** Behold, I am Jesus Christ the Son of the living God, who created the heavens and the earth; a light which cannot be hid in darkness;
- B.** wherefore, I must bring forth the fullness of my gospel from the Gentiles unto the house of Israel.

C. And, behold, thou art David, and thou art called to assist; which thing if thou doest, and art faithful, thou shalt be blessed both spiritually and temporally, and great shall be thy reward.
Amen.

Section 13

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Hearken, my servant John, and listen to the words of Jesus Christ, your Lord and your Redeemer;

B. for, behold, I speak unto you with sharpness and with power, for mine arm is over all the earth, and I will tell you that which no man knows save me and you alone;

C. for many times you have desired of me to know that which would be of the most worth unto you.

2

Behold, blessed are you for this thing, and for speaking my words, which I have given you, according to my commandments.

3

And now, behold, I say unto you, that the thing which will be of the most worth unto you, will be to declare repentance unto this people, that you may bring souls unto me, that you may rest with them in the kingdom of my Father. Amen.

Section 14

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Hearken, my servant Peter, and listen to the words of Jesus Christ, your Lord and your Redeemer;

B. for, behold, I speak unto you with sharpness and with power, for mine arm is over all the earth, and I will tell you that which no man knows save me and you alone;

C. for many times you have desired of me to know that which would be of the most worth unto you.

2

Behold, blessed are you for this thing, and for speaking my words, which I have given you, according to my commandments.

3

And now, behold, I say unto you, that the thing which will be of the most worth unto you, will be to declare repentance unto this people, that you may bring souls unto me, that you may rest with them in the kingdom of my Father. Amen.

Section 15

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Behold, I say unto you, that you must rely upon my word,

B. which if you do, with full purpose of heart, you shall have a view of the plates, and also the breastplate, the sword of Laban, the Urim and Thummim, which were given to the Brother of Jared upon the mount, when he talked with the Lord face to face, and the miraculous directors which were given to Lehi while in the wilderness, on the borders of the Red Sea;

C. and it is by your faith that you shall obtain a view of them, even by that faith which was had by the prophets of old.

2

A. And after that you have obtained faith, and have seen them with your eyes, you shall testify of them, by the power of God;

B. and this you shall do that my servant Joseph Smith, Jr., may not be destroyed, that I may bring about my righteous purposes unto the children of men, in this work.

C. And ye shall testify that ye have seen them, even as my servant Joseph Smith, Jr., has seen them, for it is by my power that he has seen them, and it is because he had faith;

D. and he has translated the book, even that part which I have commanded him, and as your Lord and your God liveth, it is true.

3

A. Wherefore you have received the same power, and the same faith, and the same gift like unto him;

B. and if you do these last commandments of mine, which I have given you, the gates of hell shall not prevail against you; for my grace is sufficient for you; and you shall be lifted up at the last day.

C. And I, Jesus Christ, your Lord and your God, have spoken it unto you, that I might bring about my righteous purposes unto the children of men. Amen.

Section 16

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Now, behold, because of the thing which you, my servant Oliver Cowdery, have desired to know of me, I give unto you these words:

B. Behold, I have manifested unto you, by my Spirit in many instances, that the things which you have written are true; wherefore you know that they are true;

C. and if you know that they are true, behold, I give unto you a commandment, that you rely upon the things which are written; for in them are all things written concerning the foundation of my church, my gospel, and my Rock;

D. wherefore, if you shall build up my church upon the foundation of my gospel and my Rock, the gates of hell shall not prevail against you.

2

A. Behold, the world is ripening in iniquity, and it must needs be that the children of men are stirred up unto repentance, both the Gentiles, and also the house of Israel;

B. wherefore, as thou hast been baptized by the hand of my servant, Joseph Smith, Jr., according to that which I have commanded him, he hath fulfilled the thing which I commanded him.

C. And now marvel not that I have called him unto mine own purpose, which purpose is known in me;

D. wherefore, if he shall be diligent in keeping my commandments, he shall be blessed unto eternal life, and his name is Joseph.

3

A. And now, Oliver Cowdery, I speak unto you, and also unto David Whitmer, by the way of commandment;

B. for, behold, I command all men everywhere to repent, and I speak unto you, even as unto Paul mine apostle, for you are called even with that same calling with which he was called.

C. Remember the worth of souls is great in the sight of God; for, behold, the Lord your Redeemer suffered death in the flesh; wherefore he suffered the pain of all men, that all men might repent and come unto him.

D. And he hath risen again from the dead, that he might bring all men unto him on conditions of repentance.

E. And how great is his joy in the soul that repenteth. Wherefore you are called to cry repentance unto this people.

F. And if it so be that you should labor all your days, in crying repentance unto this people, and bring save it be one soul unto me, how great shall be your joy with him in the kingdom of my Father!

4

A. And now, if your joy will be great with one soul that you have brought unto me into the kingdom of my Father, how great will be your joy, if you should bring many souls unto me!

B. Behold, you have my gospel before you, and my Rock, and my salvation.

C. Ask the Father in my name, in faith believing that you shall receive, and you shall have the Holy Ghost which manifesteth all things, which is expedient unto the children of men.

D. And if you have not faith, hope, and charity, you can do nothing. Contend against no church, save it be the church of the Devil.

E. Take upon you the name of Christ, and speak the truth in soberness; and as many as repent, and are baptized in my name, which is Jesus Christ, and endure to the end, the same shall be saved.

F. Behold, Jesus Christ is the name which is given of the Father, and there is none other name given whereby man can be saved;

G. wherefore, all men must take upon them the name which is given of the Father, for in that name shall they be called at the last day; wherefore, if they know not the name by which they are called, they cannot have place in the kingdom of my Father.

5

A. And now, behold, there are others who are called to declare my gospel, both unto Gentile and unto Jew; yea, even twelve; and the twelve shall be my disciples, and they shall take upon them my name;

B. and the twelve are they who shall desire to take upon them my name, with full purpose of heart; and if they desire to take upon them my name, with full purpose of heart, they are called to go into all the world to preach my gospel unto every creature;

C. and they are they who are ordained of me to baptize in my name, according to that which is written; and you have that which is written before you; wherefore you must perform it according to the words which are written.

D. And now I speak unto the twelve: Behold, my grace is sufficient for you; you must walk uprightly before me and sin not.

E. And, behold, you are they who are ordained of me to ordain priests and teachers to declare my gospel, according to the power of the Holy Ghost which is in you, and according to the callings and gifts of God unto men; and I, Jesus Christ, your Lord and your God, have spoken it.

F. These words are not of men, nor of man; but of me; wherefore, you shall testify they are of me, and not of man; for it is my voice which speaketh them unto you; for they are given by my Spirit unto you;

G. and by my power you can read them one to another, and save it were by my power, you could not have them; wherefore you can testify that you have heard my voice, and know my words.

6

A. And now, behold, I give unto you, Oliver Cowdery, and also unto David Whitmer, that you shall search out the twelve who shall have the desires of which I have spoken; and by their desires and their works, you shall know them;

B. and when you have found them you shall show these things unto them.

C. And you shall fall down and worship the Father in my name; and you must preach unto the world, saying,

D. You must repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ; for all men must repent and be baptized, and not only men, but women; and children who have arrived to the years of accountability.

7

A. And now, after that you have received this, you must keep my commandments in all things;

B. and by your hands I will work a marvelous work among the children of men, unto the convincing of many of their sins, that they may come unto repentance, and that they may come unto the kingdom of my Father;

C. wherefore, the blessings which I give unto you are above all things.

D. And after that you have received this, if you keep not my commandments, you cannot be saved in the kingdom of my Father.

E. Behold I, Jesus Christ, your Lord and your God, and your Redeemer, by the power of my Spirit, have spoken it. Amen.

Section 17

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. The rise of the church of Christ in these last days, being one thousand eight hundred and thirty years since the coming of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ in the flesh, it being regularly organized and established agreeably to the laws of our country, by the will and commandments of God in the fourth month, and on the sixth day of the month which is called April;

B. which commandments were given to Joseph Smith, Jr., who was called of God and ordained an apostle of Jesus Christ, to be the first elder of this church; and to Oliver Cowdery, who was also called of God an apostle of Jesus Christ, to be the second elder of this church, and ordained under his hand:

C. and this according to the grace of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ, to whom be all glory both now and forever. Amen.

2

A. After it was truly manifested unto this first elder that he had received a remission of his sins, he was entangled again in the vanities of the world;

B. but after repenting, and humbling himself, sincerely, through faith, God ministered unto him by an holy angel whose countenance was as lightning, and whose garments were pure and white above all other whiteness,

C. and gave unto him commandments which inspired him, and gave him power from on high, by the means which were before prepared, to translate the Book of Mormon,

D. which contains a record of a fallen people, and the fullness of the gospel of Jesus Christ to the Gentiles, and to the Jews also, which was given by inspiration,

E. and is confirmed to others by the ministering of angels, and is declared unto the world by them, proving to the world that the Holy Scriptures are true,

F. and that God does inspire men and call them to his holy work in this age and generation, as well as in generations of old,

G. thereby showing that he is the same God yesterday, today, and forever. Amen.

3

A. Therefore, having so great witnesses, by them shall the world be judged, even as many as shall hereafter come to a knowledge of this work;

B. and those who receive it in faith and work righteousness, shall receive a crown of eternal life;

C. but those who harden their hearts in unbelief and reject it, it shall turn to their own condemnation, for the Lord God has spoken it;

D. and we, the elders of the church, have heard and bear witness to the words of the glorious Majesty on high, to whom be glory for ever and ever. Amen.

4

A. By these things we know that there is a God in heaven who is infinite and eternal, from everlasting to everlasting the same unchangeable God, the framer of heaven and earth and all things which are in them, and that he created man male and female;

B. after his own image and in his own likeness created he them, and gave unto them commandments that they should love and serve him the only living and true God, and that he should be the only being whom they should worship.

C. But by the transgression of these holy laws, man became sensual and devilish, and became fallen man.

5

A. Wherefore the almighty God gave his only begotten Son, as it is written in those scriptures which have been given of him:

B. he suffered temptations but gave no heed unto them;

C. he was crucified, died, and rose again the third day;

D. and ascended into heaven to sit down on the right hand of the Father, to reign with almighty power according to the will of the Father, that as many as would believe and be baptized, in his holy name, and endure in faith to the end, should be saved:

E. not only those who believed after he came in the meridian of time in the flesh, but all those from the beginning, even as many as were before he came,

F. who believed in the words of the holy prophets, who spake as they were inspired by the gift of the Holy Ghost,

G. who truly testified of him in all things, should have eternal life, as well as those who should come after, who should believe in the gifts and callings of God by the Holy Ghost,

H. which beareth record of the Father, and of the Son, which Father, Son, and Holy Ghost are one God, infinite and eternal, without end. Amen.

6

A. And we know that all men must repent and believe on the name of Jesus Christ and worship the Father in his name, and endure in faith on his name to the end, or they cannot be saved in the kingdom of God.

B. And we know that justification through the grace of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ, is just and true;

C. and we know, also, that sanctification through the grace of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ, is just and true, to all those who love and serve God with all their mights, minds, and strength;

D. but there is a possibility that man may fall from grace and depart from the living God.

E. Therefore let the church take heed and pray always, lest they fall into temptations; yea, and even let those who are sanctified, take heed also.

F. And we know that these things are true and according to the revelations of John, neither adding to, nor diminishing from the prophecy of his book, the Holy Scriptures, or the revelations of God which shall come hereafter by the gift and power of the Holy Ghost, the voice of God, or the ministering of angels:

G. and the Lord God has spoken it; and honor, power, and glory, be rendered to his holy name, both now and ever. Amen.

7

A. And again by way of commandment to the church concerning the manner of baptism:

B. All those who humble themselves before God and desire to be baptized, and come forth with broken hearts and contrite spirits, and witness before the church that they have truly repented of all their sins,

C. and are willing to take upon them the name of Jesus Christ, having a determination to serve him to the end,

D. and truly manifest by their works that they have received of the Spirit of Christ unto the remission of their sins, shall be received by baptism into his church.

8

A. The duty of the elders, priests, teachers, deacons, and members of the church of Christ:

B. An apostle is an elder, and it is his calling to baptize, and to ordain other elders, priests, teachers, and deacons, and to administer bread and wine—the emblems of the flesh and blood of Christ—

- C.** and to confirm those who are baptized into the church, by the laying on of hands for the baptism of fire and the Holy Ghost, according to the Scriptures;
- D.** and to teach, expound, exhort, baptize, and watch over the church;
- E.** and to confirm the church by the laying on of the hands, and the giving of the Holy Ghost,
- F.** and to take the lead of all meetings.

9

The elders are to conduct the meetings as they are led by the Holy Ghost, according to the commandments and revelations of God.

10

- A.** The priest's duty is to preach, teach, expound, exhort, and baptize, and administer the sacrament.
- B.** and visit the house of each member, and exhort them to pray vocally and in secret, and attend to all family duties:
- C.** and he may also ordain other priests, teachers, and deacons;
- D.** and he is to take the lead of meetings when there is no elder present, but when there is an elder present he is only to preach, teach, expound, exhort, and baptize, and visit the house of each member, exhorting them to pray vocally and in secret, and attend to all family duties.
- E.** In all these duties the priest is to assist the elder if occasion requires.

11

- A.** The teacher's duty is to watch over the church always, and be with, and strengthen them, and see that there is no iniquity in the church, neither hardness with each other; neither lying, backbiting, nor evil speaking;
- B.** and see that the church meet together often, and also see that all the members do their duty,
- C.** and he is to take the lead of meetings in the absence of the elder or priest,
- D.** and is to be assisted always, in all his duties in the church, by the deacons, if occasion requires;
- E.** but neither teachers nor deacons have authority to baptize, administer the sacrament, or lay on hands;
- F.** they are, however, to warn, expound, exhort, and teach, and invite all to come unto Christ.

12

- A.** Every elder, priest, teacher, or deacon, is to be ordained according to the gifts and callings of God unto him;
- B.** and he is to be ordained by the power of the Holy Ghost which is in the one who ordains him.

13

The several elders composing this church of Christ are to meet in conference once in three months, or from time to time, as said conferences shall direct or appoint; and said conferences are to do whatever church business is necessary to be done at the time.

14

The elders are to receive their licenses from other elders, by vote of the church to which they belong, or from the conferences.

15

Each priest, teacher, or deacon, who is ordained by a priest, may take a certificate from him at the time, which certificate, when presented to an elder, shall entitle him to a license, which shall authorize him to perform the duties of his calling; or he may receive it from a conference.

16

- A.** No person is to be ordained to any office in this church, where there is a regularly organized branch of the same, without the vote of that church;
- B.** but the presiding elders, traveling bishops, high councilors, high priests, and elders, may have the privilege of ordaining, where there is no branch of the church, that a vote may be called.

17

Every president of the high priesthood (or presiding elder), bishop, high councilor, and high priest, is to be ordained by the direction of a high council, or General Conference.

18

- A.** The duty of the members after they are received by baptism:
- B.** The elders or priests are to have a sufficient time to expound all things concerning the church of Christ to their understanding, previous to their partaking of the sacrament, and being confirmed by the laying on of the hands of the elders; so that all things may be done in order.

C. And the members shall manifest before the church, and also before the elders, by a godly walk and conversation that they are worthy of it, that there may be works and faith agreeable to the Holy Scriptures, walking in holiness before the Lord.

19

Every member of the church of Christ having children, is to bring them unto the elders before the church, who are to lay their hands upon them in the name of Jesus Christ, and bless them in his name.

20

No one can be received into the church of Christ unless he has arrived unto the years of accountability before God, and is capable of repentance.

21

A. Baptism is to be administered in the following manner unto all those who repent:

B. The person who is called of God and has authority from Jesus Christ to baptize, shall go down into the water with the person who has presented him or herself for baptism, and shall say, calling him or her by name:

C. Having been commissioned of Jesus Christ, I baptize you in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost, Amen.

D. Then shall he immerse him or her in the water, and come forth again out of the water.

22

A. It is expedient that the church meet together often to partake of bread and wine in remembrance of the Lord Jesus;

B. and the elder or priest shall administer it; and after this manner shall he administer it:

C. He shall kneel with the church and call upon the Father in solemn prayer, saying,

D. O God, the eternal Father, we ask thee in the name of thy Son Jesus Christ, to bless and sanctify this bread to the souls of all those who partake of it, that they may eat in remembrance of the body of thy Son, and witness unto thee, O God, the eternal Father, that they are willing to take upon them the name of thy Son, and always remember him and keep his commandments which he has given them, that they may always have his Spirit to be with them. Amen.

23

A. The manner of administering the wine: He shall take the cup also, and say:

B. O God, the eternal Father, we ask thee in the name of thy Son Jesus Christ, to bless and sanctify this wine to the souls of all those who drink of it, that they may do it in remembrance of the blood of thy Son which was shed for them, that they may witness unto thee, O God, the eternal Father, that they do always remember him, that they may have his Spirit to be with them. Amen.

24

Any member of the church of Christ transgressing, or being overtaken in a fault, shall be dealt with as the Scriptures direct.

25

A. It shall be the duty of the several churches composing the church of Christ to send one or more of their teachers to attend the several conferences, held by the elders of the church, with a list of the names of the several members uniting themselves with the church since the last conference,

B. or send by the hand of some priest, so that a regular list of all the names of the whole church may be kept in a book, by one of the elders, whoever the other elders shall appoint from time to time,

C. and also if any have been expelled from the church, so that their names may be blotted out of the General Church record of names.

26

All members removing from the church where they reside, if going to a church where they are not known, may take a letter certifying that they are regular members and in good standing, which certificate may be signed by any elder or priest, if the member receiving the letter is personally acquainted with the elder or priest, or it may be signed by the teachers or deacons of the church.

Section 18

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. I am Alpha and Omega, Christ the Lord; yea, even I am He, the beginning and the end, the Redeemer of the world:

B. I having accomplished and finished the will of him whose I am, even the Father, concerning me; having done this, that I might subdue all things unto myself;

C. retaining all power, even to the destroying of Satan and his works at the end of the world, and the last great day of judgment, which I shall pass upon the inhabitants thereof, judging every man according to his works, and the deeds which he has done.

D. And surely every man must repent or suffer, for I God am endless; wherefore, I revoke not the judgments which I shall pass, but woes shall go forth, weeping, wailing, and gnashing of teeth;

E. yea, to those who are found on my left hand; nevertheless, it is not written that there shall be no end to this torment; but it is written endless torment.

2

A. Again, it is written eternal damnation; wherefore it is more express than other scriptures, that it might work upon the hearts of the children of men, altogether for my name's glory;

B. wherefore, I will explain unto you this mystery, for it is meet unto you to know even as mine apostles.

C. I speak unto you that are chosen in this thing, even as one, that you may enter into my rest; for, behold, the mystery of godliness, how great is it?

D. For, behold, I am endless, and the punishment which is given from my hand is endless punishment, for Endless is my name; wherefore—

E. Eternal punishment is God's punishment. Endless punishment is God's punishment.

F. Wherefore, I command you to repent, and keep the commandments which you have received by the hand of my servant Joseph Smith, Jr., in my name;

G. and it is by my almighty power that you have received them; therefore I command you to repent—repent, lest I smite you by the rod of my mouth, and by my wrath, and by my anger, and your sufferings be sore—how sore you know not! how exquisite you know not! yea, how hard to bear you know not!

H. For, behold, I, God, have suffered these things for all, that they might not suffer, if they would repent; but if they would not repent, they must suffer even as I;

I. which suffering caused myself, even God, the greatest of all, to tremble because of pain, and to bleed at every pore, and to suffer both body and spirit, and would that I might not drink the bitter cup, and shrink;

J. nevertheless, glory be to the Father, and I partook and finished my preparations unto the children of men;

K. wherefore, I command you again to repent, lest I humble you by my almighty power, and that you confess your sins, lest you suffer these punishments of which I have spoken, of which in the smallest, yea, even in the least degree, you have tasted at the time I withdrew my Spirit.

L. And I command you that you preach naught but repentance, and show not these things unto the world until it is wisdom in me;

M. for they cannot bear meat now, but milk they must receive; wherefore, they must not know these things, lest they perish.

N. Learn of me, and listen to my words; walk in the meekness of my Spirit and you shall have peace in me.

O. I am Jesus Christ; I came by the will of the Father, and I do his will.

3

A. And again, I command thee that thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's wife; nor seek thy neighbor's life.

B. And again, I command thee that thou shalt not covet thine own property, but impart it freely to the printing of the Book of Mormon, which contains the truth and the word of God,

C. which is my word to the Gentiles, that soon it may go to the Jew, of whom the Lamanites are a remnant, that they may believe the gospel, and look not for a Messiah to come who has already come.

4

A. And again, I command thee that thou shalt pray vocally as well as in thy heart; yea, before the world as well as in secret; in public as well as in private.

B. And thou shalt declare glad tidings; yea, publish it upon the mountains, and upon every high place, and among every people that thou shalt be permitted to see.

C. And thou shalt do it with all humility, trusting in me, reviling not against revilers.

D. And of tenets thou shalt not talk, but thou shalt declare repentance and faith on the Savior, and remission of sins by baptism and by fire; yea, even the Holy Ghost.

5

A. Behold, this is a great, and the last commandment which I shall give unto you concerning this matter; for this shall suffice for thy daily walk even unto the end of thy life.

B. And misery thou shalt receive, if thou wilt slight these counsels; yea, even the destruction of thyself and property.

C. Impart a portion of thy property; yea, even part of thy lands, and all save the support of thy family.

D. Pay the debt thou hast contracted with the printer. Release thyself from bondage.

E. Leave thy house and home, except when thou shalt desire to see thy family; and speak freely to all;

F. yea, preach, exhort, declare the truth, even with a loud voice; with a sound of rejoicing, cry Hosanna! hosanna! Blessed be the name of the Lord God!

6

A. Pray always and I will pour out my Spirit upon you, and great shall be your blessing; yea, even more than if you should obtain treasures of earth and corruptibleness to the extent thereof.

B. Behold, canst thou read this without rejoicing and lifting up thy heart for gladness? or canst thou run about longer as a blind guide? or canst thou be humble and meek and conduct thyself wisely before me?

C. yea, come unto me thy Savior. Amen.

Section 19

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Behold, there shall be a record kept among you, and in it thou shalt be called a seer, a translator, a prophet, an apostle of Jesus Christ, an elder of the church through the will of God the Father, and the grace of your Lord Jesus Christ;

B. being inspired of the Holy Ghost to lay the foundation thereof, and to build it up unto the most holy faith;

C. which church was organized and established, in the year of your Lord eighteen hundred and thirty, in the fourth month, and on the sixth day of the month, which is called April.

2

A. Wherefore, meaning the church, thou shalt give heed unto all his words, and commandments, which he shall give unto you, as he receiveth them, walking in all holiness before me;

B. for his word ye shall receive, as if from mine own mouth, in all patience and faith; for by doing these things, the gates of hell shall not prevail against you;

C. yea, and the Lord God will disperse the powers of darkness from before you, and cause the heavens to shake for your good, and his name's glory.

D. For thus saith the Lord God, him have I inspired to move the cause of Zion in mighty power for good; and his diligence I know, and his prayers I have heard:

E. yea, his weeping for Zion I have seen, and I will cause that he shall mourn for her no longer, for his days of rejoicing are come unto the remission of his sins, and the manifestations of my blessings upon his works.

3

A. For, behold, I will bless all those who labor in my vineyard, with a mighty blessing, and they shall believe on his words, which are given him through me, by the Comforter, which manifesteth that Jesus was crucified by sinful men for the sins of the world; yea, for the remission of sins unto the contrite heart.

B. Wherefore, it behooveth me, that he should be ordained by you, Oliver Cowdery, mine apostle; this being an ordinance unto you, that you are an elder under his hand, he being the first unto you, that you might be an elder unto this church of Christ, bearing my name;

C. and the first preacher of this church, unto the church, and before the world; yea, before the Gentiles; yea, and thus saith the Lord God, lo, lo! to the Jews, also. Amen.

Section 20

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Behold, I say unto you, that all old covenants have I caused to be done away in this thing, and this is a new and everlasting covenant; even that which was from the beginning.

B. Wherefore, although a man should be baptized an hundred times, it availeth him nothing; for you cannot enter in at the strait gate by the Law of Moses, neither by your dead works;

C. for it is because of your dead works, that I have caused this last covenant, and this church to be built up unto me; even as in days of old.

D. Wherefore, enter ye in at the gate, as I have commanded, and seek not to counsel your God. Amen.

Section 21

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Behold, I speak unto you, Oliver, a few words. Behold, thou art blessed, and art under no condemnation. But beware of pride, lest thou shouldst enter into temptation.

B. Make known thy calling unto the church, and also before the world; and thy heart shall be opened to preach the truth from henceforth and forever. Amen.

2

A. Behold, I speak unto you, Hyrum, a few words, for thou also art under no condemnation, and thy heart is opened, and thy tongue loosed; and thy calling is to exhortation, and to strengthen the church continually.

B. Wherefore thy duty is unto the church forever; and this because of thy family. Amen.

3

Behold, I speak a few words unto you, Samuel, for thou also art under no condemnation, and thy calling is to exhortation, and to strengthen the church. And thou art not as yet called to preach before the world. Amen.

4

Behold, I speak a few words unto you, Joseph; for thou also art under no condemnation, and thy calling also is to exhortation, and to strengthen the church. And this is thy duty from henceforth and forever. Amen.

5

A. Behold, I manifest unto you, Joseph Knight, by these words, that you must take up your cross, in the which you must pray vocally before the world, as well as in secret, and in your family, and among your friends, and in all places.

B. And, behold, it is your duty to unite with the true church, and give your language to exhortation continually, that you may receive the reward of the laborer. Amen.

Section 22

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

The words of God which he spake unto Moses, at a time when Moses was caught up into an exceeding high mountain, and he saw God face to face, and he talked with him, and the glory of God was upon Moses; therefore Moses could endure his presence.

2

And God spake unto Moses, saying, Behold, I am the Lord God Almighty, and Endless is my name, for I am without beginning of days or end of years; and is not this endless?

3

- A.** And behold, thou art my son, wherefore look, and I will show thee the workmanship of mine hands, but not all;
- B.** for my works are without end, and also my words, for they never cease;
- C.** wherefore, no man can behold all my works except he behold all my glory;
- D.** and no man can behold all my glory, and afterwards remain in the flesh, on the earth.

4

- A.** And I have a work for thee, Moses, my son; and thou art in the similitude of mine Only Begotten; and my Only Begotten is and shall be the Savior, for he is full of grace and truth;
- B.** but there is no God beside me; and all things are present with me, for I know them all.

5

And now, behold, this one thing I show unto thee, Moses, my son; for thou art in the world, and now I show it unto thee.

6

- A.** And it came to pass, that Moses looked and beheld the world upon which he was created.
- B.** And as Moses beheld the world, and the ends thereof, and all the children of men, which are and which were created; of the same he greatly marveled, and wondered.

C. And the presence of God withdrew from Moses, that his glory was not upon Moses; and Moses was left unto himself; and as he was left unto himself, he fell unto the earth.

7

A. And it came to pass, that it was for the space of many hours before Moses did again receive his natural strength like unto man; and he said unto himself,

B. Now, for this cause, I know that man is nothing, which thing I never had supposed; but now mine eyes have beheld God; but not mine natural but my spiritual eyes, for mine natural eyes could not have beheld, for I should have withered and died in his presence;

C. but his glory was upon me, and I beheld his face, for I was transfigured before him.

8

A. And now it came to pass, that when Moses had said these words, behold, Satan came tempting him, saying, Moses, son of man, worship me.

B. And it came to pass that Moses looked upon Satan, and said, Who art thou, for behold I am a son of God, in the similitude of his Only Begotten; and where is thy glory, that I should worship thee?

C. For, behold, I could not look upon God except his glory should come upon me, and I were transfigured before him. But I can look upon thee in the natural man. Is it not so surely?

9

A. Blessed be the name of my God, for his Spirit hath not altogether withdrawn from me; or else where is thy glory, for it is darkness unto me, and I can judge between thee and God;

B. for God said unto me, Worship God, for him only shalt thou serve.

C. Get thee hence, Satan, deceive me not; for God said unto me, Thou art after the similitude of mine Only Begotten.

10

And he also gave unto me commandment, when he called unto me out of the burning bush, saying, Call upon God in the name of mine Only Begotten, and worship me.

11

And again, Moses said, I will not cease to call upon God. I have other things to inquire of him; for his glory has been upon me, and it is glory unto me; wherefore, I can judge between him and thee. Depart hence, Satan.

12

And now, when Moses had said these words, Satan cried with a loud voice, and went upon the earth, and commanded, saying, I am the Only Begotten, worship me.

13

And it came to pass, that Moses began to fear exceedingly; and as he began to fear, he saw the bitterness of hell; nevertheless, calling upon God he received strength, and he commanded, saying, Depart hence, Satan; for this one God only will I worship, which is the God of glory.

14

And now, Satan began to tremble, and the earth shook, and Moses received strength and called upon God in the name of the Only Begotten, saying to Satan, Depart hence.

15

And it came to pass, that Satan cried with a loud voice, with weeping, and wailing, and gnashing of teeth, and departed hence; yea, from the presence of Moses, that he beheld him not.

16

And now, of this thing Moses bore record; but because of wickedness, it is not had among the children of men.

17

A. And it came to pass, that when Satan had departed from the presence of Moses, that Moses lifted up his eyes unto heaven, being filled with the Holy Ghost, which beareth record of the Father and the Son;

B. and calling upon the name of God, he beheld again his glory; for it rested upon him, and he heard a voice, saying,

C. Blessed art thou, Moses, for I, the Almighty, have chosen thee, and thou shalt be made stronger than many waters; for they shall obey thy command even as if thou wert God.

18

And lo, I am with thee, even unto the end of thy days, for thou shalt deliver my people from bondage; even Israel my chosen.

19

A. And it came to pass, as the voice was still speaking, he cast his eyes and beheld the earth; yea, even all the face of it; and there was not a particle of it which he did not behold, discerning it by the Spirit of God.

B. And he beheld also the inhabitants thereof, and there was not a soul which he beheld not, and he discerned them by the Spirit of God, and their numbers were great, even as numberless as the sand upon the seashore.

C. And he beheld many lands, and each land was called earth; and there were inhabitants on the face thereof.

20

And it came to pass, that Moses called upon God, saying, Tell me, I pray thee, why these things are so, and by what thou madest them? And behold the glory of God was upon Moses, so that Moses stood in the presence of God, and he talked with him face to face.

21

A. And the Lord God said unto Moses, For mine own purpose have I made these things. Here is wisdom, and it remaineth in me.

B. And by the word of my power have I created them, which is mine Only Begotten Son, who is full of grace and truth.

C. And worlds without number have I created, and I also created them for mine own purpose; and by the Son I created them, which is mine Only Begotten. And the first man of all men have I called Adam, which is many.

D. But only an account of this earth, and the inhabitants thereof, give I unto you; for behold there are many worlds which have passed away by the word of my power;

E. and there are many also which now stand, and numberless are they unto man; but all things are numbered unto me; for they are mine, and I know them.

22

A. And it came to pass, that Moses spake unto the Lord, saying,

B. Be merciful unto thy servant, O God, and tell me concerning this earth, and the inhabitants thereof; and also the heavens, and then thy servant will be content.

23

A. And the Lord God spake unto Moses, saying, The heavens, they are many and they cannot be numbered unto man, but they are numbered unto me, for they are mine; and as one earth shall pass away, and the heavens thereof, even so shall another come;

B. and there is no end to my works, neither to my words; for this is my work and my glory, to bring to pass the immortality, and eternal life of man.

24

A. And now, Moses, my son, I will speak unto you concerning this earth upon which you stand; and you shall write the things which I shall speak.

B. And in a day when the children of men shall esteem my words as naught, and take many of them from the book which you shall write, behold I will raise up another like unto you, and they shall be had again among the children of men, among even as many as shall believe.

25

These words were spoken unto Moses in the mount, the name of which shall not be known among the children of men. And now they are spoken unto you. Amen.

Section 23

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

- A.** Behold, thou wast called and chosen to write the Book of Mormon, and to my ministry;
- B.** and I have lifted thee up out of thy afflictions, and have counseled thee, that thou hast been delivered from all thine enemies, and thou hast been delivered from the powers of Satan, and from darkness!
- C.** Nevertheless, thou art not excusable in thy transgressions; nevertheless go thy way and sin no more.

2

- A.** Magnify thine office; and after thou hast sowed thy fields and secured them, go speedily unto the church which is in Colesville, Fayette, and Manchester, and they shall support thee; and I will bless them both spiritually and temporally;
- B.** but if they receive thee not, I will send upon them a cursing instead of a blessing.

3

- A.** And thou shalt continue in calling upon God in my name, and writing the things which shall be given thee by the Comforter, and expounding all scriptures unto the church, and it shall be given thee, in the very moment, what thou shalt speak and write;
- B.** and they shall hear it, or I will send unto them a cursing instead of a blessing.

4

- A.** For thou shalt devote all thy service in Zion. And in this thou shalt have strength.
- B.** Be patient in afflictions, for thou shalt have many; but endure them, for lo, I am with you, even unto the end of thy days.
- C.** And in temporal labors thou shalt not have strength, for this is not thy calling.
- D.** Attend to thy calling and thou shalt have wherewith to magnify thine office, and to expound all Scriptures.
- E.** And continue in laying on of the hands, and confirming the churches.

5

A. And thy brother Oliver shall continue in bearing my name before the world, and also to the church. And he shall not suppose that he can say enough in my cause; and lo, I am with him to the end.

B. In me he shall have glory, and not of himself, whether in weakness or in strength, whether in bonds or free.

C. And at all times and in all places, he shall open his mouth and declare my gospel as with the voice of a trump, both day and night. And I will give unto him strength such as is not known among men.

6

A. Require not miracles, except I shall command you; except casting out devils; healing the sick; and against poisonous serpents; and against deadly poisons; and these things ye shall not do, except it be required of you by them who desire it, that the Scriptures might be fulfilled, for ye shall do according to that which is written.

B. And in whatsoever place ye shall enter, and they receive you not, in my name, ye shall leave a cursing instead of a blessing, by casting off the dust of your feet against them as a testimony, and cleansing your feet by the wayside.

7

A. And it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall lay their hands upon you by violence, ye shall command to be smitten in my name, and behold I will smite them according to your words, in mine own due time.

B. And whosoever shall go to law with thee shall be cursed by the law.

C. And thou shalt take no purse, nor scrip, neither staves, neither two coats, for the church shall give unto thee in the very hour what thou needest for food, and for raiment and for shoes, and for money, and for scrip; for thou art called to prune my vineyard with a mighty pruning, yea, even for the last time.

D. Yea, and also, all those whom thou hast ordained. And they shall do even according to this pattern. Amen.

Section 24

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Hearken unto the voice of the Lord your God, while I speak unto thee, Emma Smith, my daughter, for verily I say unto thee, All those who receive my gospel are sons and daughters in my kingdom.

B. A revelation I give unto thee concerning my will, and if thou art faithful and walk in the paths of virtue before me, I will preserve thy life, and thou shalt receive an inheritance in Zion.

C. Behold, thy sins are forgiven thee, and thou art an elect lady, whom I have called.

D. Murmur not because of the things which thou hast not seen, for they are withheld from thee, and from the world, which is wisdom in me in a time to come.

2

A. And the office of thy calling shall be for a comfort unto my servant Joseph Smith, Jr., thy husband, in his afflictions, with consoling words, in the spirit of meekness.

B. And thou shalt go with him at the time of his going, and be unto him for a scribe, while there is no one to be a scribe for him, that I may send my servant Oliver Cowdery whithersoever I will.

C. And thou shalt be ordained under his hand to expound Scriptures, and to exhort the church, according as it shall be given thee by my Spirit; for he shall lay his hands upon thee, and thou shalt receive the Holy Ghost, and thy time shall be given to writing, and to learning much.

D. And thou needest not fear, for thy husband shall support thee in the church; for unto them is his calling, that all things might be revealed unto them, whatsoever I will, according to their faith.

3

A. And verily I say unto thee, that thou shalt lay aside the things of this world, and seek for the things of a better.

B. And it shall be given thee, also, to make a selection of sacred hymns, as it shall be given thee, which is pleasing unto me, to be had in my church; for my soul delighteth in the song of the heart; yea, the song of the righteous is a prayer unto me.

C. And it shall be answered with a blessing upon their heads. Wherefore, lift up thy heart and rejoice, and cleave unto the covenants which thou hast made.

4

A. Continue in the spirit of meekness, and beware of pride. Let thy soul delight in thy husband, and the glory which shall come upon him.

B. Keep my commandments continually, and a crown of righteousness thou shalt receive. And except thou do this, where I am thou canst not come.

C. And verily, verily I say unto you, that this is my voice unto all. Amen.

Section 25

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Behold, I say unto you, that you shall let your time be devoted to the studying of the Scriptures, and to preaching, and to confirming the church at Colesville; and to performing your labors on the land, such as is required, until after you shall go to the west, to hold the next conference; and then it shall be made known what you shall do.

B. And all things shall be done by common consent in the church, by much prayer and faith; for all things you shall receive by faith. Amen.

Section 26

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Listen to the voice of Jesus Christ, your Lord, your God, and your Redeemer, whose word is quick and powerful.

B. For, behold, I say unto you, that it mattereth not what ye shall eat, or what ye shall drink, when ye partake of the sacrament, if it so be that ye do it with an eye single to my glory;

C. remembering unto the Father my body which was laid down for you, and my blood which was shed for the remission of your sins;

D. wherefore a commandment I give unto you, that you shall not purchase wine, neither strong drink of your enemies; wherefore ye shall partake of none, except it is made new among you; yea, in this my Father's kingdom which shall be built up on the earth.

2

A. Behold, this is wisdom in me; wherefore marvel not, for the hour cometh that I will drink of the fruit of the vine with you on the earth, and with Moroni, whom I have sent unto you to reveal the Book of Mormon, containing the fullness of my everlasting gospel;

B. to whom I have committed the keys of the record of the stick of Ephraim; and also with Elias, to whom I have committed the keys of bringing to pass the restoration of all things, or the restorer of all things spoken by the mouth of all the holy prophets since the world began, concerning the last days;

C. and also John the son of Zacharias, which Zacharias he (Elias) visited and gave promise that he should have a son, and his name should be John, and he should be filled with the spirit of Elias;

D. which John I have sent unto you, my servants, Joseph Smith, Jr., and Oliver Cowdery, to ordain you unto this first priesthood which you have received, that you might be called and ordained even as Aaron;

E. and also Elijah, unto whom I have committed the keys of the power of turning the hearts of the fathers to the children and the hearts of the children to the fathers, that the whole earth may not be smitten with a curse;

F. and also with Joseph, and Jacob, and Isaac, and Abraham, your fathers; by whom the promises remain; and also with Michael, or Adam, the father of all, the prince of all, the ancient of days.

3

A. And also with Peter, and James, and John, whom I have sent unto you, by whom I have ordained you and confirmed you to be apostles and especial witnesses of my name, and bear the keys of your ministry;

B. and of the same things which I revealed unto them; unto whom I have committed the keys of my kingdom, and a dispensation of the gospel for the last times;

C. and for the fullness of times, in the which I will gather together in one all things, both which are in heaven and which are on earth; and also with all those whom my Father hath given me out of the world;

D. wherefore lift up your hearts and rejoice, and gird up your loins, and take upon you my whole armor, that ye may be able to withstand the evil day, having done all ye may be able to stand.

E. Stand, therefore, having your loins girt about with truth, having on the breastplate of righteousness, and your feet shod with the preparation of the gospel of peace, which I have sent mine angels to commit unto you, taking the shield of faith wherewith ye shall be able to quench all the fiery darts of the wicked;

F. and take the helmet of salvation, and the sword of my Spirit, which I will pour out upon you, and my word which I reveal unto you, and be agreed as touching all things whatsoever ye ask of me,

G. and be faithful until I come, and ye shall be caught up, that where I am ye shall be also.
Amen.

Section 27

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

Behold, I say unto thee, Oliver, that it shall be given unto thee that thou shalt be heard by the church in all things whatsoever thou shalt teach them by the Comforter, concerning the revelations and commandments which I have given.

2

A. But, behold, verily, verily I say unto thee, No one shall be appointed to receive commandments and revelations in this church excepting my servant Joseph Smith, Jr., for he receiveth them even as Moses;

B. and thou shalt be obedient unto the things which I shall give unto him, even as Aaron, to declare faithfully the commandments and revelations, with power and authority unto the church.

C. And if thou art led at any time by the Comforter to speak or teach, or at all times by the way of commandment unto the church, thou mayest do it.

D. But thou shalt not write by way of commandment, but by wisdom; and thou shalt not command him who is at thy head, and at the head of the church, for I have given him the keys of the mysteries and the revelations, which are sealed, until I shall appoint unto them another in his stead.

3

A. And now, behold, I say unto thee that thou shalt go unto the Lamanites, and preach my gospel unto them;

B. and inasmuch as they receive thy teachings, thou shalt cause my church to be established among them, and thou shalt have revelations, but write them not by way of commandment.

C. And now, behold, I say unto thee, that it is not revealed, and no man knoweth where the city shall be built, but it shall be given hereafter.

D. Behold, I say unto thee that it shall be on the borders by the Lamanites.

4

A. Thou shalt not leave this place until after the conference, and my servant Joseph shall be appointed to preside over the conference by the voice of it, and what he saith to thee thou shalt tell.

B. And again, thou shalt take thy brother Hiram Page between him and thee alone, and tell him that those things which he hath written from that stone are not of me, and that Satan deceiveth him; for, behold, these things have not been appointed unto him;

C. neither shall anything be appointed unto any of this church contrary to the church covenants, for all things must be done in order and by common consent in the church, by the prayer of faith.

5

A. And thou shalt assist to settle all these things, according to the covenants of the church, before thou shalt take thy journey among the Lamanites.

B. And it shall be given thee from the time thou shalt go, until the time thou shalt return, what thou shalt do.

C. And thou must open thy mouth at all times, declaring my gospel with the sound of rejoicing. Amen.

Section 28

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Listen to the voice of Jesus Christ, your Redeemer, the great I AM, whose arm of mercy hath atoned for your sins, who will gather his people even as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, even as many as will hearken to my voice, and humble themselves before me, and call upon me in mighty prayer.

B. Behold, verily, verily I say unto you, that at this time your sins are forgiven you, therefore ye receive these things; but remember to sin no more, lest perils shall come upon you.

2

A. Verily I say unto you, that ye are chosen out of the world to declare my gospel with the sound of rejoicing, as with the voice of a trump;

B. lift up your hearts and be glad, for I am in your midst, and am your advocate with the Father; and it is his good will to give you the kingdom;

C. and as it is written, Whatsoever ye shall ask in faith, being united in prayer according to my command, ye shall receive; and ye are called to bring to pass the gathering of mine elect, for mine elect hear my voice and harden not their hearts;

D. wherefore the decree hath gone forth from the Father that they shall be gathered in unto one place, upon the face of this land, to prepare their hearts, and be prepared in all things, against the day when tribulation and desolation are sent forth upon the wicked;

E. for the hour is nigh, and the day soon at hand, when the earth is ripe; and all the proud, and they that do wickedly, shall be as stubble, and I will burn them up, saith the Lord of Hosts, that wickedness shall not be upon the earth;

F. for the hour is nigh, and that which was spoken by mine apostles must be fulfilled; for as they spoke, so shall it come to pass;

G. for I will reveal myself from heaven with power and great glory, with all the hosts thereof, and dwell in righteousness with men on earth a thousand years, and the wicked shall not stand.

3

A. And again, verily, verily I say unto you, and it hath gone forth in a firm decree, by the will of the Father,

B. that mine apostles, the twelve which were with me in my ministry at Jerusalem, shall stand at my right hand, at the day of my coming, in a pillar of fire, being clothed with robes of righteousness, with crowns upon their heads, in glory even as I am, to judge the whole house of Israel, even as many as have loved me and kept my commandments, and none else;

C. for a trump shall sound, both long and loud, even as upon Mount Sinai, and all the earth shall quake, and they shall come forth, yea, even the dead which died in me, to receive a crown of righteousness, and to be clothed upon, even as I am, to be with me, that we may be one.

4

A. But, behold, I say unto you, that before this great day shall come, the sun shall be darkened, and the moon shall be turned into blood, and the stars shall fall from heaven;

B. and there shall be greater signs in heaven above, and in the earth beneath; and there shall be weeping and wailing among the hosts of men; and there shall be a great hailstorm sent forth to destroy the crops of the earth;

C. and it shall come to pass, because of the wickedness of the world, that I will take vengeance upon the wicked, for they will not repent; for the cup of mine indignation is full; for, behold, my blood shall not cleanse them if they hear me not.

5

A. Wherefore, I, the Lord God, will send forth flies upon the face of the earth, which shall take hold of the inhabitants thereof, and shall eat their flesh, and shall cause maggots to come in upon them,

B. and their tongues shall be stayed that they shall not utter against me, and their flesh shall fall from off their bones, and their eyes from their sockets;

C. and it shall come to pass that the beasts of the forest and the fowls of the air shall devour them up; and the great and abominable church, which is the whore of all the earth, shall be cast down by devouring fire, according as it is spoken by the mouth of Ezekiel the prophet, which spoke of these things, which have not come to pass, but surely must, as I live, for abomination shall not reign.

6

A. And again, verily, verily I say unto you, that when the thousand years are ended, and men again begin to deny their God, then will I spare the earth but for a little season;

B. and the end shall come, and the heaven and the earth shall be consumed, and pass away, and there shall be a new heaven and a new earth;

C. for all old things shall pass away, and all things shall become new, even the heaven and the earth, and all the fullness thereof, both men and beasts, the fowls of the air, and the fishes of the sea;

D. and not one hair, neither mote, shall be lost, for it is the workmanship of mine hand.

7

A. But, behold, verily I say unto you, Before the earth shall pass away, Michael, mine archangel, shall sound his trump, and then shall all the dead awake, for their graves shall be opened, and they shall come forth; yea, even all;

B. and the righteous shall be gathered on my right hand unto eternal life; and the wicked on my left hand will I be ashamed to own before the Father;

C. wherefore I will say unto them, Depart from me ye cursed into everlasting fire, prepared for the Devil and his angels.

8

A. And now, behold, I say unto you, Never at any time, have I declared from my own mouth that they should return, for where I am they cannot come, for they have no power;

B. but remember that all my judgments are not given unto men; and as the words have gone forth out of my mouth, even so shall they be fulfilled;

C. that the first shall be last, and the last shall be first in all things, whatsoever I have created by the word of my power, which is the power of my Spirit; for by the power of my Spirit, created I them;

D. yea, all things both spiritual and temporal: firstly spiritual, secondly temporal, which is the beginning of my work; and again, firstly temporal, and secondly spiritual, which is the last of my work;

E. speaking unto you that you may naturally understand, but unto myself my works have no end, neither beginning; but it is given unto you that ye may understand, because ye have asked it of me and are agreed.

9

A. Wherefore, verily I say unto you, that all things unto me are spiritual, and not at any time have I given unto you a law which was temporal, neither any man, nor the children of men; neither Adam your father, whom I created;

B. behold, I gave unto him that he should be an agent unto himself; and I gave unto him commandment, but no temporal commandment gave I unto him;

C. for my commandments are spiritual; they are not natural, nor temporal, neither carnal nor sensual.

10

A. And it came to pass, that Adam being tempted of the Devil, for, behold, the Devil was before Adam, for he rebelled against me, saying,

B. Give me thine honor, which is my power; and also a third part of the hosts of heaven turned he away from me because of their agency;

C. and they were thrust down, and thus became the Devil and his angels; and, behold, there is a place prepared for them from the beginning, which place is hell;

D. and it must needs be that the Devil should tempt the children of men, or they could not be agents unto themselves, for if they never should have bitter, they could not know the sweet.

11

A. Wherefore, it came to pass, that the Devil tempted Adam and he partook the forbidden fruit, and transgressed the commandment, wherein he became subject to the will of the Devil, because he yielded unto temptation;

B. wherefore, I the Lord God caused that he should be cast out from the garden of Eden, from my presence, because of his transgression:

C. wherein he became spiritually dead, which is the first death, even that same death, which is the last death, which is spiritual, which shall be pronounced upon the wicked when I shall say, Depart ye cursed.

12

A. But, behold, I say unto you, that I, the Lord God, gave unto Adam and unto his seed, that they should not die as to the temporal death, until I, the Lord God, should send forth angels to declare unto them repentance and redemption through faith on the name of mine only begotten Son;

B. and thus did I, the Lord God, appoint unto man the days of his probation;

C. that by his natural death, he might be raised in immortality unto eternal life, even as many as would believe, and they that believed not, unto eternal damnation;

D. for they cannot be redeemed from their spiritual fall, because they repent not, for they will love darkness rather than light, and their deeds are evil, and they receive their wages of whom they list to obey.

13

A. But, behold, I say unto you, that little children are redeemed from the foundation of the world, through mine Only Begotten; wherefore they cannot sin, for power is not given unto Satan to tempt little children, until they begin to become accountable before me;

B. for it is given unto them even as I will, according to mine own pleasure, that great things may be required at the hand of their fathers.

14

A. And again I say unto you, that whoso having knowledge, have I not commanded to repent?

B. and he that hath no understanding, it remaineth in me to do according as it is written.

C. And now, I declare no more unto you at this time. Amen.

Section 29

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Behold, I say unto you, David, that you have feared man and have not relied on me for strength, as you ought;

B. but your mind has been on the things of the earth more than on the things of me, your Maker, and the ministry whereunto you have been called; and you have not given heed unto my Spirit, and to those who were set over you, but have been persuaded by those whom I have not commanded;

C. wherefore, you are left to inquire for yourself, at my hand, and ponder upon the things which you have received.

D. And your home shall be at your father's house, until I give unto you further commandments.

E. And you shall attend to the ministry in the church, and before the world, and in the regions round about. Amen.

2

A. Behold, I say unto you, Peter, that you shall take your journey with your brother, Oliver, for the time has come, that it is expedient in me, that you shall open your mouth to declare my gospel;

B. therefore, fear not but give heed unto the words and advice of your brother, which he shall give you.

C. And be you afflicted in all his afflictions, ever lifting up your heart unto me in prayer, and faith, for his and your deliverance; for I have given unto him power to build up my church among the Lamanites;

D. and none have I appointed to be his counselor, over him, in the church, concerning church matters, except it is his brother Joseph Smith, Jr.

E. Wherefore, give heed unto these things, and be diligent in keeping my commandments, and you shall be blessed unto eternal life. Amen.

3

A. Behold, I say unto you, my servant John, that thou shalt commence from this time forth to proclaim my gospel, as with the voice of a trump.

B. And your labor shall be at your brother Philip Burroughs', and in that region round about; yea, wherever you can be heard, until I command you to go from hence.

C. And your whole labor shall be in Zion, with all your soul, from henceforth; yea, you shall ever open your mouth in my cause, not fearing what man can do, for I am with you. Amen.

Section 30

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

- A.** Thomas, my son, blessed are you because of your faith in my work.
- B.** Behold, you have had many afflictions because of your family: nevertheless I will bless you, and your family: yea, your little ones, and the day cometh that they will believe and know the truth and be one with you in my church.

2

- A.** Lift up your heart and rejoice, for the hour of your mission is come; and your tongue shall be loosed, and you shall declare glad tidings of great joy unto this generation.
- B.** You shall declare the things which have been revealed to my servant Joseph Smith, Jr.
- C.** You shall begin to preach from this time forth; yea, to reap in the field which is white already to be burned;
- D.** therefore, thrust in your sickle with all your soul; and your sins are forgiven you; and you shall be laden with sheaves upon your back, for the laborer is worthy of his hire. Wherefore your family shall live.

3

- A.** Behold, verily I say unto you, Go from them only for a little time, and declare my word, and I will prepare a place for them; yea, I will open the hearts of the people and they will receive you.
- B.** And I will establish a church by your hand; and you shall strengthen them and prepare them against the time when they shall be gathered.
- C.** Be patient in afflictions, revile not against those that revile. Govern your house in meekness, and be steadfast.

4

- A.** Behold, I say unto you, that you shall be a physician unto the church, but not unto the world, for they will not receive you.
- B.** Go your way whithersoever I will, and it shall be given you by the Comforter what you shall do, and whither you shall go.

C. Pray always, lest you enter into temptation, and lose your reward. Be faithful unto the end, and lo, I am with you.

D. These words are not of man nor of men, but of me, even Jesus Christ, your Redeemer, by the will of the Father. Amen.

Section 31

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. And now concerning my servant Parley P. Pratt, behold, I say unto him, that as I live I will that he shall declare my gospel and learn of me, and be meek and lowly of heart;

B. and that which I have appointed unto him, is that he shall go with my servants Oliver Cowdery and Peter Whitmer, Jr., into the wilderness, among the Lamanites;

C. and Ziba Peterson, also, shall go with them, and I myself will go with them and be in their midst; and I am their Advocate with the Father, and nothing shall prevail.

D. And they shall give heed to that which is written and pretend to no other revelation, and they shall pray always that I may unfold them to their understanding;

E. and they shall give heed unto these words and trifle not, and I will bless them. Amen.

Section 32

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

- A.** Behold, I say unto you, my servants Ezra and Northrop,
- B.** Open ye your ears and hearken to the voice of the Lord your God, whose word is quick and powerful, sharper than a two-edged sword, to the dividing asunder of the joints and marrow, soul and spirit; and is a discerner of the thoughts and intents of the heart.
- C.** For verily, verily I say unto you, that ye are called to lift up your voices as with the sound of a trumpet, to declare my gospel unto a crooked and a perverse generation:
- D.** for, behold, the field is white already to harvest; and it is the eleventh hour, and for the last time that I shall call laborers into my vineyard.
- E.** And my vineyard has become corrupted every whit; and there is none which doeth good save it be a few; and they err in many instances, because of priestcrafts, all having corrupt minds.

2

- A.** And verily, verily I say unto you, that this church have I established and called forth out of the wilderness;
- B.** and even so will I gather mine elect from the four quarters of the earth, even as many as will believe in me, and hearken unto my voice;
- C.** yea, verily, verily I say unto you, that the field is white already to harvest; wherefore, thrust in your sickle, and reap with all your might, mind, and strength.
- D.** Open your mouths and they shall be filled; and you shall become as Nephi of old, who journeyed from Jerusalem in the wilderness;
- E.** yea, open your mouths and spare not, and you shall be laden with sheaves upon your backs, for lo, I am with you;
- F.** yea, open your mouths and they shall be filled, saying, Repent, repent and prepare ye the way of the Lord, and make his paths straight; for the kingdom of heaven is at hand;
- G.** yea, repent and be baptized every one of you, for the remission of your sins; yea, be baptized even by water, and then cometh the baptism of fire and the Holy Ghost.

3

A. Behold, verily, verily I say unto you, This is my gospel, and remember that they shall have faith in me, or they can in nowise be saved; and upon this Rock I will build my church;

B. yea, upon this Rock ye are built, and if ye continue, the gates of hell shall not prevail against you; and ye shall remember the church articles and covenants to keep them;

C. and whoso having faith you shall confirm in my church, by the laying on of the hands, and I will bestow the gift of the Holy Ghost upon them.

D. And the Book of Mormon, and the Holy Scriptures, are given of me for your instruction; and the power of my Spirit quickeneth all things;

E. wherefore, be faithful, praying always, having your lamps trimmed and burning, and oil with you, that you may be ready at the coming of the Bridegroom; for, behold, verily, verily I say unto you, that I come quickly; even so. Amen.

Section 33

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. My son Orson, hearken and hear and behold what I, the Lord God, shall say unto you, even Jesus Christ your Redeemer, the light and the life of the world; a light which shineth in darkness and the darkness comprehendeth it not;

B. who so loved the world that he gave his own life, that as many as would believe might become the sons of God;

C. wherefore you are my son, and blessed are you because you have believed, and more blessed are you because you are called of me to preach my gospel;

D. to lift up your voice as with the sound of a trump, both long and loud, and cry repentance unto a crooked and perverse generation; preparing the way of the Lord for his second coming; for, behold, verily, verily I say unto you,

E. The time is soon at hand, that I shall come in a cloud with power and great glory, and it shall be a great day at the time of my coming, for all nations shall tremble.

2

A. But before that great day shall come, the sun shall be darkened, and the moon be turned into blood, and the stars shall refuse their shining, and some shall fall, and great destructions await the wicked; wherefore lift up your voice and spare not, for the Lord God hath spoken.

B. Therefore prophesy and it shall be given by the power of the Holy Ghost; and if you are faithful, behold, I am with you until I come; and verily, verily I say unto you, I come quickly.

C. I am your Lord and your Redeemer. Even so. Amen.

Section 34

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Listen to the voice of the Lord your God, even Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end, whose course is one eternal round, the same today as yesterday and forever.

B. I am Jesus Christ, the Son of God, who was crucified for the sins of the world, even as many as will believe on my name, that they may become the sons of God, even one in me as I am in the Father, as the Father is one in me, that we may be one.

2

A. Behold, verily, verily I say unto my servant Sidney, I have looked upon thee and thy works. I have heard thy prayers and prepared thee for a greater work.

B. Thou art blessed, for thou shalt do great things. Behold, thou wast sent forth even as John, to prepare the way before me, and before Elijah which should come, and thou knew it not.

C. Thou didst baptize by water unto repentance, but they received not the Holy Ghost; but now I give unto thee a commandment, that thou shalt baptize by water, and they shall receive the Holy Ghost by the laying on of the hands, even as the apostles of old.

3

A. And it shall come to pass, that there shall be a great work in the land, even among the Gentiles, for their folly and their abominations shall be made manifest, in the eyes of all people;

B. for I am God, and mine arm is not shortened, and I will show miracles, signs and wonders, unto all those who believe on my name.

C. And whoso shall ask it in my name, in faith, they shall cast out devils; they shall heal the sick; they shall cause the blind to receive their sight, and the deaf to hear, and the dumb to speak, and the lame to walk;

D. and the time speedily cometh that great things are to be shown forth unto the children of men; but without faith shall not anything be shown forth except desolations upon Babylon, the same which has made all nations drink of the wine of the wrath of her fornication.

E. And there are none that doeth good except those who are ready to receive the fullness of my gospel, which I have sent forth unto this generation.

4

A. Wherefore, I have called upon the weak things of the world, those who are unlearned and despised, to thresh the nations by the power of my Spirit;

B. and their arm shall be my arm, and I will be their shield and their buckler, and I will gird up their loins, and they shall fight manfully for me;

C. and their enemies shall be under their feet; and I will let fall the sword in their behalf; and by the fire of mine indignation will I preserve them.

D. And the poor and the meek shall have the gospel preached unto them, and they shall be looking forth for the time of my coming, for it is nigh at hand;

E. and they shall learn the parable of the fig tree; for even now already summer is nigh, and I have sent forth the fullness of my gospel by the hand of my servant Joseph;

F. and in weakness have I blessed him, and I have given unto him the keys of the mystery of those things which have been sealed, even things which were from the foundation of the world, and the things which shall come from this time until the time of my coming, if he abide in me, and if not, another will I plant in his stead.

5

A. Wherefore watch over him that his faith fail not, and it shall be given by the Comforter, the Holy Ghost, that knoweth all things; and a commandment I give unto thee, that thou shalt write for him;

B. and the Scriptures shall be given even as they are in mine own bosom, to the salvation of mine own elect; for they will hear my voice, and shall see me, and shall not be asleep, and shall abide the day of my coming, for they shall be purified even as I am pure.

C. And now I say unto you, Tarry with him and he shall journey with you; forsake him not and surely these things shall be fulfilled.

D. And inasmuch as ye do not write, behold, it shall be given unto him to prophesy; and thou shalt preach my gospel; and call on the holy prophets to prove his words, as they shall be given him.

6

A. Keep all the commandments and covenants by which ye are bound, and I will cause the heavens to shake for your good, and Satan shall tremble, and Zion shall rejoice upon the hills, and flourish; and Israel shall be saved in mine own due time.

B. And by the keys which I have given shall they be led, and no more be confounded at all.

C. Lift up your hearts and be glad; your redemption draweth nigh.

D. Fear not, little flock, the kingdom is yours until I come. Behold, I come quickly. Even so.
Amen.

Section 35

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Thus saith the Lord God, the Mighty One of Israel, Behold, I say unto you, my servant Edward, that you are blessed, and your sins are forgiven you, and you are called to preach my gospel as with the voice of a trump;

B. and I will lay my hand upon you by the hand of my servant Sidney Rigdon, and you shall receive my Spirit, the Holy Ghost, even the Comforter, which shall teach you the peaceable things of the kingdom;

C. and you shall declare it with a loud voice, saying, Hosanna, blessed be the name of the most high God.

2

A. And now this calling and commandment give I unto you concerning all men, that as many as shall come before my servants Sidney Rigdon and Joseph Smith, Jr., embracing this calling and commandment, shall be ordained and sent forth to preach the everlasting gospel among the nations, crying repentance, saying,

B. Save yourselves from this untoward generation, and come forth out of the fire, hating even the garments spotted with the flesh.

3

A. And this commandment shall be given unto the elders of my church, that every man which will embrace it with singleness of heart, may be ordained and sent forth, even as I have spoken.

B. I am Jesus Christ, the Son of God; wherefore gird up your loins and I will suddenly come to my temple. Even so. Amen.

Section 36

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. And it came to pass that Enoch continued his speech, saying, Behold, our father Adam taught these things, and many have believed and become the sons of God, and many have believed not and perished in their sins, and are looking forth with fear in torment, for the fiery indignation of the wrath of God to be poured out upon them.

B. And from that time forth Enoch began to prophesy, saying unto the people that, as I was journeying, and stood upon the place Manhujah, I cried unto the Lord, and there came a voice out of heaven, saying, Turn ye and get ye upon the Mount Simeon.

C. And it came to pass that I turned and went upon the mount, and, as I stood upon the mount, I beheld the heavens open, and I was clothed upon with glory, and I saw the Lord;

D. he stood before my face, and he talked with me, even as a man talks one with another, face to face; and he said unto me, Look, and I will show unto you the world for the space of many generations.

E. And it came to pass that I beheld the valley Shum, and lo! a great people which dwelt in tents, which were the people of Shum.

F. And again the Lord said unto me, Look, and I looked toward the north, and I beheld the people of Cainan, which dwelt in tents.

G. And the Lord said unto me, Prophecy, and I prophesied, saying, Behold the people of Cainan, which are numerous, shall go forth in battle array against the people of Shum, and shall slay them, that they shall utterly be destroyed;

H. and the people of Cainan shall divide themselves in the land, and the land shall be barren and unfruitful and none other people shall dwell there but the people of Cainan; for, behold, the Lord shall curse the land with much heat, and the barrenness thereof shall go forth forever.

I. And there was blackness come unto all the children of Cainan, that they were despised among all people.

J. And it came to pass that the Lord said unto me, Look, and I looked and beheld the land of Sharon, and the land of Enoch, and the land of Omner, and the land of Heni, and the land of Shem, and the land of Haner, and the land of Hanannah, and all the inhabitants thereof.

K. And the Lord said unto me, Go to this people and say unto them, Repent, lest I come out and smite them with a curse, and they die.

L. And he gave unto me a commandment that I should baptize in the name of the Father and the Son, which is full of grace and truth, and the Holy Spirit, which bears record of the Father and the Son.

2

A. And it came to pass that Enoch continued to call upon all the people, save it were the people of Cainan, to repent.

B. And so great was the faith of Enoch that he led the people of God, and their enemies came to battle against them, and he spake the word of the Lord, and the earth trembled, and the mountains fled, even according to his command;

C. and the rivers of water were turned out of their course, and the roar of the lions was heard out of the wilderness, and all nations feared greatly, so powerful was the word of Enoch, and so great was the power of language which God had given him.

D. There also came up a land out of the depth of the sea; and so great was the fear of the enemies of the people of God, that they fled and stood afar off, and went upon the land which came up out of the depths of the sea.

E. And the giants of the land, also, stood afar off; and there went forth a curse upon all the people which fought against God.

F. And from that time forth there were wars and bloodsheds among them; but the Lord came and dwelt with his people, and they dwelt in righteousness.

G. The fear of the Lord was upon all nations, so great was the glory of the Lord which was upon his people. And the Lord blessed the land, and they were blessed upon the mountains, and upon the high places, and did flourish.

H. And the Lord called his people Zion, because they were of one heart and one mind, and dwelt in righteousness;

I. and there was no poor among them; and Enoch continued his preaching in righteousness unto the people of God.

3

A. And it came to pass in his days that he built a city that was called the city of holiness, even ZION.

B. And it came to pass that Enoch talked with the Lord, and he said unto the Lord, Surely Zion shall dwell in safety forever.

C. But the Lord said unto Enoch, Zion have I blessed, but the residue of the people have I cursed.

D. And it came to pass that the Lord showed unto Enoch all the inhabitants of the earth, and he beheld, and lo! Zion, in process of time, was taken up into heaven.

4

And the Lord said unto Enoch, Behold my abode forever; and Enoch also beheld the residue of the people which were the sons of Adam, and they were a mixture of all the seed of Adam, save it were the seed of Cain, for the seed of Cain were black, and had not place among them.

5

A. And after that Zion was taken up into heaven, Enoch beheld, and lo! all the nations of the earth were before him.

B. And there came generation upon generation, and Enoch was high and lifted up, even in the bosom of the Father and the Son of man; and, behold, the power of Satan was upon all the face of the earth.

C. And he saw angels descending out of heaven, and he heard a loud voice, saying, Woe, woe be unto the inhabitants of the earth!

D. And he beheld Satan, and he had a great chain in his hand, and it veiled the whole face of the earth with darkness, and he looked up and laughed, and his angels rejoiced.

6

A. And Enoch beheld angels descending out of heaven, bearing testimony of the Father and Son; and the Holy Spirit fell on many, and they were caught up by the powers of heaven into Zion.

B. And it came to pass that the God of heaven looked upon the residue of the people, and he wept, and Enoch bore record of it, saying, How is it the heavens weep and shed forth their tears as the rain upon the mountains?

C. And Enoch said unto the Lord, How is it that you can weep, seeing you are holy, and from all eternity to all eternity?

D. And were it possible that man could number the particles of the earth, and millions of earths like this, it would not be a beginning to the number of your creations;

E. and your curtains are stretched out still, and yet you are there, and your bosom is there; and also you are just; you are merciful and kind forever.

F. You have taken Zion to your own bosom from all your creations, from all eternity to all eternity, and naught but peace, justice, and truth is the habitation of your throne; and mercy shall go before your face, and have no end. How is it that you can weep?

7

A. The Lord said unto Enoch, Behold these your brethren; they are the workmanship of my own hands, and I gave unto them their knowledge, in the day I created them;

B. and in the garden of Eden gave I unto man his agency; and unto your brethren have I said, and also gave commandments, that they should love one another, and that they should choose me, their Father;

C. but, behold, they are without affection, and they hate their own blood, and the fire of my indignation is kindled against them, and in my hot displeasure will I send in the floods upon them, for my fierce anger is kindled against them.

D. Behold, I am God; Man of Holiness is my name; Man of Counsel is my name; and Endless and Eternal is my name, also.

E. Wherefore, I can stretch forth my hands and hold all the creations which I have made, and my eye can pierce them, also; and among all the workmanship of my hand there has not been so great wickedness as among your brethren; but, behold, their sins shall be upon the heads of their fathers.

F. Satan shall be their father, and misery shall be their doom; and the whole heavens shall weep over them, even all the workmanship of my hands.

G. Wherefore, should not the heavens weep, seeing these shall suffer?

H. But, behold, these which your eyes are upon, shall perish in the floods; and, behold, I will shut them up: a prison have I prepared for them.

I. And that which I have chosen has pleaded before my face. Wherefore he suffers for their sins, inasmuch as they will repent in the day that my chosen shall return unto me; and until that day they shall be in torment.

J. Wherefore, for this shall the heavens weep; yea, and all the workmanship of my hands.

8

A. And it came to pass that the Lord spake unto Enoch, and told Enoch all the doings of the children of men.

B. Wherefore Enoch knew and looked upon their wickedness and their misery, and wept and stretched forth his arms, and his heart swelled wide as eternity, and his bowels yearned, and all eternity shook.

C. And Enoch saw Noah, also, and his family, that the posterity of all the sons of Noah should be saved with a temporal salvation.

D. Wherefore he saw that Noah built an ark, and the Lord smiled upon it, and held it in his own hand; but upon the residue of the wicked came floods and swallowed them up.

E. And as Enoch saw thus, he had bitterness of soul, and wept over his brethren, and said unto the heavens, I will refuse to be comforted; but the Lord said unto Enoch, Lift up your heart and be glad, and look.

9

A. And it came to pass that Enoch looked, and, from Noah, he beheld all the families of the earth; and he cried unto the Lord, saying, When shall the day of the Lord come?

B. When shall the blood of the righteous be shed, that all they that mourn may be sanctified, and have eternal life?

C. And the Lord said, It shall be in the meridian of time, in the days of wickedness and vengeance.

D. And, behold, Enoch saw the day of the coming of the Son of man, even in the flesh; and his soul rejoiced, saying, The righteous is lifted up, and the Lamb is slain from the foundation of the world; and, through faith, I am in the bosom of the Father; and, behold, Zion is with me!

10

A. And it came to pass, that Enoch looked upon the earth, and he heard a voice from the bowels thereof, saying, Woe, woe is me the mother of men! I am pained: I am weary because of the wickedness of my children!

B. When shall I rest, and be cleansed from the filthiness which has gone forth out of me? When will my Creator sanctify me, that I may rest, and righteousness, for a season, abide upon my face?

C. And when Enoch heard the earth mourn, he wept, and cried unto the Lord, saying, O Lord, will you not have compassion upon the earth? Will you not bless the children of Noah?

D. And it came to pass that Enoch continued his cry unto the Lord, saying, I ask you, O Lord, in the name of your Only Begotten, even Jesus Christ, that you will have mercy upon Noah and his seed, that the earth might never more be covered by the floods?

E. And the Lord could not withhold; and he covenanted with Enoch, and swore unto him with an oath, that he would stay the floods; that he would call upon the children of Noah:

F. and he sent forth an unalterable decree, that a remnant of his seed should always be found among all nations, while the earth should stand;

G. and the Lord said, Blessed is he through whose seed Messiah shall come: for he says, I am Messiah, the King of Zion; the Rock of Heaven, which is broad as eternity.

H. Whoso comes in at the gate and climbs up by me shall never fall: wherefore, blessed are they of whom I have spoken, for they shall come forth with songs of everlasting joy.

11

A. And it came to pass, that Enoch cried unto the Lord, saying, When the Son of man comes in the flesh, shall the earth rest? I pray you show me these things.

B. And the Lord said unto Enoch, Look, and he looked and beheld the Son of man lifted upon the cross, after the manner of men; and he heard a loud voice; and the heavens were veiled; and all the creations of God mourned; and the earth groaned; and the rocks were rent;

C. and the saints arose and were crowned at the right hand of the Son of man, with crowns of glory; and as many of the spirits as were in prison, came forth and stood on the right hand of God; and the remainder were reserved in chains of darkness until the judgment of the great day.

D. And again, Enoch wept and cried unto the Lord, saying, When shall the earth rest?

12

A. And Enoch beheld the Son of man ascend up unto the Father; and he called unto the Lord, saying, Will you not come again upon the earth, for inasmuch as you are God, and I know you, and you have sworn unto me, and commanded me that I should ask in the name of your Only Begotten,

B. you have made me, and given unto me a right to your throne, and not of myself, but through your own grace; wherefore, I ask you if you will not come again on the earth?

C. And the Lord said unto Enoch, As I live, even so will I come in the last days—in the days of wickedness and vengeance, to fulfill the oath which I made unto you, concerning the children of Noah:

D. and the day shall come that the earth shall rest, but before that day, shall the heavens be darkened, and a veil of darkness shall cover the earth;

E. and the heavens shall shake, and also the earth; and great tribulations shall be among the children of men, but my people will I preserve; and righteousness will I send down out of heaven; and truth will I send forth out of the earth, to bear testimony of my Only Begotten;

F. his resurrection from the dead; yea, and also the resurrection of all men; and righteousness and truth will I cause to sweep the earth as with a flood, to gather out my own elect from the four quarters of the earth unto a place which I shall prepare;

G. a holy city, that my people may gird up their loins, and be looking forth for the time of my coming; for there shall be my tabernacle, and it shall be called Zion, a New Jerusalem.

13

A. And the Lord said unto Enoch, Then shall you and all your city meet them there, and we will receive them into our bosom, and they shall see us, and we will fall upon their necks, and they shall fall upon our necks, and we will kiss each other,

B. and there shall be my abode, and it shall be Zion which shall come forth out of all the creations which I have made; and for the space of a thousand years shall the earth rest.

14

A. And it came to pass that Enoch saw the days of the coming of the Son of man, in the last days, to dwell on the earth in righteousness, for the space of a thousand years.

B. But before that day he saw great tribulations among the wicked; and he also saw the sea, that it was troubled, and men's hearts failing them, looking forth with fear for the judgments of the Almighty God, which should come upon the wicked.

C. And the Lord showed Enoch all things, even unto the end of the world; and he saw the day of the righteous, the hour of their redemption, and received a fullness of joy:

D. and all the days of Zion in the days of Enoch, were three hundred and sixty-five years:

E. and Enoch and all his people walked with God, and he dwelt in the midst of Zion: and it came to pass that Zion was not, for God received it up into his own bosom; and from thence went forth the saying, Zion is fled.

Section 37

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Behold, I say unto you, that it is not expedient in me that ye should translate any more until ye shall go to the Ohio; and this because of the enemy and for your sakes.

B. And again, I say unto you, that ye shall not go until ye have preached my gospel in those parts, and have strengthened up the church whithersoever it is found, and more especially in Colesville; for, behold, they pray unto me in much faith.

2

A. And again a commandment I give unto the church, that it is expedient in me that they should assemble together at the Ohio, against the time that my servant Oliver Cowdery shall return unto them.

B. Behold, here is wisdom, and let every man choose for himself until I come. Even so. Amen.

Section 38

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Thus saith the Lord your God, even Jesus Christ, the great I AM, Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end, the same which looked upon the wide expanse of eternity, and all the seraphic hosts of heaven, before the world was made;

B. the same which knoweth all things, for all things are present before mine eyes: I am the same which spake and the world was made, and all things came by me: I am the same which have taken the Zion of Enoch into mine own bosom;

C. and verily I say, even as many as have believed on my name, for I am Christ, and in mine own name, by virtue of the blood which I have spilt, have I pleaded before the Father for them:

D. but, behold, the residue of the wicked have I kept in chains of darkness until the judgment of the great day, which shall come at the end of the earth;

E. and even so will I cause the wicked to be kept, that will not hear my voice but harden their hearts, and woe, woe, woe is their doom.

2

A. But, behold, verily, verily I say unto you, that mine eyes are upon you:

B. I am in your midst and ye cannot see me, but the day soon cometh that ye shall see me and know that I am; for the veil of darkness shall soon be rent, and he that is not purified shall not abide the day: wherefore, gird up your loins and be prepared.

C. Behold, the kingdom is yours and the enemy shall not overcome.

3

A. Verily I say unto you, Ye are clean but not all; and there is none else with whom I am well pleased, for all flesh is corruptible before me,

B. and the powers of darkness prevail upon the earth, among the children of men, in the presence of all the hosts of heaven, which causeth silence to reign, and all eternity is pained,

C. and the angels are waiting the great command to reap down the earth, to gather the tares that they may be burned; and, behold, the enemy is combined.

4

A. And now I show unto you a mystery, a thing which is had in secret chambers, to bring to pass even your destruction, in process of time, and ye knew it not, but now I tell it unto you,

B. and ye are blessed, not because of your iniquity, neither your hearts of unbelief, for verily some of you are guilty before me; but I will be merciful unto your weakness.

C. Therefore, be ye strong from henceforth; fear not for the kingdom is yours: and for your salvation I give unto you a commandment, for I have heard your prayers, and the poor have complained before me, and the rich have I made, and all flesh is mine, and I am no respecter of persons.

D. And I have made the earth rich, and, behold, it is my footstool: wherefore, again I will stand upon it; and I hold forth and deign to give unto you greater riches, even a land of promise;

E. a land flowing with milk and honey, upon which there shall be no curse when the Lord cometh; and I will give it unto you for the land of your inheritance, if you seek it with all your hearts:

F. and this shall be my covenant with you, Ye shall have it for the land of your inheritance, and for the inheritance of your children forever, while the earth shall stand; and ye shall possess it again in eternity, no more to pass away.

5

A. But verily I say unto you, that, in time, ye shall have no king nor ruler, for I will be your king and watch over you.

B. Wherefore, hear my voice and follow me, and you shall be a free people, and ye shall have no laws but my laws, when I come, for I am your lawgiver, and what can stay my hand?

C. But verily I say unto you, Teach one another according to the office wherewith I have appointed you, and let every man esteem his brother as himself, and practice virtue and holiness before me.

D. And again I say unto you, Let every man esteem his brother as himself: for what man among you having twelve sons, and is no respecter to them, and they serve him obediently, and he saith unto the one, Be thou clothed in robes and sit thou here; and to the other, Be thou clothed in rags and sit thou there, and looketh upon his sons and saith, I am just.

6

A. Behold, this I have given unto you a parable, and it is even as I am: I say unto you, Be one; and if ye are not one, ye are not mine.

B. And again I say unto you, that the enemy in the secret chambers seeketh your lives.

C. Ye hear of wars in far countries, and you say that there will soon be great wars in far countries, but ye know not the hearts of men in your own land.

D. I tell you these things because of your prayers; wherefore, treasure up wisdom in your bosoms, lest the wickedness of men reveal these things unto you, by their wickedness, in a manner that shall speak in your ears, with a voice louder than that which shall shake the earth: but if ye are prepared, ye shall not fear.

7

A. And that ye might escape the power of the enemy, and be gathered unto me a righteous people, without spot and blameless:

B. wherefore, for this cause I gave unto you the commandment, that you should go to the Ohio; and there I will give unto you my law;

C. and there you shall be endowed with power from on high, and from thence, whosoever I will, shall go forth among all nations, and it shall be told them what they shall do;

D. for I have a great work laid up in store, for Israel shall be saved, and I will lead them whithersoever I will, and no power shall stay my hand.

8

A. And now I give unto the church in these parts, a commandment, that certain men among them shall be appointed, and they shall be appointed by the voice of the church;

B. and they shall look to the poor and the needy, and administer to their relief, that they shall not suffer; and send them forth to the place which I have commanded them;

C. and this shall be their work, to govern the affairs of the property of this church.

D. And they that have farms that cannot be sold, let them be left or rented as seemeth them good.

E. See that all things are preserved, and when men are endowed with power from on high, and sent forth, all these things shall be gathered unto the bosom of the church.

9

A. And if ye seek the riches which it is the will of the Father to give unto you, ye shall be the richest of all people; for ye shall have the riches of eternity;

B. and it must needs be that the riches of the earth are mine to give: but beware of pride, lest ye become as the Nephites of old.

C. And again I say unto you, I give unto you a commandment, that every man, both elder, priest, teacher, and also member, go to with his might, with the labor of his hands, to prepare and accomplish the things which I have commanded.

D. And let your preaching be the warning voice, every man to his neighbor, in mildness and in meekness.

E. And go ye out from among the wicked. Save yourselves. Be ye clean that bear the vessels of the Lord. Even so. Amen.

Section 39

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Hearken and listen to the voice of him who is from all eternity to all eternity, the great I AM, even Jesus Christ, the light and the life of the world; a light which shineth in darkness, and the darkness comprehendeth it not;

B. the same which came in the meridian of time unto my own, and my own received me not;

C. but to as many as received me, gave I power to become my sons, and even so will I give unto as many as will receive me, power to become my sons.

2

A. And verily, verily I say unto thee, He that receiveth my gospel, receiveth me; and he that receiveth not my gospel, receiveth not me.

B. And this is my gospel: repentance and baptism by water, and then cometh the baptism of fire and the Holy Ghost, even the Comforter, which showeth all things, and teacheth the peaceable things of the kingdom.

3

A. And now, behold, I say unto thee, my servant James, I have looked upon thy works, and I know thee; and verily I say unto thee, Thine heart is now right before me at this time, and, behold, I have bestowed great blessings upon thy head;

B. nevertheless thou hast seen great sorrow, for thou hast rejected me many times because of pride, and the cares of the world;

C. but, behold, the days of thy deliverance are come, if thou wilt hearken to my voice, which saith unto thee, Arise and be baptized, and wash away thy sins, calling on my name, and thou shalt receive my Spirit, and a blessing so great as thou hast never known.

D. And if thou doest this, I have prepared thee for a greater work.

E. Thou shalt preach the fullness of my gospel which I have sent forth in these last days; the covenant which I have sent forth to recover my people, which are of the house of Israel.

4

A. And it shall come to pass that power shall rest upon thee; thou shalt have great faith and I will be with thee and go before thy face.

B. Thou art called to labor in my vineyard, and to build up my church, and to bring forth Zion, that it may rejoice upon the hills and flourish.

C. Behold, verily, verily I say unto thee, Thou are not called to go into the eastern countries, but thou are called to go to the Ohio.

D. And inasmuch as my people shall assemble themselves to the Ohio, I have kept in store a blessing such as is not known among the children of men, and it shall be poured forth upon their heads. And from thence men shall go forth into all nations.

5

A. Behold, verily, verily I say unto thee, that the people in Ohio call upon me in much faith, thinking I will stay my hand in judgment upon the nations, but I cannot deny my word; wherefore lay to with thy might and call faithful laborers into my vineyard, that it may be pruned for the last time.

B. And inasmuch as they do repent and receive the fullness of my gospel, and become sanctified, I will stay mine hand in judgment; wherefore, go forth, crying with a loud voice, saying, The kingdom of heaven is at hand; crying, Hosanna! blessed be the name of the most high God.

C. Go forth baptizing with water, preparing the way before my face, for the time of my coming; for the time is at hand; the day nor the hour no man knoweth; but it surely shall come, and he that receiveth these things receiveth me; and they shall be gathered unto me in time and in eternity.

6

And again, it shall come to pass, that on as many as ye shall baptize with water, ye shall lay your hands, and they shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost, and shall be looking forth for the signs of my coming, and shall know me. Behold, I come quickly. Even so. Amen.

Section 40

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Behold, verily I say unto you, that the heart of my servant James Covill was right before me, for he covenanted with me, that he would obey my word.

B. And he received the word with gladness, but straightway Satan tempted him; and the fear of persecution, and the cares of the world, caused him to reject the word; wherefore he broke my covenant,

C. and it remaineth with me to do with him as seemeth me good. Amen.

Section 41

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Hearken and hear, O ye my people, saith the Lord and your God, ye whom I delight to bless with the greatest blessings; ye that hear me: and ye that hear me not will I curse, that have professed my name, with the heaviest of all cursings.

B. Hearken, O ye elders of my church whom I have called; behold, I give unto you a commandment, that ye shall assemble yourselves together to agree upon my word, and by the prayer of your faith ye shall receive my law, that ye may know how to govern my church, and have all things right before me.

2

A. And I will be your Ruler when I come; and, behold, I come quickly; and ye shall see that my law is kept.

B. He that receiveth my law and doeth it, the same is my disciple; and he that saith he receiveth it and doeth it not, the same is not my disciple, and shall be cast out from among you;

C. for it is not meet that the things which belong to the children of the kingdom, should be given to them that are not worthy, or to dogs, or the pearls to be cast before swine.

3

A. And again, it is meet that my servant Joseph Smith, Jr., should have a house built, in which to live and translate.

B. And again, it is meet that my servant Sidney Rigdon should live as seemeth him good, inasmuch as he keepeth my commandments.

C. And again, I have called my servant Edward Partridge, and give a commandment, that he should be appointed by the voice of the church, and ordained a bishop unto the church, to leave his merchandise and spend all his time in the labors of the church; to see to all things as it shall be appointed unto him in my laws in the day that I shall give them.

D. And this because his heart is pure before me, for he is like unto Nathaniel of old, in whom there is no guile.

E. These words are given unto you, and they are pure before me; wherefore, beware how you hold them, for they are to be answered upon your souls in the day of judgment. Even so. Amen.

Section 42

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Hearken, O ye elders of my church, who have assembled themselves together, in my name, even Jesus Christ, the Son of the living God, the Savior of the world, inasmuch as they believe on my name and keep my commandments;

B. again I say unto you, Hearken and hear and obey the law which I shall give unto you; for verily I say,

C. As ye have assembled yourselves together according to the commandment wherewith I commanded you, and are agreed as touching this one thing, and have asked the Father in my name, even so ye shall receive.

2

A. Behold, verily I say unto you, I give unto you this first commandment, that ye shall go forth in my name, every one of you, excepting my servants Joseph Smith, Jr., and Sidney Rigdon.

B. And I give unto them a commandment that they shall go forth for a little season, and it shall be given by the power of my Spirit when they shall return;

C. and ye shall go forth in the power of my Spirit, preaching my gospel, two by two, in my name, lifting up your voices as with the voice of a trump, declaring my word like unto angels of God;

D. and ye shall go forth baptizing with water, saying, Repent ye, repent ye, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand.

3

A. And from this place ye shall go forth into the regions westward;

B. and inasmuch as ye shall find them that will receive you, ye shall build up my church in every region, until the time shall come when it shall be revealed unto you from on high, when the city of the New Jerusalem shall be prepared, that ye may be gathered in one, that ye may be my people, and I will be your God.

C. And again, I say unto you, that my servant Edward Partridge shall stand in the office wherewith I have appointed him. And it shall come to pass that if he transgress, another shall be appointed in his stead. Even so. Amen.

4

Again I say unto you that it shall not be given to anyone to go forth to preach my gospel, or to build up my church, except he be ordained by someone who has authority, and it is known to the church that he has authority, and has been regularly ordained by the heads of the church.

5

A. And again, the elders, priests, and teachers of this church shall teach the principles of my gospel which are in the Bible and the Book of Mormon, in which is the fullness of the gospel;

B. and they shall observe the covenants and church articles to do them, and these shall be their teachings, as they shall be directed by the Spirit; and the Spirit shall be given unto you by the prayer of faith, and if ye receive not the Spirit ye shall not teach.

C. And all this ye shall observe to do as I have commanded concerning your teaching, until the fullness of my Scriptures is given.

D. And as ye shall lift up your voices by the Comforter, ye shall speak and prophesy as seemeth me good; for, behold, the Comforter knoweth all things, and beareth record of the Father and of the Son.

6

And now, behold, I speak unto the church. Thou shalt not kill; and he that kills shall not have forgiveness in this world, nor in the world to come.

7

A. And again, I say, Thou shalt not kill; but he that killeth shall die.

B. Thou shalt not steal; and he that stealeth and will not repent, shall be cast out.

C. Thou shalt not lie; he that lieth and will not repent, shall be cast out.

D. Thou shalt love thy wife with all thy heart, and shall cleave unto her and none else; and he that looketh upon a woman to lust after her, shall deny the faith, and shall not have the Spirit; and if he repents not, he shall be cast out.

E. Thou shalt not commit adultery; and he that committeth adultery and repenteth not, shall be cast out; but he that hath committed adultery and repents with all his heart, and forsaketh it, and doeth it no more, thou shalt forgive; but if he doeth it again, he shall not be forgiven, but shall be cast out.

F. Thou shalt not speak evil of thy neighbor, nor do him any harm.

G. Thou knowest my laws concerning these things are given in my Scriptures; he that sinneth and repenteth not, shall be cast out.

8

A. If thou lovest me, thou shalt serve me and keep all my commandments.

B. And, behold, thou wilt remember the poor, and consecrate of thy properties for their support, that which thou hast to impart unto them, with a covenant and a deed which cannot be broken; **C.** and inasmuch as ye impart of your substance unto the poor, ye will do it unto me, and it shall be laid before the bishop of my church and his counselors, two of the elders, or high priests, such as he shall or has appointed and set apart for that purpose.

9

A. And it shall come to pass that after they are laid before the bishop of my church, and after that he has received these testimonies concerning the consecration of the properties of my church, that they cannot be taken from the church, agreeable to my commandments;

B. every man shall be made accountable unto me a steward over his own property, or that which he has received by consecration, inasmuch as is sufficient for himself and family.

10

A. And again, if there shall be properties in the hands of the church, or any individuals of it, more than is necessary for their support, after this first consecration, which is a residue, to be consecrated unto the bishop, it shall be kept to administer unto those who have not, from time to time, that every man who has need may be amply supplied, and receive according to his wants.

B. Therefore, the residue shall be kept in my storehouse, to administer to the poor and the needy, as shall be appointed by the high council of the church, and the bishop and his council, and for the purpose of purchasing lands for the public benefit of the church, and building houses of worship,

C. and building up of the New Jerusalem which is hereafter to be revealed, that my covenant people may be gathered in one, in that day when I shall come to my temple. And this I do for the salvation of my people.

11

A. And it shall come to pass that he that sinneth and repenteth not, shall be cast out of the church, and shall not receive again that which he has consecrated unto the poor and the needy of my church, or, in other words, unto me;

B. for inasmuch as ye do it unto the least of these, ye do it unto me; for it shall come to pass that which I spake by the mouths of my prophets shall be fulfilled;

C. for I will consecrate of the riches of those who embrace my gospel, among the Gentiles, unto the poor of my people who are of the house of Israel

12

A. And again, thou shalt not be proud in thy heart; let all thy garments be plain, and their beauty the beauty of the work of thine own hands, and let all things be done in cleanliness before me.

B. Thou shalt not be idle; for he that is idle shall not eat the bread nor wear the garments of the laborer.

C. And whosoever among you are sick, and have not faith to be healed, but believe, shall be nourished with all tenderness with herbs and mild food, and that not by the hand of an enemy.

D. And the elders of the church, two or more, shall be called, and shall pray for, and lay their hands upon them in my name; and if they die, they shall die unto me, and if they live, they shall live unto me.

E. Thou shalt live together in love, insomuch that thou shalt weep for the loss of them that die, and more especially for those that have not hope of a glorious resurrection.

F. And it shall come to pass that those that die in me shall not taste of death, for it shall be sweet unto them; and they that die not in me, woe unto them, for their death is bitter.

13

A. And again, it shall come to pass, that he that has faith in me to be healed, and is not appointed unto death, shall be healed; he who has faith to see shall see; he who has faith to hear shall hear, the lame who have faith to leap shall leap;

B. and they who have not faith to do these things, but believe in me, have power to become my sons; and inasmuch as they break not my laws, thou shalt bear their infirmities.

14

A. Thou shalt stand in the place of thy stewardship; thou shalt not take thy brother's garment; thou shalt pay for that which thou shalt receive of thy brother;

B. and if thou obtainest more than that which would be for thy support, thou shalt give it unto my storehouse, that all things may be done according to that which I have said.

15

A. Thou shalt ask, and my Scriptures shall be given as I have appointed, and they shall be preserved in safety; and it is expedient that thou shouldst hold thy peace concerning them, and not teach them until thou hast received them in full.

B. And I give unto you a commandment, that then ye shall teach them unto all men; for they shall be taught unto all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people.

16

A. Thou shalt take the things which thou hast received, which have been given unto thee in my Scriptures for a law, to be my law, to govern my church;

B. and he that doeth according to these things, shall be saved, and he that doeth them not shall be damned, if he continues.

17

A. If thou shalt ask, thou shalt receive revelation upon revelation, knowledge upon knowledge, that thou mayest know the mysteries, and peaceable things; that which bringeth joy, that which bringeth life eternal.

B. Thou shalt ask, and it shall be revealed unto thee in mine own due time, where the New Jerusalem shall be built.

18

A. And, behold, it shall come to pass, that my servants shall be sent forth to the east, and to the west, to the north, and to the south; and even now, let him that goeth to the east, teach them that shall be converted to flee to the west; and this in consequence of that which is coming on the earth, and of secret combinations.

B. Behold, thou shalt observe all these things, and great shall be thy reward; for unto thee it is given to know the mysteries of the kingdom, but unto the world it is not given to know them.

C. Ye shall observe the laws which ye have received, and be faithful. And ye shall hereafter receive church covenants, such as shall be sufficient to establish you, both here, and in the New Jerusalem.

D. Therefore, he that lacketh wisdom, let him ask of me, and I will give him liberally, and upbraid him not.

E. Lift up your hearts and rejoice, for unto you the kingdom, or in other words, the keys of the church, have been given. Even so. Amen.

19

A. The priests and teachers shall have their stewardships, even as the members; and the elders, or high priests who are appointed to assist the bishop as counselors, in all things are to have their families supported out of the property which is consecrated to the bishop,

B. for the good of the poor, and for other purposes, as before mentioned, or they are to receive a just remuneration for all their services; either a stewardship, or otherwise, as may be thought best, or decided by the counselors and bishop.

C. And the bishop also shall receive his support, or a just remuneration for all his services, in the church.

20

A. Behold, verily I say unto you, that whatever persons among you having put away their companions for the cause of fornication, or in other words, if they shall testify before you in all lowliness of heart that this is the case, ye shall not cast them out from among you;

B. but if ye shall find that any persons have left their companions for the sake of adultery, and they themselves are the offenders, and their companions are living, they shall be cast out from among you.

C. And again I say unto you, that ye shall be watchful and careful, with all inquiry, that ye receive none such among you if they are married, and if they are not married, they shall repent of all their sins, or ye shall not receive them.

21

A. And again, every person who belongeth to this church of Christ shall observe to keep all the commandments and covenants of the church.

B. And it shall come to pass, that if any persons among you shall kill, they shall be delivered up and dealt with according to the laws of the land;

C. for remember that he hath no forgiveness; and it shall be proven according to the laws of the land.

22

A. And if any man or woman shall commit adultery, he or she shall be tried before two elders of the church or more, and every word shall be established against him or her by two witnesses of the church, and not of the enemy;

B. but if there are more than two witnesses it is better; but he or she shall be condemned by the mouth of two witnesses,

- C.** and the elders shall lay the case before the church, and the church shall lift up their hands against him or her, that they may be dealt with according to the law of God.
- D.** And if it can be, it is necessary that the bishop is present also.
- E.** And thus ye shall do in all cases which shall come before you.
- F.** And if a man or woman shall rob, he or she shall be delivered up unto the law of the land.
- G.** And if he or she shall steal, he or she shall be delivered up unto the law of the land.
- H.** And if he or she shall lie, he or she shall be delivered up unto the law of the land.
- I.** If he or she do any manner of iniquity, he or she shall be delivered up unto the law, even that of God.

23

- A.** And if thy brother or sister offend thee, thou shalt take him or her between him or her and thee alone; and if he or she confess, thou shalt be reconciled.
- B.** And if he or she confess not, thou shalt deliver him or her up unto the church, not to the members, but to the elders.
- C.** And it shall be done in a meeting, and that not before the world.
- D.** And if thy brother or sister offend many, he or she shall be chastened before many.
- E.** And if anyone offend openly, he or she shall be rebuked openly, that he or she may be ashamed.
- F.** And if he or she confess not, he or she shall be delivered up unto the law of God.
- G.** If any shall offend in secret, he or she shall be rebuked in secret, that he or she may have opportunity to confess in secret to him or her whom he or she has offended, and to God, that the church may not speak reproachfully of him or her.
- H.** And thus shall ye conduct in all things.

Section 43

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. O hearken, ye elders of my church, and give ear to the words which I shall speak unto you: for, behold, verily, verily I say unto you, that ye have received a commandment for a law unto my church, through him whom I have appointed unto you, to receive commandments and revelations from my hand.

B. And this ye shall know assuredly, that there is none other appointed unto you to receive commandments and revelations until he be taken, if he abide in me.

2

A. But verily, verily I say unto you, that none else shall be appointed unto this gift except it be through him, for if it be taken from him he shall not have power, except to appoint another in his stead;

B. and this shall be a law unto you, that ye receive not the teachings of any that shall come before you as revelations, or commandments; and this I give unto you, that you may not be deceived, that you may know they are not of me.

C. For verily I say unto you, that he that is ordained of me, shall come in at the gate and be ordained as I have told you before, to teach those revelations which you have received, and shall receive through him whom I have appointed.

3

A. And now, behold, I give unto you a commandment, that when ye are assembled together, ye shall instruct and edify each other, that ye may know how to act and direct my church how to act upon the points of my law and commandments, which I have given;

B. and thus ye shall become instructed in the law of my church, and be sanctified by that which ye have received, and ye shall bind yourselves to act in all holiness before me, that inasmuch as ye do this, glory shall be added to the kingdom which ye have received.

C. Inasmuch as ye do it not, it shall be taken; even that which ye have received.

D. Purge ye out the iniquity which is among you; sanctify yourselves before me, and if ye desire the glories of the kingdom, appoint ye my servant Joseph Smith, Jr., and uphold him before me by the prayer of faith.

E. And again, I say unto you, that if ye desire the mysteries of the kingdom, provide for him food and raiment and whatsoever thing he needeth to accomplish the work, wherewith I have commanded him;

F. and if ye do it not, he shall remain unto them that have received him, that I may reserve unto myself a pure people before me.

4

A. Again I say, hearken ye elders of my church whom I have appointed:

B. ye are not sent forth to be taught, but to teach the children of men the things which I have put into your hands by the power of my Spirit;

C. and ye are to be taught from on high.

D. Sanctify yourselves and ye shall be endowed with power, that ye may give even as I have spoken.

5

A. Hearken ye, for, behold, the great day of the Lord is nigh at hand.

B. For the day cometh that the Lord shall utter his voice out of heaven; the heavens shall shake and the earth shall tremble, and the trump of God shall sound both long and loud, and shall say to the sleeping nations;

C. Ye saints arise and live: Ye sinners stay and sleep until I shall call again: wherefore gird up your loins, lest ye be found among the wicked. Lift up your voices and spare not.

D. Call upon the nations to repent, both old and young, both bond and free; saying,

E. Prepare yourselves for the great day of the Lord: for if I, who am a man, do lift up my voice and call upon you to repent, and ye hate me, what will ye say when the day cometh when the thunders shall utter their voices from the ends of the earth, speaking to the ears of all that live, saying:

F. Repent, and prepare for the great day of the Lord; yea, and again, when the lightnings shall streak forth from the east unto the west, and shall utter forth their voices unto all that live, and make the ears of all tingle, that hear, saying these words:

G. Repent ye, for the great day of the Lord is come.

6

A. And again, the Lord shall utter his voice out of heaven, saying: Hearken, O ye nations of the earth, and hear the words of that God who made you.

B. O, ye nations of the earth, how often would I have gathered you together as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, but ye would not?

C. How oft have I called upon you by the mouth of my servants, and by the ministering of angels, and by mine own voice, and by the voice of thunderings, and by the voice of lightnings, and by the voice of tempests, and by the voice of earthquakes, and great hailstorms, and by the voice of famines and pestilences of every kind, and by the great sound of a trumpet, and by the voice of judgment, and by the voice of mercy all the day long, and by the voice of glory and honor, and the riches of eternal life, and would have saved you with an everlasting salvation, but ye would not?

D. Behold, the day has come, when the cup of the wrath of mine indignation is full.

7

A. Behold, verily I say unto you, that these are the words of the Lord your God; wherefore, labor ye, labor ye in my vineyard for the last time:

B. for the last time call upon the inhabitants of the earth, for in my own due time will I come upon the earth in judgment; and my people shall be redeemed and shall reign with me on earth;

C. for the great millennial, which I have spoken by the mouth of my servants, shall come; for Satan shall be bound; and when he is loosed again, he shall only reign for a little season, and then cometh the end of the earth;

D. and he that liveth in righteousness, shall be changed in the twinkling of an eye;

E. and the earth shall pass away so as by fire;

F. and the wicked shall go away into unquenchable fire;

G. and their end no man knoweth, on earth, nor ever shall know, until they come before me in judgment.

8

A. Hearken ye to these words, behold, I am Jesus Christ, the Savior of the world.

B. Treasure these things up in your hearts, and let the solemnities of eternity rest upon your minds.

C. Be sober. Keep all my commandments. Even so. Amen.

Section 44

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Behold, thus saith the Lord unto you, my servants,

B. It is expedient in me that the elders of my church should be called together, from the east, and from the west, and from the north, and from the south, by letter, or some other way.

2

A. And it shall come to pass, that inasmuch as they are faithful, and exercise faith in me, I will pour out my Spirit upon them in the day that they assemble themselves together.

B. And it shall come to pass that they shall go forth into the regions round about, and preach repentance unto the people;

C. and many shall be converted, insomuch that ye shall obtain power to organize yourselves according to the laws of man, that your enemies may not have power over you, that you may be preserved in all things, that you may be enabled to keep my laws, that every band may be broken wherewith the enemy seeketh to destroy my people.

3

Behold, I say unto you, that ye must visit the poor and the needy, and administer to their relief, that they may be kept until all things may be done according to my law, which ye have received. Amen.

Section 45

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Hearken, O ye people of my church, to whom the kingdom has been given, hearken ye, and give ear to him who laid the foundation of the earth, who made the heavens and all the hosts thereof, and by whom all things were made which live and move and have a being.

B. And again I say, Hearken unto my voice, lest death shall overtake you; in an hour when ye think not, the summer shall be past, and the harvest ended, and your souls not saved.

C. Listen to him who is the Advocate with the Father, who is pleading your cause before him, saying,

D. Father, behold the sufferings and death of him who did no sin, in whom thou wast well pleased; behold the blood of thy Son which was shed, the blood of him whom thou gavest that thyself might be glorified;

E. wherefore, Father, spare these my brethren that believe on my name, that they may come unto me and have everlasting life.

2

A. Hearken, O ye people of my church, and ye elders, listen together, and hear my voice, while it is called today, and harden not your hearts;

B. for verily I say unto you that I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end, the light and the life of the world; a light that shineth in darkness, and the darkness comprehendeth it not.

C. I came unto my own, and my own received me not; but unto as many as received me gave I power to do many miracles and to become the sons of God, and even unto them that believed on my name gave I power to obtain eternal life.

D. And even so I have sent mine everlasting covenant into the world, to be a light to the world, and to be a standard for my people and for the Gentiles to seek to it, and to be a messenger before my face to prepare the way before me.

E. Wherefore come ye unto it; and with him that cometh I will reason as with men in days of old, and I will show unto you my strong reasoning;

F. wherefore hearken ye together, and let me show it unto you, even my wisdom, the wisdom of him who ye say is the God of Enoch and his brethren, who were separated from the earth, and were received unto myself;

G. a city reserved until a day of righteousness shall come:

H. a day which was sought for by all holy men, and they found it not, because of wickedness and abominations, and confessed that they were strangers and pilgrims on the earth, but obtained a promise that they should find it, and see it in their flesh.

I. Wherefore hearken, and I will reason with you, and I will speak unto you and prophesy, as unto men in days of old;

J. and I will show it plainly, as I showed it unto my disciples, as I stood before them in the flesh, and spake unto them, saying,

K. As ye have asked of me concerning the signs of my coming, in the day when I shall come in my glory in the clouds of heaven, to fulfill the promises that I have made unto your fathers;

L. for as ye have looked upon the long absence of your spirits from your bodies to be a bondage, I will show unto you how the day of redemption shall come, and also the restoration of the scattered Israel.

3

A. And now ye behold this temple which is in Jerusalem, which ye call the house of God, and your enemies say that this house shall never fall.

B. But verily I say unto you that desolation shall come upon this generation as a thief in the night, and this people shall be destroyed and scattered among all nations.

C. And this temple which ye now see shall be thrown down, that there shall not be left one stone upon another.

D. And it shall come to pass that this generation of Jews shall not pass away until every desolation which I have told you concerning them shall come to pass.

E. Ye say that ye know that the end of the world cometh; ye say, also, that ye know that the heavens and the earth shall pass away; and in this ye say truly, for so it is; but these things which I have told you shall not pass away until all shall be fulfilled.

F. And this I have told you concerning Jerusalem; and when that day shall come, shall a remnant be scattered among all nations, but they shall be gathered again; but they shall remain until the times of the Gentiles be fulfilled.

4

A. And in that day shall be heard of wars and rumors of wars, and the whole earth shall be in commotion, and men's hearts shall fail them, and they shall say that Christ delayeth his coming until the end of the earth.

B. And the love of men shall wax cold, and iniquity shall abound; and when the time of the Gentiles is come in, a light shall break forth among them that sit in darkness, and it shall be the fullness of my gospel;

C. but they receive it not, for they perceive not the light, and they turn their hearts from me because of the precepts of men;

D. and in that generation shall the times of the Gentiles be fulfilled; and there shall be men standing in that generation that shall not pass, until they shall see an overflowing scourge, for a desolating sickness shall come over the land;

E. but my disciples shall stand in holy places, and shall not be moved; but among the wicked, men shall lift up their voices and curse God, and die.

F. And there shall be earthquakes, also, in divers places and many desolations; yet men will harden their hearts against me, and they will take up the sword one against another, and they will kill one another.

5

A. And now, when I the Lord had spoken these words unto my disciples, they were troubled;

B. and I said unto them, Be not troubled, for when all these things shall come to pass, ye may know that the promises which have been made unto you shall be fulfilled;

C. and when the light shall begin to break forth, it shall be with them like unto a parable which I shall show you;

D. ye look and behold the fig trees, and ye see them with your eyes, and ye say, when they begin to shoot forth and their leaves are yet tender, that summer is now nigh at hand;

E. even so it shall be in that day, when they shall see all these things, then shall they know that the hour is nigh.

6

A. And it shall come to pass that he that feareth me shall be looking forth for the great day of the Lord to come, even for the signs of the coming of the Son of man;

B. and they shall see signs and wonders, for they shall be shown forth in the heavens above, and in the earth beneath;

C. and they shall behold blood and fire, and vapors of smoke; and before the day of the Lord shall come, the sun shall be darkened, and the moon be turned into blood, and stars fall from heaven;

D. and the remnant shall be gathered unto this place; and then they shall look for me, and behold I will come;

E. and they shall see me in the clouds of heaven, clothed with power and great glory, with all the holy angels; and he that watches not for me shall be cut off.

7

A. But before the arm of the Lord shall fall, an angel shall sound his trump, and the saints that have slept, shall come forth to meet me in the cloud;

B. wherefore if ye have slept in peace, blessed are you, for as you now behold me and know that I am, even so shall ye come unto me and your souls shall live, and your redemption shall be perfected, and the saints shall come forth from the four quarters of the earth.

8

A. Then shall the arm of the Lord fall upon the nations, and then shall the Lord set his foot upon this mount, and it shall cleave in twain, and the earth shall tremble and reel to and fro;

B. and the heavens also shall shake, and the Lord shall utter his voice and all the ends of the earth shall hear it, and the nations of the earth shall mourn,

C. and they that have laughed shall see their folly, and calamity shall cover the mocker, and the scorner shall be consumed, and they that have watched for iniquity, shall be hewn down and cast into the fire.

9

A. And then shall the Jews look upon me and say, What are these wounds in thy hands, and in thy feet?

B. Then shall they know that I am the Lord; for I will say unto them, These wounds are the wounds with which I was wounded in the house of my friends.

C. I am he who was lifted up. I am Jesus that was crucified. I am the Son of God.

D. And then shall they weep because of their iniquities; then shall they lament because they persecuted their King.

10

A. And then shall the heathen nations be redeemed, and they that knew no law shall have part in the first resurrection; and it shall be tolerable for them; and Satan shall be bound that he shall have no place in the hearts of the children of men.

B. And at that day when I shall come in my glory, shall the parable be fulfilled which I spake concerning the ten virgins; for they that are wise and have received the truth, and have taken the Holy Spirit for their guide, and have not been deceived, verily I say unto you,

C. They shall not be hewn down and cast into the fire, but shall abide the day, and the earth shall be given unto them for an inheritance;

D. and they shall multiply and wax strong, and their children shall grow up without sin unto salvation, for the Lord shall be in their midst, and his glory shall be upon them, and he will be their King and their lawgiver.

11

A. And now, behold, I say unto you, It shall not be given unto you to know any further concerning this chapter, until the New Testament be translated, and in it all these things shall be made known;

B. wherefore I give unto you that you may now translate it, that ye may be prepared for the things to come; for verily I say unto you, that great things await you;

C. ye hear of wars in foreign lands, but, behold, I say unto you, They are nigh, even at your doors, and not many years hence ye shall hear of wars in your own lands.

12

A. Wherefore, I the Lord have said, Gather ye out from the eastern lands, assemble ye yourselves together ye elders of my church;

B. go ye forth unto the western countries, call upon the inhabitants to repent, and inasmuch as they do repent, build up churches unto me;

C. and with one heart and with one mind, gather up your riches that ye may purchase an inheritance which shall hereafter be appointed unto you, and it shall be called the New Jerusalem, a land of peace, a city of refuge, a place of safety for the saints of the most high God;

D. and the glory of the Lord shall be there, and the terror of the Lord also shall be there, insomuch that the wicked will not come unto it; and it shall be called Zion.

13

A. And it shall come to pass, among the wicked, that every man that will not take his sword against his neighbor, must needs flee unto Zion for safety.

B. And there shall be gathered unto it out of every nation under heaven; and it shall be the only people that shall not be at war one with another.

C. And it shall be said among the wicked, Let us not go up to battle against Zion, for the inhabitants of Zion are terrible, wherefore we cannot stand.

14

And it shall come to pass that the righteous shall be gathered out from among all nations, and shall come to Zion singing, with songs of everlasting joy.

15

A. And now I say unto you, Keep these things from going abroad unto the world, until it is expedient in me, that ye may accomplish this work in the eyes of the people and in the eyes of your enemies, that they may not know your works until ye have accomplished the thing which I have commanded you;

B. that when they shall know it, that they may consider these things, for when the Lord shall appear he shall be terrible unto them, that fear may seize upon them, and they shall stand afar off and tremble;

C. and all nations shall be afraid because of the terror of the Lord, and the power of his might. Even so. Amen.

Section 46

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Hearken, O ye people of my church, for verily I say unto you, that these things were spoken unto you for your profit and learning;

B. but notwithstanding those things which are written, it always has been given to the elders of my church, from the beginning, and ever shall be, to conduct all meetings as they are directed and guided by the Holy Spirit;

C. nevertheless, ye are commanded never to cast anyone out from your public meetings, which are held before the world.

D. Ye are also commanded not to cast anyone, who belongeth to the church, out of your sacrament meetings; nevertheless, if any have trespassed, let him not partake until he makes reconciliation.

2

And again I say unto you, Ye shall not cast anyone out of your sacrament meetings, who is earnestly seeking the kingdom; I speak this concerning those who are not of the church.

3

A. And again I say unto you, concerning your confirmation meetings, that if there be any that is not of the church, that is earnestly seeking after the kingdom, ye shall not cast them out;

B. but ye are commanded in all things to ask of God, who giveth liberally, and that which the Spirit testifies unto you, even so I would that you should do in all holiness of heart,

C. walking uprightly before me, considering the end of your salvation, doing all things with prayer and thanksgiving, that ye may not be seduced by evil spirits, or doctrines of devils, or the commandments of men, for some are of men, and others of devils.

4

A. Wherefore, beware, lest ye are deceived, and that ye may not be deceived, seek ye earnestly the best gifts, always remembering for what they are given;

B. for verily I say unto you, They are given for the benefit of those who love me and keep all my commandments, and him that seeketh so to do, that all may be benefited, that seeketh or that asketh of me, that asketh and not for a sign that he may consume it upon his lusts.

5

A. And again, verily I say unto you, I would that ye should always remember, and always retain in your minds what those gifts are, that are given unto the church, for all have not every gift given unto them;

B. for there are many gifts, and to every man is given a gift by the Spirit of God:

C. to some it is given one, and to some is given another, that all may be profited thereby;

D. to some it is given by the Holy Ghost to know that Jesus Christ is the Son of God, and that he was crucified for the sins of the world;

E. to others it is given to believe on their words, that they also might have eternal life, if they continue faithful.

6

A. And again, to some it is given by the Holy Ghost to know the differences of administration, as it will be pleasing unto the same Lord, according as the Lord will, suiting his mercies according to the conditions of the children of men.

B. And again, it is given by the Holy Ghost to some to know the diversities of operations, whether it be of God, that the manifestations of the Spirit may be given to every man to profit withal.

7

A. And again, verily I say unto you, To some it is given, by the Spirit of God, the word of wisdom;

B. to another it is given the word of knowledge, that all may be taught to be wise and to have knowledge.

C. And again, to some it is given to have faith to be healed, and to others it is given to have faith to heal.

D. And again, to some it is given the workings of miracles; and to others it is given to prophesy, and to others the discerning of spirits.

E. And again, it is given to some to speak with tongues, and to another it is given the interpretation of tongues:

F. and all these gifts come from God, for benefit of the children of God.

G. And unto the bishop of the church, and unto such as God shall appoint and ordain to watch over the church, and to be elders unto the church, are to have it given unto them to discern all those gifts, lest there be any among you professing and yet be not of God.

8

A. And it shall come to pass that he that asketh in spirit shall receive in spirit; that unto some it may be given to have all those gifts, that there may be a head, in order that every member may be profited thereby:

B. he that asketh in the spirit, asketh according to the will of God, wherefore it is done even as he asketh.

9

A. And again I say unto you, All things must be done in the name of Christ, whatsoever you do in the spirit;

B. and ye must give thanks unto God in the spirit for whatever blessing ye are blessed with; and ye must practice virtue and holiness before me continually. Even so. Amen.

Section 47

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Behold, it is expedient in me that my servant John should write and keep a regular history, and assist you, my servant Joseph, in transcribing all things which shall be given you, until he is called to further duties.

B. Again, verily I say unto you, that he can also lift up his voice in meetings, whenever it shall be expedient.

2

A. And again, I say unto you, that it shall be appointed unto him to keep the church record and history continually, for Oliver Cowdery I have appointed to another office.

B. Wherefore, it shall be given him, inasmuch as he is faithful, by the Comforter, to write these things. Even so. Amen.

Section 48

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. It is necessary that ye should remain, for the present time, in your places of abode, as it shall be suitable to your circumstances;

B. and inasmuch as ye have lands, ye shall impart to the eastern brethren;

C. and inasmuch as ye have not lands, let them buy for the present time in those regions round about as seemeth them good, for it must needs be that they have places to live for the present time.

2

A. It must needs be, that ye save all the money that ye can, and that ye obtain all that ye can in righteousness, that in time ye may be enabled to purchase lands for an inheritance, even the city.

B. The place is not yet to be revealed, but after your brethren come from the east, there are to be certain men appointed, and to them it shall be given to know the place, or to them it shall be revealed;

C. and they shall be appointed to purchase the lands, and to make a commencement, to lay the foundation of the city;

D. and then ye shall begin to be gathered with your families, every man according to his family, according to his circumstances, and as is appointed to him by the presidency and the bishop of the church, according to the laws and commandments, which ye have received, and which ye shall hereafter receive. Even so. Amen.

Section 49

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Hearken unto my word, my servants Sidney, and Parley, and Lemon, for, behold, verily I say unto you, that I give unto you a commandment, that you shall go and preach my gospel, which ye have received, even as ye have received it, unto the Shakers.

B. Behold, I say unto you, that they desire to know the truth in part, but not all, for they are not right before me, and must needs repent;

C. wherefore I send you, my servants Sidney and Parley, to preach the gospel unto them; and my servant Lemon shall be ordained unto this work, that he may reason with them,

D. not according to that which he has received of them, but according to that which shall be taught him by you, my servants, and by so doing I will bless him, otherwise he shall not prosper:

E. thus saith the Lord, for I am God and have sent mine only Begotten Son into the world, for the redemption of the world, and have decreed that he that receiveth him shall be saved, and he that receiveth him not shall be damned.

2

A. And they have done unto the Son of man even as they listed; and he has taken his power on the right hand of his glory, and now reigneth in the heavens, and will reign till he descends on the earth to put all enemies under his feet; which time is nigh at hand:

B. I, the Lord God, have spoken it; but the hour and the day no man knoweth, neither the angels in heaven, nor shall they know until he comes;

C. wherefore I will that all men shall repent, for all are under sin, except them which I have reserved unto myself, holy men that ye know not of;

D. wherefore I say unto you, that I have sent unto you mine everlasting covenant, even that which was from the beginning, and that which I have promised I have so fulfilled, and the nations of the earth shall bow to it;

E. and, if not of themselves, they shall come down, for that which is now exalted of itself, shall be laid low of power;

F. wherefore I give unto you a commandment that ye go among this people and say unto them, like unto mine apostle of old, whose name was Peter:

G. Believe on the name of the Lord Jesus, who was on the earth, and is to come, the beginning and the end; repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ, according to the holy commandment, for the remission of sins;

H. and whoso doeth this, shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost, by the laying on of the hands of the elders of this church.

3

A. And again, I say unto you, that whoso forbiddeth to marry, is not ordained of God, for marriage is ordained of God unto man;

B. wherefore it is lawful that he should have one wife, and they twain shall be one flesh, and all this that the earth might answer the end of its creation;

C. and that it might be filled with the measure of man, according to his creation before the world was made.

D. And whoso forbiddeth to abstain from meats, that man should not eat the same, is not ordained of God;

E. for, behold, the beasts of the field, and the fowls of the air, and that which cometh of the earth, is ordained for the use of man, for food, and for raiment, and that he might have in abundance, but it is not given that one man should possess that which is above another;

F. wherefore the world lieth in sin; and woe be unto man that sheddeth blood or that wasteth flesh and hath no need.

4

A. And again, verily I say unto you, that the Son of man cometh not in the form of a woman, neither of a man traveling on the earth;

B. wherefore be not deceived, but continue in steadfastness, looking forth for the heavens to be shaken; and the earth to tremble, and to reel to and fro as a drunken man;

C. and for the valleys to be exalted; and for the mountains to be made low; and for the rough places to become smooth; and all this when the angel shall sound his trumpet.

5

A. But before the great day of the Lord shall come, Jacob shall flourish in the wilderness; and the Lamanites shall blossom as the rose.

B. Zion shall flourish upon the hills, and rejoice upon the mountains, and shall be assembled together unto the place which I have appointed.

C. Behold, I say unto you, Go forth as I have commanded you; repent of all your sins; ask and ye shall receive; knock and it shall be opened unto you:

D. behold, I will go before you, and be your reward; and I will be in your midst, and you shall not be confounded; behold, I am Jesus Christ, and I come quickly. Even so. Amen.

Section 50

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Hearken, O ye elders of my church, and give ear to the voice of the living God; and attend to the words of wisdom which shall be given unto you, according as ye have asked and are agreed as touching the church, and the spirits which have gone abroad in the earth.

B. Behold, verily I say unto you, that there are many spirits which are false spirits, which have gone forth in the earth, deceiving the world: and also Satan hath sought to deceive you, that he might overthrow you.

2

A. Behold, I the Lord have looked upon you, and have seen abominations in the church that professes my name; but blessed are they who are faithful and endure, whether in life or in death, for they shall inherit eternal life.

B. But woe unto them that are deceivers, and hypocrites, for thus saith the Lord, I will bring them to judgment.

3

A. Behold, verily I say unto you, There are hypocrites among you, and have deceived some, which has given the adversary power, but, behold, such shall be reclaimed;

B. but the hypocrites shall be detected and shall be cut off, either in life or in death, even as I will, and woe unto them who are cut off from my church, for the same are overcome of the world;

C. wherefore, let every man beware lest he do that which is not in truth and righteousness before me.

4

A. And now come, saith the Lord, by the Spirit, unto the elders of his church, and let us reason together, that ye may understand: let us reason even as a man reasoneth one with another face to face:

B. now when a man reasoneth, he is understood of man, because he reasoneth as a man; even so will I, the Lord, reason with you that you may understand: wherefore I, the Lord, asketh you this question, Unto what were ye ordained?

C. To preach my gospel by the Spirit, even the Comforter, which was sent forth to teach the truth: and then received ye spirits which ye could not understand, and received them to be of God, and in this are ye justified?

D. Behold, ye shall answer this question yourselves, nevertheless I will be merciful unto you; he that is weak among you hereafter shall be made strong.

5

A. Verily I say unto you, He that is ordained of me and sent forth to preach the word of truth by the Comforter, in the spirit of truth, doth he preach it by the spirit of truth, or some other way? and if it be by some other way, it be not of God.

B. And again, he that receiveth the word of truth, doth he receive it by the spirit of truth, or some other way? if it be some other way, it be not of God:

C. therefore, why is it that ye cannot understand and know that he that receiveth the word by the spirit of truth, receiveth it as it is preached by the spirit of truth?

6

A. Wherefore, he that preacheth and he that receiveth, understandeth one another, and both are edified and rejoice together;

B. and that which doth not edify, is not of God, and is darkness: that which is of God is light, and he that receiveth light and continueth in God, receiveth more light, and that light groweth brighter and brighter, until the perfect day.

C. And again, verily I say unto you, and I say it that you may know the truth, that you may chase darkness from among you, for he that is ordained of God and sent forth, the same is appointed to be the greatest, notwithstanding he is least, and the servant of all:

D. wherefore, he is possessor of all things, for all things are subject unto him, both in heaven and on the earth, the life, and the light, the spirit, and the power, sent forth by the will of the Father, through Jesus Christ, his Son;

E. but no man is possessor of all things, except he be purified and cleansed from all sin; and if ye are purified and cleansed from all sin, ye shall ask whatsoever you will in the name of Jesus, and it shall be done:

F. but know this, it shall be given you what you shall ask, and as ye are appointed to the head, the spirits shall be subject unto you.

7

A. Wherefore, it shall come to pass, that if you behold a spirit manifested that you cannot understand, and you receive not that spirit, ye shall ask of the Father, in the name of Jesus, and if he give not unto you that spirit, that you may know that it is not of God;

B. and it shall be given unto you power over that spirit, and you shall proclaim against that spirit with a loud voice, that it is not of God;

C. not with railing accusation, that ye be not overcome; neither with boasting, nor rejoicing, lest you be seized therewith:

D. he that receiveth of God, let him account it of God, and let him rejoice that he is accounted of God worthy to receive, and by giving heed and doing these things which ye have received, and which ye shall hereafter receive;

E. and the kingdom is given you of the Father, and power to overcome all things, which is not ordained of him;

F. and, behold, verily I say unto you, Blessed are you who are now hearing these words of mine from the mouth of my servant, for your sins are forgiven you.

8

A. Let my servant Joseph Wakefield, in whom I am well pleased, and my servant Parley P. Pratt, go forth among the churches and strengthen them by the word of exhortation;

B. and also my servant John Corrill, or as many of my servants as are ordained unto this office, and let them labor in the vineyard; and let no man hinder them of doing that which I have appointed unto them:

C. wherefore in this thing my servant Edward Partridge, is not justified, nevertheless let him repent and he shall be forgiven.

D. Behold, ye are little children, and ye cannot bear all things now; ye must grow in grace and in the knowledge of the truth.

E. Fear not, little children, for you are mine, and I have overcome the world, and you are of them that my Father hath given me; and none of them that my Father hath given me shall be lost;

F. and the Father and I are one; I am in the Father and the Father in me; and inasmuch as ye have received me, ye are in me, and I in you; wherefore I am in your midst;

G. and I am the good Shepherd (and the stone of Israel: he that buildeth upon this rock shall never fall), and the day cometh that you shall hear my voice and see me, and know that I am. Watch, therefore, that ye may be ready. Even so. Amen.

Section 51

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Hearken unto me, saith the Lord your God, and I will speak unto my servant Edward Partridge, and give unto him directions; for it must needs be that he receive directions how to organize this people; for it must needs be that they are organized according to my laws; if otherwise, they will be cut off;

B. wherefore let my servant Edward Partridge, and those whom he has chosen, in whom I am well pleased, appoint unto this people their portion, every man equal according to their families, according to their circumstances, and their wants and needs;

C. and let my servant Edward Partridge, when he shall appoint a man his portion, give unto him a writing that shall secure unto him his portion, that he shall hold it, even this right and this inheritance in the church, until he transgresses and is not accounted worthy by the voice of the church, according to the laws and covenants of the church, to belong to the church;

D. and if he shall transgress, and is not accounted worthy to belong in the church, he shall not have power to claim that portion which he has consecrated unto the bishop for the poor and the needy of my church;

E. therefore he shall not retain the gift, but shall only have claim on that portion that is deeded unto him. And thus all things shall be made sure according to the laws of the land.

2

A. And let that which belongs to this people be appointed unto this people; and the money which is left unto his people, let there be an agent appointed unto this people to take the money, to provide food and raiment, according to the wants of this people.

B. And let every man deal honestly, and be alike among this people, and receive alike, that ye may be one, even as I have commanded you.

3

A. And let that which belongeth to this people not be taken and given unto that of another church;

B. wherefore, if another church would receive money of this church, let them pay unto this church again, according as they shall agree;

C. and this shall be done through the bishop or the agent, which shall be appointed by the voice of the church.

4

A. And again, let the bishop appoint a storehouse unto this church, and let all things, both in money and in meat, which is more than is needful for the want of this people, be kept in the hands of the bishop.

B. And let him also reserve unto himself, for his own wants, and for the wants of his family, as he shall be employed in doing this business.

C. And thus I grant unto this people a privilege of organizing themselves according to my laws; and I consecrate unto them this land for a little season, until I, the Lord, shall provide for them otherwise, and command them to go hence; and the hour and the day is not given unto them;

D. wherefore let them act upon this land as for years, and this shall turn unto them for their good.

5

A. Behold, this shall be an example unto my servant Edward Partridge, in other places, in all churches.

B. And whoso is found a faithful, a just, and a wise steward, shall enter into the joy of his Lord, and shall inherit eternal life.

C. Verily, I say unto you, I am Jesus Christ, who cometh quickly, in an hour you think not. Even so. Amen.

Section 52

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Behold, thus saith the Lord unto the elders whom he hath called and chosen, in these last days, by the voice of his Spirit, saying,

B. I, the Lord, will make known unto you what I will that ye shall do from this time until the next Conference, which shall be held in Missouri, upon the land which I will consecrate unto my people, which are a remnant of Jacob, and those who are heirs according to the covenant.

2

A. Wherefore, verily I say unto you, Let my servants Joseph Smith, Jr., and Sidney Rigdon, take their journey as soon as preparations can be made to leave their homes, and journey to the land of Missouri.

B. And inasmuch as they are faithful unto me, it shall be made known unto them what they shall do; and it shall also, inasmuch as they are faithful, be made known unto them the land of your inheritance.

C. And inasmuch as they are not faithful, they shall be cut off, even as I will, as seemeth me good.

3

A. And again, verily I say unto you, Let my servant Lyman Wight, and my servant John Corril, take their journey speedily; and also my servant John Murdock, and my servant Hyrum Smith, take their journey unto the same place, by the way of Detroit.

B. And let them journey from thence, preaching the word by the way, saying none other things than that which the prophets and apostles have written, and that which is taught them by the Comforter, through the prayer of faith.

C. Let them go two by two, and thus let them preach by the way in every congregation, baptizing by water, and the laying on of the hands by the water's side;

D. for thus saith the Lord, I will cut my work short in righteousness, for the days cometh that I will send forth judgment unto victory. And let my servant Lyman Wight beware, for Satan desireth to sift him as chaff.

4

- A.** And, behold, he that is faithful shall be made ruler over many things.
- B.** And again, I will give unto you a pattern in all things, that ye may not be deceived; for Satan is abroad in the land, and he goeth forth deceiving the nations;
- C.** wherefore he that prayeth whose spirit is contrite, the same is accepted of me, if he obey mine ordinances.
- D.** He that speaketh, whose spirit is contrite, whose language is meek, and edifieth, the same is of God, if he obey mine ordinances.
- E.** And again, he that trembleth under my power shall be made strong, and shall bring forth fruits of praise, and wisdom, according to the revelations and truths which I have given you.

5

- A.** And again, he that is overcome and bringeth not forth fruits, even according to this pattern, is not of me; wherefore by this pattern ye shall know the spirits in all cases, under the whole heavens.
- B.** And the days have come, according to men's faith it shall be done unto them. Behold, this commandment is given unto all the elders whom I have chosen.
- C.** And again, verily I say unto you, Let my servant Thomas B. Marsh, and my servant Ezra Thayre, take their journey also, preaching the word by the way, unto this same land.
- D.** And again, let my servant Isaac Morley, and my servant Ezra Booth, take their journey, also preaching the word by the way, unto the same land.

6

- A.** And again, let my servants Edward Partridge and Martin Harris take their journey with my servants Sidney Rigdon and Joseph Smith, Jr.
- B.** Let my servants David Whitmer and Harvey Whitlock also take their journey, and preach by the way, unto the same land. Let my servants Parley P. Pratt and Orson Pratt take their journey, and preach by the way, even unto this same land.
- C.** And let my servants Solomon Hancock and Simeon Carter also take their journey unto this same land, and preach by the way. Let my servants Edson Fuller and Jacob Scott also take their journey.
- D.** Let my servants Levi Hancock and Zebedee Coltrin also take their journey. Let my servants Reynolds Cahoon and Samuel H. Smith also take their journey. Let my servants Wheeler Baldwin and William Carter also take their journey.

7

A. And let my servants Newel Knight and Selah J. Griffin both be ordained and also take their journey: yea, verily I say, Let all these take their journey unto one place, in their several courses, and one man shall not build upon another's foundation, neither journey in another's track.

B. He that is faithful, the same shall be kept and blessed with much fruit.

8

A. And again, I say unto you, Let my servants Joseph Wakefield and Solomon Humphrey take their journey into the eastern lands.

B. Let them labor with their families, declaring none other things than the prophets and apostles, that which they have seen, and heard, and most assuredly believe, that the prophecies may be fulfilled.

C. In consequence of transgression, let that which was bestowed upon Heman Bassett, be taken from him, and placed upon the head of Simonds Rider.

9

A. And again, verily I say unto you, Let Jared Carter be ordained a priest, and also George James be ordained a priest. Let the residue of the elders watch over the churches, and declare the word in the regions among them.

B. And let them labor with their own hands, that there be no idolatry nor wickedness practiced.

C. And remember in all things, the poor and the needy, the sick and the afflicted, for he that doeth not these things, the same is not my disciple.

D. And again, let my servants Joseph Smith, Jr., and Sidney Rigdon, and Edward Partridge, take with them a recommend from the church.

E. And let there be one obtained for my servant Oliver Cowdery also; and thus, even as I have said, if ye are faithful, ye shall assemble yourselves together to rejoice upon the land of Missouri, which is the land of your inheritance, which is now the land of your enemies.

F. But, behold, I the Lord, will hasten the city in its time, and will crown the faithful with joy and with rejoicing. Behold, I am Jesus Christ the Son of God, and I will lift them up at the last day. Even so. Amen.

Section 53

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

Behold, I say unto you, my servant Sidney Gilbert, that I have heard your prayers, and you have called upon me, that it should be made known unto you, of the Lord your God, concerning your calling and election in this church, which I, the Lord, have raised up in these last days.

2

A. Behold, I, the Lord, who was crucified for the sins of the world, giveth unto you a commandment, that you shall forsake the world.

B. Take upon you mine ordinances, even that of an elder, to preach faith and repentance, and remission of sins, according to my word, and the reception of the Holy Spirit by the laying on of hands.

C. And also to be an agent unto this church in the place which shall be appointed by the bishop, according to commandments which shall be given hereafter.

3

A. And again, verily I say unto you, You shall take your journey with my servants Joseph Smith, Jr., and Sidney Rigdon.

B. Behold, these are the first ordinances which you shall receive; and the residue shall be made known in a time to come, according to your labor in my vineyard.

C. And again, I would that ye should learn that it is he only who is saved, that endureth unto the end. Even so. Amen.

Section 54

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

- A.** Behold, thus saith the Lord, even Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end, even he who was crucified for the sins of the world.
- B.** Behold, verily, verily I say unto you, my servant Newel Knight, You shall stand fast in the office wherewith I have appointed you; and if your brethren desire to escape their enemies let them repent of all their sins, and become truly humble before me and contrite;
- C.** and as the covenant which they made unto me has been broken, even so it has become void and of none effect;
- D.** and woe to him by whom this offense cometh, for it had been better for him that he had been drowned in the depth of the sea;
- E.** but blessed are they who have kept the covenant, and observed the commandment, for they shall obtain mercy.

2

- A.** Wherefore, go to now and flee the land, lest your enemies come upon you; and take your journey, and appoint whom you will to be your leader, and to pay moneys for you.
- B.** And thus you shall take your journey into the regions westward, and unto the land of Missouri, unto the borders of the Lamanites.
- C.** And after you have done journeying, behold, I say unto you, Seek ye a living like unto men, until I prepare a place for you.

3

And again, be patient in tribulation until I come; and behold, I come quickly, and my reward is with me, and they who have sought me early, shall find rest to their souls. Even so. Amen.

Section 55

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Behold, thus saith the Lord unto you, my servant William; yea, even the Lord of the whole earth,

B. You are called and chosen, and after you have been baptized by water, which if you do with an eye single to my glory, you shall have a remission of your sins, and a reception of the Holy Spirit, by the laying on of hands.

C. And then you shall be ordained by the hand of my servant Joseph Smith, Jr., to be an elder unto this church, to preach repentance and remission of sins by way of baptism in the name of Jesus Christ, the Son of the living God;

D. and on whomsoever you shall lay your hands, if they are contrite before me, you shall have power to give the Holy Spirit.

2

A. And again, you shall be ordained to assist my servant Oliver Cowdery to do the work of printing, and of selecting, and writing books for schools, in this church, that little children also may receive instruction before me as is pleasing unto me.

B. And again, verily I say unto you, For this cause you shall take your journey with my servants Joseph Smith, Jr., and Sidney Rigdon, that you may be planted in the land of your inheritance, to do this work.

3

And again let my servant Joseph Coe also take his journey with them. The residue shall be made known hereafter; even as I will. Amen.

Section 56

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Hearken, O ye people who profess my name, saith the Lord your God, for, behold, mine anger is kindled against the rebellious, and they shall know mine arm and mine indignation in the day of visitation and of wrath upon the nations.

B. And he that will not take up his cross and follow me, and keep my commandments, the same shall not be saved.

2

A. Behold, I the Lord commandeth, and he that will not obey shall be cut off in mine own due time; and after that I have commanded and the commandment is broken, wherefore I the Lord command and revoke, as it seemeth me good, and all this to be answered upon the heads of the rebellious, saith the Lord;

B. wherefore I revoke the commandment which was given unto my servants Thomas B. Marsh and Ezra Thayre, and give a new commandment unto my servant Thomas, that he shall take up his journey speedily to the land of Missouri; and my servant Selah J. Griffin shall also go with him:

C. for, behold, I revoke the commandment which was given unto my servants Selah J. Griffin and Newel Knight, in consequence of the stiff-neckedness of my people which are in Thompson; and their rebellions;

D. wherefore let my servant Newel Knight remain with them, and as many as will go, may go, that are contrite before me, and be led by him to the land which I have appointed.

3

A. And again, verily I say unto you, that my servant Ezra Thayre must repent of his pride, and of his selfishness, and obey the former commandment which I have given him concerning the place upon which he lives;

B. and if he will do this, as there shall be no divisions made upon the land, he shall be appointed still to go to the land of Missouri;

C. otherwise he shall receive the money which he has paid, and shall leave the place, and shall be cut off out of my church, saith the Lord of hosts;

D. and though the heaven and the earth pass away, these words shall not pass away, but shall be fulfilled.

4

A. And if my servant Joseph Smith, Jr., must needs pay the money, behold, I, the Lord, will pay it unto him again in the land of Missouri, that those of whom he shall receive may be rewarded again, according to that which they do.

B. For according to that which they do, they shall receive; even in lands for their inheritance.

C. Behold, thus saith the Lord unto my people, You have many things to do, and to repent of; for, behold, your sins have come up unto me, and are not pardoned, because you seek to counsel in your own ways.

D. And your hearts are not satisfied. And ye obey not the truth, but have pleasure in unrighteousness.

5

A. Woe unto you rich men, that will not give your substance to the poor, for your riches will canker your souls; and this shall be your lamentation in the days of visitation, and of judgment, and of indignation:

B. The harvest is past, the summer is ended, and my soul is not saved!

C. Woe unto you poor men, whose hearts are not broken, whose spirits are not contrite, and whose bellies are not satisfied, and whose hands are not stayed from laying hold upon other men's goods, whose eyes are full of greediness, who will not labor with their own hands!

6

A. But blessed are the poor, who are pure in heart, whose hearts are broken, and whose spirits are contrite, for they shall see the kingdom of God coming in power and great glory unto their deliverance; for the fatness of the earth shall be theirs;

B. for, behold, the Lord shall come, and his recompense shall be with him, and he shall reward every man, and the poor shall rejoice; and their generations shall inherit the earth from generation to generation, for ever and ever.

C. And now I make an end of speaking unto you. Even so. Amen.

Section 57

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Hearken, O ye elders of my church saith the Lord your God, who have assembled yourselves together, according to my commandments, in this land which is the land of Missouri, which is the land which I have appointed and consecrated for the gathering of the Saints:

B. wherefore this is the land of promise, and the place for the city of Zion.

C. And thus saith the Lord your God, If you will receive wisdom here is wisdom.

D. Behold, the place which is now called Independence, is the Center Place, and the spot for the temple is lying westward upon a lot which is not far from the courthouse;

E. wherefore it is wisdom that the land should be purchased by the Saints; and also every tract lying westward, even unto the line running directly between Jew and Gentile.

F. And also every tract bordering by the prairies, inasmuch as my disciples are enabled to buy lands.

G. Behold, this is wisdom, that they may obtain it for an everlasting inheritance.

2

And let my servant Sidney Gilbert, stand in the office which I have appointed him, to receive moneys, to be an agent unto the church, to buy land in all the regions round about, inasmuch as can be in righteousness, and as wisdom shall direct.

3

And let my servant Edward Partridge, stand in the office which I have appointed him, to divide the Saints their inheritance, even as I have commanded; and also those whom he has appointed to assist him.

4

A. And again, verily I say unto you, Let my servant Sidney Gilbert plant himself in this place, and establish a store, that he may sell goods without fraud, that he may obtain money to buy lands for the good of the Saints, and that he may obtain whatsoever things the disciples may need to plant them in their inheritance.

B. And also let my servant Sidney Gilbert obtain a license (behold, here is wisdom, and whoso readeth let him understand), that he may send goods also unto the people, even by whom he will as clerks, employed in his service, and thus provide for my Saints, that my gospel may be preached unto those who sit in darkness and in the region and shadow of death.

5

A. And again, verily I say unto you, Let my servant William W. Phelps be planted in this place, and be established as a printer unto the church; and lo, if the world receiveth his writings (behold, here is wisdom), let him obtain whatsoever he can obtain in righteousness, for the good of the Saints.

B. And let my servant Oliver Cowdery assist him, even as I have commanded, in whatsoever place I shall appoint unto him, to copy, and to correct, and select, that all things may be right before me, as it shall be proved by the Spirit through him.

C. And thus let those of whom I have spoken, be planted in the land of Zion, as speedily as can be, with their families, to do those things even as I have spoken.

6

A. And now concerning the gathering, let the bishop and the agent make preparations for those families which have been commanded to come to this land, as soon as possible, and plant them in their inheritance.

B. And unto the residue of both elders and members, further directions shall be given hereafter. Even so. Amen.

Section 58

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Hearken, O ye elders of my church, and give ear to my word, and learn of me what I will concerning you, and also concerning this land unto which I have sent you;

B. for verily I say unto you, Blessed is he that keepeth my commandments, whether in life or in death; and he that is faithful in tribulation, the reward of the same is greater in the kingdom of heaven.

2

A. Ye cannot behold with your natural eyes, for the present time, the design of your God concerning those things which shall come hereafter, and the glory which shall follow, after much tribulation.

B. For after much tribulation come the blessings. Wherefore the day cometh that ye shall be crowned with much glory; the hour is not yet, but is nigh at hand.

3

A. Remember this which I tell you before, that you may lay it to heart, and receive that which shall follow.

B. Behold, verily I say unto you, For this cause I have sent you that you might be obedient, and that your hearts might be prepared to bear testimony of the things which are to come;

C. and also that you might be honored of laying the foundation, and of bearing record of the land upon which the Zion of God shall stand; and also that a feast of fat things might be prepared for the poor;

D. yea, a feast of fat things, of wine on the lees well refined, that the earth may know that the mouths of the prophets shall not fail; yea, a supper of the house of the Lord, well prepared, unto which all nations shall be invited.

E. Firstly, the rich and the learned, the wise and the noble; and after that cometh the day of my power;

F. then shall the poor, the lame, and the blind, and the deaf, come in unto the marriage of the Lamb, and partake of the supper of the Lord, prepared for the great day to come. Behold, I, the Lord, have spoken it.

4

A. And that the testimony might go forth from Zion; yea, from the mouth of the city of the heritage of God; yea, for this cause I have sent you hither, and have selected my servant Edward Partridge, and have appointed unto him his mission in this land;

B. but if he repent not of his sins, which are unbelief and blindness of heart, let him take heed lest he fall.

C. Behold, his mission is given unto him, and it shall not be given again.

D. And whoso standeth in this mission is appointed to be a judge in Israel, like as it was in ancient days, to divide the lands of the heritage of God unto his children, and to judge his people by the testimony of the just, and by the assistance of his counselors, according to the laws of the kingdom which are given by the prophets of God;

E. for verily I say unto you, My law shall be kept on this land.

5

A. Let no man think that he is ruler, but let God rule him that judgeth, according to the counsel of his own will; or, in other words, him that counseleth or sitteth upon the judgment seat.

B. Let no man break the laws of the land, for he that keepeth the laws of God hath no need to break the laws of the land; wherefore be subject to the powers that be, until He reigns whose right it is to reign, and subdues all enemies under his feet.

C. Behold, the laws which ye have received from my hand are the laws of the church, and in this light ye shall hold them forth. Behold, here is wisdom.

6

A. And now, as I spake concerning my servant Edward Partridge, this land is the land of his residence, and those whom he has appointed for his counselors, and also the land of the residence of him whom I have appointed to keep my storehouse;

B. wherefore let them bring their families to this land, as they shall counsel between themselves and me;

C. for, behold, it is not meet that I should command in all things, for he that is compelled in all things, the same is a slothful and not a wise servant; wherefore he receiveth no reward.

D. Verily I say, Men should be anxiously engaged in a good cause, and do many things of their own free will, and bring to pass much righteousness; for the power is in them, wherein they are agents unto themselves.

E. And inasmuch as men do good, they shall in nowise lose their reward.

F. But he that doeth not anything until he is commanded, and receiveth a commandment with doubtful heart, and keepeth it with slothfulness, the same is damned.

G. Who am I that made man, saith the Lord, that will hold him guiltless that obeys not my commandments?

H. Who am I, saith the Lord, that have promised and have not fulfilled?

I. I command and a man obeys not, I revoke and they receive not the blessing; then they say in their hearts, This is not the work of the Lord, for his promises are not fulfilled. But woe unto such, for their reward lurketh beneath, and not from above.

7

A. And now I give unto you further directions concerning this land.

B. It is wisdom in me that my servant Martin Harris should be an example unto the church, in laying his moneys before the bishop of the church.

C. And also, this is a law unto every man that cometh unto this land, to receive an inheritance, and he shall do with his moneys according as the law directs.

D. And it is wisdom, also, that there should be lands purchased in Independence, for the place of the storehouse, and also for the house of the printing.

8

A. And other directions, concerning my servant Martin Harris, shall be given him of the Spirit, that he may receive his inheritance as seemeth him good.

B. And let him repent of his sins, for he seeketh the praise of the world.

9

A. And also let my servant William W. Phelps stand in the office which I have appointed him, and receive his inheritance in the land.

B. And, also, he hath need to repent, for I, the Lord, am not well pleased with him, for he seeketh to excel, and he is not sufficiently meek before me.

C. Behold, he who has repented of his sins, the same is forgiven, and I, the Lord, remembereth them no more.

D. By this ye may know if a man repenteth of his sins. Behold, he will confess them and forsake them.

E. And now, verily I say, concerning the residue of the elders of my church, The time has not yet come, for many years, for them to receive their inheritance in this land, except they desire it through the prayer of faith, only as it shall be appointed unto them of the Lord.

F. For, behold, they shall push the people together from the ends of the earth; wherefore assemble yourselves together, and they who are not appointed to stay in this land, let them preach the gospel in the regions round about; and after that, let them return to their homes.

G. Let them preach by the way, and bear testimony of the truth in all places, and call upon the rich, the high, and the low, and the poor, to repent; and let them build up churches, inasmuch as the inhabitants of the earth will repent.

10

And let there be an agent appointed by the voice of the church, unto the church in Ohio, to receive moneys to purchase lands in Zion.

11

A. And I give unto my servant Sidney Rigdon a commandment that he shall write a description of the land of Zion, and a statement of the will of God, as it shall be made known by the Spirit, unto him;

B. and an epistle and subscription, to be presented unto all the churches, to obtain moneys, to be put into the hands of the bishop, to purchase lands for an inheritance for the children of God, of himself or the agent, as seemeth him good, or as he shall direct.

C. For, behold, verily I say unto you, The Lord willeth that the disciples, and the children of men, should open their hearts even to purchase this whole region of country, as soon as time will permit.

D. Behold, here is wisdom; let them do this lest they receive none inheritance, save it be by the shedding of blood.

12

A. And again, inasmuch as there is land obtained, let there be workmen sent forth, of all kinds, unto this land, to labor for the saints of God. Let all these things be done in order.

B. And let the privileges of the lands be made known, from time to time, by the bishop, or the agent of the church; and let the work of the gathering be not in haste, nor by flight, but let it be done as it shall be counseled by the elders of the church at the conferences, according to the knowledge which they receive from time to time.

13

A. And let my servant Sidney Rigdon consecrate and dedicate this land, and the spot of the temple, unto the Lord.

B. And let a conference meeting be called, and after that let my servants Sidney Rigdon and Joseph Smith, Jr., return, and also Oliver Cowdery with them, to accomplish the residue of the work which I have appointed unto them in their own land, and the residue as shall be ruled by the conferences.

14

A. And let no man return from this land, except he bear record, by the way, of that which he knows and most assuredly believes.

B. Let that which has been bestowed upon Ziba Peterson be taken from him, and let him stand as a member in the church, and labor with his own hands, with the brethren, until he is sufficiently chastened for all his sins, for he confesseth them not, and he thinketh to hide them.

15

A. Let the residue of the elders of this church, who are coming to this land, some of whom are exceedingly blessed, even above measure, also hold a conference upon this land.

B. And let my servant Edward Partridge direct the conference which shall be held by them.

C. And let them also return, preaching the gospel by the way, bearing record of the things which are revealed unto them;

D. for, verily, the sound must go forth from this place into all the world; and unto the uttermost parts of the earth, the gospel must be preached unto every creature, with signs following them that believe. And behold, the Son of man cometh. Amen.

Section 59

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Behold, blessed, saith the Lord, are they who have come up unto this land with an eye single to my glory, according to my commandments; for they that live shall inherit the earth, and they that die shall rest from all their labors, and their works shall follow them, and they shall receive a crown in the mansions of my Father, which I have prepared for them;

B. yea, blessed are they whose feet stand upon the land of Zion, who have obeyed my gospel, for they shall receive for their reward the good things of the earth;

C. and it shall bring forth in its strength; and they shall also be crowned with blessings from above; yea, and with commandments not a few, and with revelations in their time; they that are faithful and diligent before me.

2

A. Wherefore I give unto them a commandment, saying thus: Thou shalt love the Lord thy God, with all thy heart, with all thy might, mind, and strength; and in the name of Jesus Christ thou shalt serve him.

B. Thou shalt love thy neighbor as thyself.

C. Thou shalt not steal; neither commit adultery, nor kill, nor do anything like unto it.

D. Thou shalt thank the Lord thy God in all things.

E. Thou shalt offer a sacrifice unto the Lord thy God in righteousness; even that of a broken heart and a contrite spirit.

F. And that thou mayest more fully keep thyself unspotted from the world, thou shalt go to the house of prayer and offer up thy sacraments upon my holy day; for verily this is a day appointed unto thee to rest from thy labors, and to pay thy devotions unto the Most High;

G. nevertheless thy vows shall be offered up in righteousness on all days, and at all times;

H. but remember that on this, the Lord's day, thou shalt offer thine oblations, and thy sacraments, unto the Most High, confessing thy sins unto thy brethren, and before the Lord.

3

A. And on this day thou shalt do none other thing, only let thy food be prepared with singleness of heart, that thy fasting may be perfect; or in other words, that thy joy may be full.

B. Verily this is fasting and prayer; or, in other words, rejoicing and prayer.

4

A. And inasmuch as ye do these things, with thanksgiving, with cheerful hearts, and countenances; not with much laughter, for this is sin, but with a glad heart and a cheerful countenance;

B. verily I say, that inasmuch as ye do this the fullness of the earth is yours: the beasts of the fields, and the fowls of the air, and that which climbeth upon the trees, and walketh upon the earth;

C. yea, and the herb, and the good things which come of the earth, whether for food or for raiment, or for houses or for barns, or for orchards, or for gardens, or for vineyards;

D. yea, all things which come of the earth, in the season thereof, are made for the benefit and the use of man, both to please the eye, and to gladden the heart; yea, for food and for raiment, for taste and for smell, to strengthen the body, and to enliven the soul.

5

A. And it pleaseth God that he hath given all these things unto man; for unto this end were they made, to be used with judgment, not to excess, neither by extortion:

B. and in nothing doth man offend God, or against none is his wrath kindled, save those who confess not his hand in all things, and obey not his commandments.

C. Behold, this is according to the law and the prophets: wherefore trouble me no more concerning this matter, but learn that he who doeth the works of righteousness, shall receive his reward, even peace in this world, and eternal life in the world to come.

D. I, the Lord, have spoken it and the Spirit beareth record. Amen.

Section 60

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Behold, thus saith, the Lord unto the elders of his church, who are to return speedily to the land from whence they came.

B. Behold, it pleaseth me, that you have come up hither; but with some I am not well pleased, for they will not open their mouths, but hide the talent which I have given unto them, because of the fear of man. Woe unto such, for mine anger is kindled against them.

2

A. And it shall come to pass, if they are not more faithful unto me, it shall be taken away, even that which they have, for I, the Lord, ruleth in the heavens above, and among the armies of the earth;

B. and in the day when I shall make up my jewels, all men shall know what it is that bespeaketh the power of God.

C. But verily I will speak unto you concerning your journey unto the land from whence you came.

D. Let there be a craft made, or bought, as seemeth you good, it mattereth not unto me, and take your journey speedily for the place which is called Saint Louis.

E. And from thence let my servants Sidney Rigdon, and Joseph Smith, Jr., and Oliver Cowdery, take their journey for Cincinnati: and in this place let them lift up their voice, and declare my word with loud voices, without wrath or doubting, lifting up holy hands upon them.

F. For I am able to make you holy, and your sins are forgiven you.

3

A. And let the residue take their journey from Saint Louis, two by two, and preach the word, not in haste, among the congregations of the wicked, until they return to the churches from whence they came.

B. And all this for the good of the churches; for this intent have I sent them.

C. And let my servant Edward Partridge impart of the money which I have given him, a portion unto mine elders who are commanded to return; and he that is able, let him return it by the way of the agent, and he that is not, of him it is not required.

D. And now I speak of the residue who are to come unto this land. Behold, they have been sent to preach my gospel among the congregations of the wicked; wherefore, I give unto them a commandment thus:

E. Thou shalt not idle away thy time; neither shalt thou bury thy talent that it may not be known.

4

A. And after thou hast come up unto the land of Zion, and hast proclaimed my word, thou shalt speedily return, proclaiming my word among the congregations of the wicked.

B. Not in haste, neither in wrath nor with strife; and shake off the dust of thy feet against those who receive thee not, not in their presence, lest thou provoke them, but in secret, and wash thy feet as a testimony against them in the day of judgment.

C. Behold, this is sufficient for you, and the will of him who hath sent you.

D. And by the mouth of my servant Joseph Smith, Jr., it shall be made known concerning Sidney Rigdon and Oliver Cowdery, the residue hereafter. Even so. Amen.

Section 61

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Behold, and hearken unto the voice of him who has all power, who is from everlasting to everlasting, even Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end.

B. Behold, verily thus saith the Lord unto you, O ye elders of my church, who are assembled upon this spot, whose sins are now forgiven you, for I the Lord forgiveth sins, and am merciful unto those who confess their sins with humble hearts;

C. but verily I say unto you, that it is not needful for this whole company of mine elders, to be moving swiftly upon the waters, whilst the inhabitants on either side are perishing in unbelief;

D. nevertheless, I suffered it that ye might bear record; behold, there are many dangers upon the waters and more especially hereafter, for I the Lord have decreed, in mine anger, many destructions upon the waters;

E. yea, and especially upon these waters; nevertheless, all flesh is in mine hand, and he that is faithful among you, shall not perish by the waters.

2

A. Wherefore it is expedient that my servant Sidney Gilbert, and my servant William W. Phelps, be in haste upon their errand and mission;

B. nevertheless I would not suffer that ye should part until you are chastened for all your sins, that you might be one; that you might not perish in wickedness;

C. but now verily I say, It behooveth me that ye should part; wherefore let my servants Sidney Gilbert and William W. Phelps, take their former company, and let them take their journey in haste that they may fill their mission, and through faith they shall overcome; and inasmuch as they are faithful, they shall be preserved, and I, the Lord, will be with them.

D. And let the residue take that which is needful for clothing. Let my servant Sidney Gilbert take that which is not needful with him, as you shall agree.

E. And now, behold, for your good, I gave unto you a commandment concerning these things; and I, the Lord, will reason with you as with men in days of old.

3

A. Behold, I, the Lord, in the beginning, blessed the waters, but in the last days by the mouth of my servant John, I cursed the waters;

B. wherefore, the days will come that no flesh shall be safe upon the waters, and it shall be said in days to come, that none is able to go up to the land of Zion, upon the waters, but he that is upright in heart.

C. And, as I, the Lord, in the beginning cursed the land, even so in the last days have I blessed it, in its time, for the use of my Saints, that they may partake the fatness thereof.

D. And now I give unto you a commandment, and what I say unto one I say unto all, that you shall forewarn your brethren concerning these waters, that they come not in journeying upon them, lest their faith fail, and they are caught in her snares;

E. I, the Lord, have decreed, and the destroyer rideth upon the face thereof, and I revoke not the decree; I, the Lord, was angry with you yesterday, but today mine anger is turned away.

F. Wherefore let those concerning whom I have spoken, that should take their journey in haste—again I say unto you, Let them take their journey in haste, and it mattereth not unto me, after a little, if it so be that they fill their mission, whether they go by water or by land; let this be as it is made known unto them according to their judgments hereafter.

4

A. And now, concerning my servants Sidney Rigdon, and Joseph Smith, Jr., and Oliver Cowdery, let them come not again upon the waters, save it be upon the canal, while journeying unto their homes, or, in other words, they shall not come upon the waters to journey, save upon the canal.

B. Behold, I, the Lord, have appointed a way for the journeying of my Saints, and, behold, this is the way; that after they leave the canal, they shall journey by land, inasmuch as they are commanded to journey and go up unto the land of Zion; and they shall do like unto the children of Israel, pitching their tents by the way.

5

A. And, behold, this commandment you shall give unto all your brethren; nevertheless unto whom it is given power to command the waters, unto him it is given by the Spirit to know all his ways;

B. wherefore let him do as the Spirit of the living God commandeth him, whether upon the land or upon the waters, as it remaineth with me to do hereafter; and unto you it is given the course for the Saints, or the way for the Saints of the camp of the Lord, to journey.

C. And again, verily I say unto you, My servants Sidney Rigdon, and Joseph Smith, Jr., and Oliver Cowdery, shall not open their mouths in the congregations of the wicked, until they arrive at Cincinnati;

D. and in that place they shall lift up their voices unto God against that people; yea, unto him whose anger is kindled against their wickedness; a people who are well-nigh ripened for destruction;

E. and from thence let them journey for the congregations of their brethren, for their labors, even now, are wanted more abundantly among them, than among the congregations of the wicked.

6

A. And now concerning the residue, let them journey and declare the word among the congregations of the wicked, inasmuch as it is given, and inasmuch as they do this they shall rid their garments, and they shall be spotless before me;

B. and let them journey together, or two by two, as seemeth them good, only let my servant Reynolds Cahoon, and my servant Samuel H. Smith, with whom I am well pleased, be not separated until they return to their homes, and this for a wise purpose in me.

C. And now verily I say unto you, and what I say unto one I say unto all, Be of good cheer, little children, for I am in your midst, and I have not forsaken you, and inasmuch as you have humbled yourselves before me, the blessings of the kingdom are yours.

D. Gird up your loins and be watchful, and be sober, looking forth for the coming of the Son of man, for he cometh in an hour you think not.

E. Pray always that you enter not into temptation, that you may abide the day of his coming, whether in life or in death. Even so. Amen.

Section 62

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Behold, and hearken, O ye elders of my church, saith the Lord your God; even Jesus Christ, your Advocate; who knoweth the weakness of man and how to succor them who are tempted; and verily mine eyes are upon those who have not as yet gone up unto the land of Zion; wherefore your mission is not yet full;

B. nevertheless ye are blessed, for the testimony which ye have borne is recorded in heaven for the angels to look upon, and they rejoice over you, and your sins are forgiven you.

2

A. And now continue your journey. Assemble yourselves upon the land of Zion, and hold a meeting and rejoice together, and offer a sacrament unto the Most High;

B. and then you may return to bear record; yea, even all together, or two by two, as seemeth you good; it mattereth not unto me, only be faithful, and declare glad tidings unto the inhabitants of the earth, or among the congregations of the wicked.

C. Behold, I, the Lord, have brought you together that the promise might be fulfilled, that the faithful among you should be preserved and rejoice together in the land of Missouri. I, the Lord, promised the faithful and cannot lie.

3

A. I, the Lord, am willing, if any among you desireth to ride upon horses, or upon mules, or in chariots, he shall receive his blessing, if he receive it from the hand of the Lord, with a thankful heart in all things.

B. These things remain with you to do according to judgment and the directions of the Spirit. Behold, the kingdom is yours. And, behold, and lo, I am with the faithful always. Even so. Amen.

Section 63

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Hearken, O ye people, and open your hearts, and give ear from afar; and listen, you that call yourselves the people of the Lord, and hear the word of the Lord, and his will concerning you;

B. yea, verily, I say, Hear the word of him whose anger is kindled against the wicked and rebellious;

C. who willet to take even them whom he will take, and preserveth in life them whom he will preserve; who buildeth up at his own will and pleasure; and destroyeth when he pleases, and is able to cast the soul down to hell.

2

A. Behold, I, the Lord, utter my voice, and it shall be obeyed.

B. Wherefore, verily I say, Let the wicked take heed, and let the rebellious fear and tremble; and let the unbelieving hold their lips, for the day of wrath shall come upon them as a whirlwind, and all flesh shall know that I am God.

C. And he that seeketh signs shall see signs, but not unto salvation.

3

A. Verily, I say unto you, There are those among you who seek signs, and there have been such even from the beginning, but, behold, faith cometh not by signs, but signs follow those that believe.

B. Yea, signs come by faith, not by the will of men, nor as they please, but by the will of God.

C. Yea, signs come by faith, unto mighty works, for without faith no man pleaseth God: and with whom God is angry he is not well pleased: wherefore, unto such he showeth no signs, only in wrath unto their condemnation.

4

A. Wherefore, I, the Lord, am not pleased with those among you, who have sought after signs and wonders for faith, and not for the good of men unto my glory; nevertheless, I gave commandments and many have turned away from my commandments and have not kept them.

B. There were among you adulterers and adulteresses; some of whom have turned away from you, and others remain with you, that hereafter shall be revealed.

C. Let such beware and repent speedily, lest judgment shall come upon them as a snare, and their folly shall be made manifest, and their works shall follow them in the eyes of the people.

5

A. And verily I say unto you, as I have said before, He that looketh on a woman to lust after her, or if any shall commit adultery in their hearts, they shall not have the Spirit, but shall deny the faith and shall fear:

B. wherefore, I, the Lord, have said that the fearful, and the unbelieving, and all liars, and whosoever loveth and maketh a lie, and the whoremonger, and the sorcerer, shall have their part in that lake which burneth with fire and brimstone, which is the second death.

C. Verily I say, that they shall not have part in the first resurrection.

6

A. And now, behold, I, the Lord, saith unto you, that ye are not justified because these things are among you;

B. nevertheless he that endureth in faith and doeth my will, the same shall overcome, and shall receive an inheritance upon the earth, when the day of transfiguration shall come; when the earth shall be transfigured, even according to the pattern which was shown unto mine apostles upon the mount; of which account the fullness ye have not yet received.

7

A. And now, verily I say unto you, that as I said that I would make known my will unto you, behold, I will make it known unto you, not by the way of commandment, for there are many who observe not to keep my commandments;

B. but unto him that keepeth my commandments, I will give the mysteries of my kingdom, and the same shall be in him a well of living water, springing up unto everlasting life.

8

A. And now, behold, this is the will of the Lord your God concerning his Saints, that they should assemble themselves together unto the land of Zion, not in haste, lest there should be confusion, which bringeth pestilence.

B. Behold, the Land of Zion, I, the Lord, holdeth it in mine own hands; nevertheless, I, the Lord, rendereth unto Caesar the things which are Caesar's:

C. wherefore, I, the Lord, willeth, that you should purchase the lands, that you may have advantage of the world, that you may have claim on the world, that they may not be stirred up unto anger;

D. for Satan putteth it into their hearts to anger against you, and to the shedding of blood; wherefore the land of Zion shall not be obtained but by purchase, or by blood, otherwise there is none inheritance for you.

E. And if by purchase, behold, you are blessed; and if by blood, as you are forbidden to shed blood, lo, your enemies are upon you, and ye shall be scourged from city to city, and from synagogue to synagogue, and but few shall stand to receive an inheritance.

9

A. I, the Lord, am angry with the wicked; I am holding my Spirit from the inhabitants of the earth.

B. I have sworn in my wrath and decreed wars upon the face of the earth, and the wicked shall slay the wicked, and fear shall come upon every man, and the Saints also shall hardly escape;

C. nevertheless, I, the Lord, am with them, and will come down in heaven from the presence of my Father, and consume the wicked with unquenchable fire.

D. And, behold, this is not yet, but by and by; wherefore seeing that I, the Lord, have decreed all these things upon the face of the earth, I will that my saints should be assembled upon the land of Zion;

E. and that every man should take righteousness in his hands, and faithfulness upon his loins, and lift a warning voice unto the inhabitants of the earth; and declare both by word and by flight, that desolation shall come upon the wicked.

F. Wherefore let my disciples in Kirtland arrange their temporal concerns, which dwell upon this farm.

10

A. Let my servant Titus Billings, who has the care thereof, dispose of the land, that he may be prepared in the coming spring, to take his journey up unto the land of Zion, with those that dwell upon the face thereof, excepting those whom I shall reserve unto myself, that shall not go until I shall command them.

B. And let all the moneys which can be spared, it mattereth not unto me whether it be little or much, be sent up unto the land of Zion, unto them whom I have appointed to receive.

11

Behold, I, the Lord, will give unto my servant Joseph Smith, Jr., power that he shall be enabled to discern by the Spirit those who shall go up unto the land of Zion, and those of my disciples who shall tarry.

12

A. Let my servant Newel K. Whitney retain his store, or, in other words, the store yet for a little season. Nevertheless let him impart all the money which he can impart, to be sent up unto the land of Zion.

B. Behold, these things are in his own hands, let him do according to wisdom.

C. Verily I say, Let him be ordained as an agent unto the disciples that shall tarry, and let him be ordained unto this power; and now speedily visit the churches, expounding these things unto them, with my servant Oliver Cowdery.

D. Behold, this is my will, obtaining moneys even as I have directed.

13

A. He that is faithful and endureth shall overcome the world.

B. He that sendeth up treasures unto the land of Zion, shall receive an inheritance in this world, and his works shall follow him; and also a reward in the world to come:

C. yea, and blessed are the dead that die in the Lord from henceforth, when the Lord shall come, and old things shall pass away, and all things become new,

D. they shall rise from the dead and shall not die after, and shall receive an inheritance before the Lord, in the holy city, and he that liveth when the Lord shall come, and has kept the faith, blessed is he; nevertheless it is appointed to him to die at the age of man;

E. wherefore children shall grow up until they become old, old men shall die; but they shall not sleep in the dust, but they shall be changed in the twinkling of an eye;

F. wherefore, for this cause preached the apostles unto the world the resurrection of the dead:

G. these things are the things that ye must look for, and speaking after the manner of the Lord, they are now nigh at hand; and in a time to come, even in the day of the coming of the Son of Man, and until that hour, there will be foolish virgins among the wise, and at that hour cometh an entire separation of the righteous and the wicked;

H. and in that day will I send mine angels, to pluck out the wicked, and cast them into unquenchable fire.

14

And now, behold, verily I say unto you, I, the Lord, am not pleased with my servant Sidney Rigdon, he exalted himself in his heart, and received not counsel, but grieved the Spirit; wherefore his writing is not acceptable unto the Lord, and he shall make another, and if the Lord receive it not, behold, he standeth no longer in the office which I have appointed him.

15

A. And again, verily I say unto you, Those who desire in their hearts, in meekness, to warn sinners to repentance, let them be ordained unto this power; for this is a day of warning, and not a day of many words.

B. For I, the Lord, am not to be mocked in the last days. Behold, I am from above, and my power lieth beneath.

C. I am over all, and in all, and through all, and searcheth all things; and the day cometh that all things shall be subject unto me. Behold, I am Alpha and Omega, even Jesus Christ.

D. Wherefore let all men beware how they take my name in their lips; for, behold, verily I say, that many there be who are under this condemnation; who use the name of the Lord, and use it in vain, having not authority.

E. Wherefore, let the church repent of their sins, and I, the Lord, will own them; otherwise they shall be cut off.

16

A. Remember that that which cometh from above is sacred, and must be spoken with care, and by constraint of the Spirit, and in this there is no condemnation; and ye receive the Spirit through prayer; wherefore, without this there remaineth condemnation.

B. Let my servants Joseph Smith, Jr., and Sidney Rigdon, seek them a home as they are taught through prayer, by the Spirit.

C. These things remain to overcome, through patience, that such may receive a more exceeding and eternal weight of glory; otherwise, a greater condemnation. Amen.

Section 64

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Behold, thus saith the Lord your God unto you, O ye elders of my church, Hearken ye, and hear, and receive my will concerning you; for verily I say unto you, I will that ye should overcome the world; wherefore I will have compassion upon you.

B. There are those among you who have sinned; but verily I say, For this once, for mine own glory, and for the salvation of souls, I have forgiven you your sins.

2

A. I will be merciful unto you, for I have given unto you the kingdom; and the keys of the mysteries of the kingdom, shall not be taken from my servant Joseph Smith, Jr., through the means I have appointed, while he liveth, inasmuch as he obeyeth mine ordinances.

B. There are those who have sought occasion against him without cause; nevertheless he has sinned, but verily I say unto you, I, the Lord, forgiveth sins unto those who confess their sins before me, and ask forgiveness, who have not sinned unto death.

C. My disciples, in days of old, sought occasion against one another, and forgave not one another in their hearts, and for this evil they were afflicted, and sorely chastened;

D. wherefore I say unto you, that ye ought to forgive one another, for he that forgiveth not his brother his trespasses, standeth condemned before the Lord, for there remaineth in him the greater sin.

E. I, the Lord, will forgive whom I will forgive, but of you it is required to forgive all men; and ye ought to say in your hearts, Let God judge between me and thee, and reward thee according to thy deeds.

F. And he that repenteth not of his sins, and confesseth them not, then ye shall bring him before the church, and do with him as the Scriptures saith unto you, either by commandment, or by revelation.

G. And this ye shall do that God might be glorified, not because ye forgive not, having not compassion, but that ye may be justified in the eyes of the law, that ye may not offend him who is your Lawgiver.

3

A. Verily I say, For this cause ye shall do these things.

B. Behold, I, the Lord, was angry with him who was my servant Ezra Booth; and also my servant Isaac Morley; for they kept not the law, neither the commandments; they sought evil in their hearts, and I the Lord, withheld my Spirit.

C. They condemned for evil that thing in which there was no evil; nevertheless, I have forgiven my servant Isaac Morley.

D. And also my servant Edward Partridge, behold, he hath sinned, and Satan seeketh to destroy his soul; but when these things are made known unto them, they repent of the evil, and they shall be forgiven.

4

A. And now, verily I say, that it is expedient in me that my servant Sidney Gilbert, after a few weeks, should return upon his business, and to his agency in the land of Zion; and that which he hath seen and heard may be made known unto my disciples, that they perish not. And for this cause have I spoken these things.

B. And again, I say unto you, that my servant Isaac Morley may not be tempted above that which he is able to bear, and counsel wrongfully to your hurt, I gave commandment that this farm should be sold.

C. I do not will that my servant Frederick G. Williams should sell his farm, for I, the Lord will to retain a strong hold in the land of Kirtland, for the space of five years, in the which I will not overthrow the wicked, that thereby I may save some;

D. and after that day, I, the Lord, will not hold any guilty that shall go, with an open heart, up to the land of Zion; for I, the Lord, require the hearts of the children of men.

5

A. Behold, now it is called today (until the coming of the Son of man), and verily it is a day of sacrifice, and a day for the tithing of my people; for he that is tithed shall not be burned (at his coming); for after today cometh the burning: this is speaking after the manner of the Lord;

B. for verily I say, Tomorrow all the proud and they that do wickedly shall be as stubble; and I will burn them up, for I am the Lord of hosts; and I will not spare any that remaineth in Babylon. Wherefore, if ye believe me, ye will labor while it is called today.

C. And it is not meet that my servants Newel K. Whitney and Sidney Gilbert should sell their store, and their possessions here, for this is not wisdom until the residue of the church, which remaineth in this place, shall go up unto the land of Zion.

6

A. Behold, it is said in my laws, or forbidden, to get in debt to thine enemies; but, behold, it is not said at any time, that the Lord should not take when he please, and pay as seemeth him good:

B. wherefore, as ye are agents, and ye are on the Lord's errand; and whatever ye do according to the will of the Lord, is the Lord's business, and he hath set you to provide for his Saints in these last days, that they may obtain an inheritance in the land of Zion, and, behold, I, the Lord, declare unto you, and my words are sure and shall not fail, that they shall obtain it;

C. but all things must come to pass in their time; wherefore be not weary in well-doing, for ye are laying the foundation of a great work. And out of small things proceedeth that which is great.

7

A. Behold, the Lord requireth the heart and a willing mind; and the willing and obedient shall eat the good of the land of Zion in these last days;

B. and the rebellious shall be cut off out of the land of Zion, and shall be sent away, and shall not inherit the land; for, verily, I say that the rebellious are not of the blood of Ephraim, wherefore they shall be plucked out.

C. Behold, I, the Lord, have made my church in these last days, like unto a judge sitting on a hill, or in a high place, to judge the nations; for it shall come to pass, that the inhabitants of Zion shall judge all things pertaining to Zion;

D. and liars, and hypocrites shall be proved by them, and they who are not apostles and prophets shall be known.

8

A. And even the bishop, who is a judge, and his counselors, if they are not faithful in their stewardships, shall be condemned, and others shall be planted in their stead; for, behold, I say unto you that Zion shall flourish, and the glory of the Lord shall be upon her, and she shall be an ensign unto the people, and there shall come unto her out of every nation under heaven.

B. And the day shall come, when the nations of the earth shall tremble because of her, and shall fear because of her terrible ones. The Lord hath spoken it. Amen.

Section 65

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Hearken, and lo, a voice as of one sent down from on high, who is mighty and powerful, whose going forth is unto the ends of the earth; yea, whose voice is unto men, Prepare ye the way of the Lord, make his paths straight.

B. The keys of the kingdom of God are committed unto man on the earth, and from thence shall the gospel roll forth unto the ends of the earth, as the stone which is cut out of the mountain without hands shall roll forth, until it has filled the whole earth;

C. yea, a voice crying, Prepare ye the way of the Lord, prepare ye the supper of the Lamb, make ready for the Bridegroom;

D. pray unto the Lord; call upon his holy name; make known his wonderful works among the people, call upon the Lord, that his kingdom may go forth upon the earth;

E. that the inhabitants thereof may receive it, and be prepared for the days to come, in the which the Son of man shall come down in heaven, clothed in the brightness of his glory, to meet the kingdom of God which is set up on the earth;

F. wherefore, may the kingdom of God go forth, that the kingdom of heaven may come, that thou, O God, may be glorified in heaven, so on earth, that thy enemies may be subdued; for thine is the honor, power, and glory, for ever and ever. Amen.

Section 66

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Behold, thus saith the Lord, unto my servant, William E. McLellin, Blessed are you, inasmuch as you have turned away from your iniquities, and have received my truths, saith the Lord your Redeemer, the Savior of the world, even of as many as believe on my name.

B. Verily I say unto you, Blessed are you for receiving mine everlasting covenant, even the fullness of my gospel, sent forth unto the children of men, that they might have life, and be made partakers of the glories, which are to be revealed in the last days, as it was written by the prophets and apostles in days of old.

2

A. Verily I say unto you, my servant William, that you are clean, but not all; repent therefore of those things which are not pleasing in my sight, saith the Lord, for the Lord will show them unto you.

B. And now verily I, the Lord, will show unto you what I will concerning you, or what is my will concerning you; behold, verily I say unto you, that it is my will that you should proclaim my gospel from land to land, and from city to city; yea, in those regions round about where it has not been proclaimed.

3

A. Tarry not many days in this place; go not up unto the land of Zion, as yet; but inasmuch as you can send, send; otherwise think not of thy property.

B. Go unto the eastern lands; bear testimony in every place, unto every people, and in their synagogues; reasoning with the people.

4

Let my servant Samuel H. Smith go with you, and forsake him not, and give him thine instructions; and he that is faithful shall be made strong in every place, and I, the Lord, will go with you.

5

A. Lay your hands upon the sick and they shall recover. Return not till I, the Lord, shall send you.

B. Be patient in affliction.

C. Ask and ye shall receive. Knock and it shall be opened unto you. Seek not to be cumbered.

D. Forsake all unrighteousness.

E. Commit not adultery, a temptation with which thou hast been troubled.

F. Keep these sayings for they are true and faithful, and thou shalt magnify thine office, and push many people to Zion, with songs of everlasting joy upon their heads.

G. Continue in these things, even unto the end, and you shall have a crown of eternal life at the right hand of my Father, who is full of grace and truth.

H. Verily thus saith the Lord your God, your Redeemer, even Jesus Christ. Amen.

Section 67

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Behold, and hearken, O ye elders of my church, who have assembled yourselves together, whose prayers I have heard, and whose hearts I know, and whose desires have come up before me.

B. Behold, and lo, mine eyes are upon you; and the heavens and the earth are in mine hands, and the riches of eternity are mine to give.

C. Ye endeavored to believe that ye should receive the blessing which was offered unto you, but, behold, verily, I say unto you, There were fears in your hearts; and verily this is the reason that ye did not receive.

2

A. And now, I, the Lord, give unto you a testimony of the truth of these commandments which are lying before you; your eyes have been upon my servant Joseph Smith, Jr., and his language you have known; and his imperfections you have known; and you have sought in your hearts knowledge, that you might express beyond his language:

B. this you also know: now seek ye out of the Book of Commandments, even the least that is among them, and appoint him that is the most wise among you;

C. or if there be any among you, that shall make one like unto it, then ye are justified in saying that ye do not know that they are true; but if ye cannot make one like unto it, ye are under condemnation if ye do not bear record that they are true;

D. for ye know that there is no unrighteousness in them; and that which is righteous cometh down from above, from the Father of lights.

3

A. And again, verily I say unto you, that it is your privilege, and a promise I give unto you that have been ordained unto this ministry, that inasmuch as you strip yourselves from jealousies and fears, and humble yourselves before me, for ye are not sufficiently humble, the veil shall be rent, and you shall see me and know that I am;

B. not with the carnal, neither natural mind, but with the spiritual; for no man has seen God at any time in the flesh, except quickened by the Spirit of God;

C. neither can any natural man abide the presence of God; neither after the carnal mind; ye are not able to abide the presence of God now, neither the ministering of angels; wherefore continue in patience until ye are perfected.

4

Let not your minds turn back, and when ye are worthy, in mine own due time, ye shall see and know that which was conferred upon you by the hands of my servant Joseph Smith, Jr. Amen.

Section 68

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. My servant, Orson Hyde, was called by his ordinance to proclaim the everlasting gospel by the Spirit of the living God, from people to people and from land to land, in the congregations of the wicked, in their synagogues, reasoning with and expounding all Scriptures unto them.

B. And, behold and lo, this is an ensample unto all those who were ordained unto this priesthood, whose mission is appointed unto them to go forth; and this is the ensample unto them, that they shall speak as they are moved upon by the Holy Ghost;

C. and whatsoever they shall speak when moved upon by the Holy Ghost shall be Scripture; shall be the will of the Lord; shall be the mind of the Lord; shall be the word of the Lord; shall be the voice of the Lord, and the power of God unto salvation:

D. behold, this is the promise of the Lord unto you, O ye my servants: wherefore, be of good cheer, and do not fear, for I, the Lord, am with you and will stand by you; and ye shall bear record of me, even Jesus Christ, that I am the Son of the living God, that I was, that I am, and that I am to come.

E. This is the word of the Lord unto you my servant, Orson Hyde, and also unto my servant, Luke Johnson, and unto my servant, Lyman Johnson, and unto my servant, William E. McLellan; and unto all the faithful elders of my church.

F. Go ye into all the world; preach the gospel to every creature, acting in the authority which I have given you, baptizing in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost;

G. and he that believeth, and is baptized, shall be saved, and he that believeth not shall be damned; and he that believeth shall be blessed with signs following, even as it is written;

H. and unto you it shall be given to know the signs of the times, and the signs of the coming of the Son of man; and of as many as the Father shall bear record, to you shall be given power to seal them up unto eternal life. Amen.

2

A. And now concerning the items in addition to the covenants and commandments, they are these:

B. There remaineth hereafter in the due time of the Lord, other bishops to be set apart unto the church to minister even according to the first;

C. wherefore they shall be high priests who are worthy, and they shall be appointed by the First Presidency of the Melchisedec priesthood, except they be literal descendants of Aaron, and if they be literal descendants of Aaron, they have a legal right to the bishopric, if they are the firstborn among the sons of Aaron; for the firstborn holds the right of the presidency over this priesthood, and the keys or authority of the same.

D. No man has a legal right to this office, to hold the keys of this priesthood, except he be a literal descendant and the firstborn of Aaron; but as a high priest of the Melchisedec priesthood has authority to officiate in all the lesser offices, he may officiate in the office of bishop when no literal descendant of Aaron can be found;

E. provided, he is called and set apart, and ordained unto this power under the hands of the First Presidency of the Melchisedec priesthood.

F. And a literal descendant of Aaron, also must be designated by this presidency, and found worthy, and anointed, and ordained under the hands of this presidency, otherwise they are not legally authorized to officiate in their priesthood;

G. but by virtue of the decree concerning their right of the priesthood descending from father to son, they may claim their anointing, if at any time they can prove their lineage, or do ascertain it by revelation from the Lord under the hands of the above-named presidency.

3

A. And again, no bishop, or high priest, who shall be set apart for this ministry, shall be tried or condemned for any crime, save it be before the First Presidency of the church;

B. and inasmuch as he is found guilty before this presidency, by testimony that cannot be impeached, he shall be condemned, and if he repents he shall be forgiven, according to the covenants and commandments of the church.

4

A. And again, inasmuch as parents have children in Zion, or in any of her stakes which are organized, that teach them not to understand the doctrine of repentance; faith in Christ the Son of the living God; and of baptism and the gift of the Holy Ghost by the laying on of the hands when eight years old, the sin be upon the head of the parents;

B. for this shall be a law unto the inhabitants of Zion, or in any of her stakes which are organized; and their children shall be baptized for the remission of their sins when eight years old, and receive the laying on of the hands:

C. and they shall also teach their children to pray, and to walk uprightly before the Lord.

D. And the inhabitants of Zion shall also observe the sabbath day to keep it holy.

E. And the inhabitants of Zion, also, shall remember their labors, inasmuch as they are appointed to labor, in all faithfulness; for the idler shall be had in remembrance before the Lord.

F. Now I, the Lord, am not well pleased with the inhabitants of Zion, for there are idlers among them: and their children are also growing up in wickedness; they also seek not earnestly the riches of eternity, but their eyes are full of greediness.

G. These things ought not to be, and must be done away from among them; wherefore let my servant Oliver Cowdery carry these sayings unto the land of Zion.

H. And a commandment I give unto them, that he that observeth not his prayers before the Lord in the season thereof, let him be had in remembrance before the judge of my people.

I. These sayings are true and faithful; wherefore transgress them not, neither take therefrom. Behold, I am Alpha and Omega, and I come quickly. Amen.

Section 69

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Hearken unto me, saith the Lord your God, for my servant Oliver Cowdery's sake: it is not wisdom in me that he should be intrusted with the commandments and the moneys which he shall carry unto the land of Zion, except one go with him who will be true and faithful; wherefore I, the Lord, will that my servant John Whitmer should go with my servant Oliver Cowdery;

B. and also that he shall continue in writing and making a history of all the important things which he shall observe and know concerning my church; and also that he receive counsel and assistance from my servant Oliver Cowdery, and others.

2

A. And also my servants who are abroad in the earth should send forth the accounts of their stewardships to the land of Zion, for the land of Zion shall be a seat and a place to receive and do all these things;

B. nevertheless, let my servant John Whitmer travel many times from place to place, and from church to church, that he may the more easily obtain knowledge—preaching and expounding, writing, copying, selecting, and obtaining all things which shall be for the good of the church, and for the rising generations, that shall grow up on the land of Zion, to possess it from generation to generation, for ever and ever. Amen.

Section 70

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Behold and hearken, O ye inhabitants of Zion, and all ye people of my church, who are far off, and hear the word of the Lord, which I give unto my servant Joseph Smith, Jr., and also unto my servant Martin Harris, and also unto my servant Oliver Cowdery, and also unto my servant John Whitmer, and also unto my servant Sidney Rigdon, and also unto my servant William W. Phelps, by the way of commandment unto them, for I give unto them a commandment;

B. wherefore hearken and hear, for thus saith the Lord unto them, I, the Lord, have appointed them, and ordained them to be stewards over the revelations and commandments which I have given unto them, and which I shall hereafter give unto them;

C. and an account of this stewardship will I require of them in the day of judgment; wherefore I have appointed unto them, and this is their business in the church of God, to manage them and the concerns thereof; yea, the benefits thereof.

2

A. Wherefore a commandment I give unto them, that they shall not give these things unto the church, neither unto the world;

B. nevertheless, inasmuch as they receive more than is needful for their necessities and their wants, it shall be given into my storehouse, and the benefits shall be consecrated unto the inhabitants of Zion and unto their generations, inasmuch as they become heirs according to the laws of the kingdom.

3

A. Behold, this is what the Lord requires of every man in his stewardship, even as I, the Lord, have appointed, or shall hereafter appoint unto any man.

B. And behold, none are exempt from this law who belong to the church of the living God; yea, neither the bishop, neither the agent, who keepeth the Lord's storehouse; neither he who is appointed in a stewardship over temporal things;

C. he who is appointed to administer spiritual things, the same is worthy of his hire, even as those who are appointed to a stewardship, to administer in temporal things; yea, even more abundantly, which abundance is multiplied unto them through the manifestations of the Spirit;

D. nevertheless, in your temporal things you shall be equal, and this not grudgingly, otherwise the abundance of the manifestations of the Spirit shall be withheld.

4

A. Now this commandment I give unto my servants, for their benefit while they remain, for a manifestation of my blessings upon their heads, and for a reward of their diligence, and for their security for food and for raiment, for an inheritance;

B. for houses and for lands, in whatsoever circumstances I, the Lord, shall place them; and whithersoever I, the Lord, shall send them, for they have been faithful over many things, and have done well inasmuch as they have not sinned.

C. Behold, I, the Lord, am merciful, and will bless them, and they shall enter into the joy of these things. Even so. Amen.

Section 71

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

Behold, thus saith the Lord unto you, my servants, Joseph Smith, Jr., and Sidney Rigdon, that the time has verily come that it is necessary and expedient in me that you should open your mouths in proclaiming my gospel, the things of the kingdom, expounding the mysteries thereof out of the Scriptures, according to that portion of the spirit and power, which shall be given unto you, even as I will.

2

- A.** Verily I say unto you, Proclaim unto the world in the regions round about, and in the church also, for the space of a season, even until it shall be made known unto you.
- B.** Verily this is a mission for a season which I give unto you; wherefore labor ye in my vineyard.
- C.** Call upon the inhabitants of the earth, and bear record, and prepare the way for the commandments and revelations which are to come.
- D.** Now, behold, this is wisdom; whoso readeth let him understand and receive also; for unto him that receiveth it shall be given more abundantly, even power;
- E.** wherefore, confound your enemies; call upon them to meet you, both in public and in private; and inasmuch as ye are faithful, their shame shall be made manifest.
- F.** Wherefore let them bring forth their strong reasons against the Lord.
- G.** Verily thus saith the Lord unto you, There is no weapon that is formed against you shall prosper; and if any man lift his voice against you, he shall be confounded in mine own due time; wherefore, keep these commandments: they are true and faithful. Even so. Amen.

Section 72

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Hearken, and listen to the voice of the Lord, O ye who have assembled yourselves together, who are the high priests of my church, to whom the kingdom and power have been given.

B. For verily thus saith the Lord, It is expedient in me for a bishop to be appointed unto you, or of you unto the church, in this part of the Lord's vineyard;

C. and verily in this thing ye have done wisely, for it is required of the Lord, at the hand of every steward, to render an account of his stewardship, both in time and in eternity.

D. For he who is faithful and wise in time is accounted worthy to inherit the mansions prepared for them of my Father.

E. Verily I say unto you, The elders of the church in this part of my vineyard shall render an account of their stewardship unto the bishop which shall be appointed of me, in this part of my vineyard.

F. These things shall be had on record, to be handed over unto the bishop in Zion; and the duty of the bishop shall be made known by the commandments which have been given, and the voice of the conference.

2

And now, verily I say unto you, My servant Newel K. Whitney is the man who shall be appointed and ordained unto this power; this is the will of the Lord your God, your Redeemer. Even so. Amen.

3

A. The word of the Lord, in addition to the law which has been given, making known the duty of the bishop which has been ordained unto the church in this part of the vineyard, which is verily this:

B. to keep the Lord's storehouse; to receive the funds of the church in this part of the vineyard; to take an account of the elders, as before has been commanded; and to administer to their wants, who shall pay for that which they receive, inasmuch as they have wherewith to pay, that this also may be consecrated to the good of the church, to the poor and needy;

C. and he who hath not wherewith to pay, an account shall be taken and handed over to the bishop of Zion, who shall pay the debt out of that which the Lord shall put into his hands;

D. and the labors of the faithful who labor in spiritual things, in administering the gospel and the things of the kingdom unto the church, and unto the world, shall answer the debt unto the bishop in Zion;

E. thus it cometh out of the church, for according to the law every man that cometh up to Zion must lay all things before the bishop in Zion.

4

A. And now, verily I say unto you, That as every elder in this part of the vineyard must give an account of his stewardship unto the bishop in this part of the vineyard, a certificate from the judge or bishop in this part of the vineyard, unto the bishop in Zion, rendereth every man acceptable, and answereth all things, for an inheritance, and to be received as a wise steward and as a faithful laborer; otherwise he shall not be accepted of the bishop in Zion.

B. And now, verily I say unto you, Let every elder who shall give an account unto the bishop of the church, in this part of the vineyard, be recommended by the church, or churches, in which he labors, that he may render himself and his accounts approved in all things.

C. And again, let my servants who are appointed as stewards over the literary concerns of my church have claim for assistance upon the bishop, or bishops, in all things, that the revelations may be published, and go forth unto the ends of the earth,

D. that they also may obtain funds which shall benefit the church in all things, that they also may render themselves approved in all things, and be accounted as wise stewards.

E. And now, behold, this shall be an ensample for all the extensive branches of my church, in whatsoever land they shall be established. And now I make an end of my sayings. Amen.

5

A. A few words in addition to the laws of the kingdom, respecting the members of the church; they that are appointed by the Holy Spirit to go up unto Zion, and they who are privileged to go up unto Zion.

B. Let them carry up unto the bishop a certificate from three elders of the church, or a certificate from the bishop, otherwise he who shall go up unto the land of Zion shall not be accounted as a wise steward. This is also an ensample. Amen.

Section 73

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

For verily thus saith the Lord, It is expedient in me that they should continue preaching the gospel, and in exhortation to the churches, in the regions round about, until Conference; and then, behold, it shall be made known unto them, by the voice of the Conference, their several missions.

2

A. Now, verily I say unto you, my servants Joseph Smith, Jr., and Sidney Rigdon, saith the Lord, It is expedient to translate again, and, inasmuch as it is practicable, to preach in the regions round about until Conference, and after that it is expedient to continue the work of translation until it be finished.

B. And let this be a pattern unto the elders until further knowledge, even as it is written. Now, I give no more unto you at this time. Gird up your loins and be sober. Even so. Amen.

Section 74

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

For the unbelieving husband is sanctified by the wife, and the unbelieving wife is sanctified by the husband, else were your children unclean; but now are they holy.

2

A. Now in the days of the apostles the law of circumcision was had among all the Jews who believed not the gospel of Jesus Christ.

B. And it came to pass that there arose a great contention among the people concerning the law of circumcision, for the unbelieving husband was desirous that his children should be circumcised and become subject to the Law of Moses, which law was fulfilled.

3

A. And it came to pass that the children being brought up in subjection to the Law of Moses, and giving heed to the traditions of their fathers, believed not the gospel of Christ, wherein they became unholy;

B. wherefore for this cause the apostle wrote unto the church, giving unto them a commandment, not of the Lord, but of himself, that a believer should not be united to an unbeliever, except the Law of Moses should be done away among them, that their children might remain without circumcision;

C. and that the tradition might be done away, which saith that little children are unholy, for it was had among the Jews;

D. but little children are holy, being sanctified through the atonement of Jesus Christ; and this is what the Scriptures mean.

Section 75

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Verily, verily, I say unto you, I who speak even by the voice of my Spirit; even Alpha and Omega, your Lord and your God; hearken, O ye who have given your names to go forth to proclaim my gospel, and to prune my vineyard.

B. Behold, I say unto you, that it is my will that you should go forth and not tarry, neither be idle, but labor with your mights, lifting up your voices as with the sound of a trumpet, proclaiming the truth according to the revelations and commandments which I have given you,

C. and thus if ye are faithful ye shall be laden with many sheaves, and crowned with honor, and glory, and immortality, and eternal life.

2

A. Therefore, verily I say unto my servant William E. McLellin, I revoke the commission which I gave unto him, to go unto the eastern countries, and I give unto him a new commission and a new commandment, in the which I, the Lord, chasteneth him for the murmurings of his heart; and he sinned,

B. nevertheless I forgive him, and say unto him again, Go ye into the south countries; and let my servant Luke Johnson go with him and proclaim the things which I have commanded them,

C. calling on the name of the Lord for the Comforter, which shall teach them all things that are expedient for them, praying always that they faint not; and inasmuch as they do this, I will be with them even unto the end. Behold, this is the will of the Lord your God concerning you. Even so. Amen.

3

A. And again, verily thus saith the Lord, Let my servant Orson Hyde and my servant Samuel H. Smith take their journey into the eastern countries, and proclaim the things which I have commanded them: and inasmuch as they are faithful, lo, I will be with them even unto the end.

B. And again, verily I say unto my servant Lyman Johnson, and unto my servant Orson Pratt, They shall also take their journey into the eastern countries; and behold and lo, I am with them also even unto the end.

C. And, again, I say unto my servant Asa Dodds, and unto my servant Calves Wilson, that they also shall take their journey unto the western countries, and proclaim my gospel even as I have commanded them.

D. And he who is faithful shall overcome all things, and shall be lifted up at the last day.

E. And again, I say unto my servant Major N. Ashley and my servant Burr Riggs, Let them take their journey also unto the south country; yea, let all those take their journey as I have commanded them, going from house to house, and from village to village, and from city to city;

F. and in whatsoever house ye enter, and they receive you, leave your blessings upon that house; and in whatsoever house ye enter, and they receive you not, ye shall depart speedily from that house, and shake off the dust of your feet as a testimony against them;

G. and you shall be filled with joy and gladness and know this, that in the day of judgment you shall be judges of that house, and condemn them; and it shall be more tolerable for the heathen in the day of judgment, than for that house;

H. therefore gird up your loins and be faithful and ye shall overcome all things and be lifted up at the last day. Even so. Amen.

4

A. And, again, thus saith the Lord unto you, O ye elders of my church, who have given your names that you might know his will concerning you:

B. Behold, I say unto you, that it is the duty of the church to assist in supporting the families of those and also to support the families of those who are called and must needs be sent unto the world to proclaim the gospel unto the world;

C. wherefore, I, the Lord, give unto you this commandment, that ye obtain places for your families, inasmuch as your brethren are willing to open their hearts; and let all such as can, obtain places for their families, and support of the church for them, not fail to go into the world;

D. whether to the east, or to the west, or to the north, or to the south; let them ask and they shall receive, knock and it shall be opened unto them, and made known from on high, even by the Comforter, whither they shall go.

5

A. And again, verily I say unto you, that every man who is obliged to provide for his own family, let him provide and he shall in no wise lose his crown; and let him labor in the church.

B. Let every man be diligent in all things. And the idler shall not have place in the church, except he repents and mends his ways.

C. Wherefore, let my servant Simeon Carter, and my servant Emer Harris be united in the ministry. And also my servant Ezra Thayre and my servant Thomas B. Marsh. Also my servant Hyrum Smith and my servant Reynolds Cahoon; and also my servant Daniel Stanton and my servant Seymour Brunson;

D. and also my servant Sylvester Smith and my servant Gideon Carter; and also my servant Ruggles Eames and my servant Stephen Burnett; and also my servant Micah B. Welton and also my servant Eden Smith. Even so. Amen.

Section 76

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

- A.** Hear, O ye heavens, and give ear, O earth, and rejoice ye inhabitants thereof, for the Lord is God, and beside him there is no Savior;
- B.** great is his wisdom; marvelous are his ways; and the extent of his doings, none can find out;
- C.** his purposes fail not, neither are there any who can stay his hand; from eternity to eternity he is the same, and his years never fail.

2

- A.** For thus saith the Lord, "I, the Lord, am merciful and gracious unto those who fear me, and delight to honor those who serve me in righteousness and in truth unto the end;
- B.** great shall be their reward, and eternal shall be their glory; and to them will I reveal all mysteries; yea, all the hidden mysteries of my kingdom from days of old; and for ages to come will I make known unto them the good pleasure of my will concerning all things pertaining to my kingdom;
- C.** yea, even the wonders of eternity shall they know, and things to come will I show them, even the things of many generations; their wisdom shall be great, and their understanding reach to heaven; and before them the wisdom of the wise shall perish, and the understanding of the prudent shall come to naught;
- D.** for by my Spirit will I enlighten them, and by my power will I make known unto them the secrets of my will; yea, even those things which eye has not seen, nor ear heard, nor yet entered into the heart of man."

3

- A.** We, Joseph Smith, Jr., and Sidney Rigdon, being in the Spirit on the sixteenth of February, in the year of our Lord one thousand eight hundred and thirty-two, by the power of the Spirit our eyes were opened, and our understandings were enlightened, so as to see and understand the things of God;
- B.** even those things which were from the beginning before the world was, which were ordained of the Father, through his only begotten Son, who was in the bosom of the Father, even from the beginning, of whom we bear record, and the record which we bear is the fullness of the gospel of Jesus Christ, who is the Son, whom we saw and with whom we conversed in the heavenly vision;

C. for while we were doing the work of translation, which the Lord had appointed unto us, we came to the twenty-ninth verse of the fifth chapter of John, which was given unto us as follows:

D. speaking of the resurrection of the dead, concerning those who shall hear the voice of the Son of man, and shall come forth; they who have done good in the resurrection of the just, and they who have done evil in the resurrection of the unjust.

E. Now this caused us to marvel, for it was given unto us of the Spirit, and while we meditated upon these things, the Lord touched the eyes of our understandings, and they were opened, and the glory of the Lord shone round about;

F. and we beheld the glory of the Son, on the right hand of the Father, and received of his fullness; and saw the holy angels, and they who are sanctified before his throne, worshiping God and the Lamb, who worship him for ever and ever.

G. And, now, after the many testimonies which have been given of him, this is the testimony, last of all, which we give of him, that he lives; for we saw him, even on the right hand of God;

H. and we heard the voice bearing record that he is the Only Begotten of the Father; that by him, and through him, and of him, the worlds are and were created; and the inhabitants thereof are begotten sons and daughters unto God.

I. And this we saw also, and bear record, that an angel of God, who was in authority in the presence of God, who rebelled against the only begotten Son; whom the Father loved, and who was in the bosom of the Father;

J. and was thrust down from the presence of God and the Son, and was called Perdition; for the heavens wept over him; he was Lucifer, a son of the morning. And we beheld, and lo, he is fallen! is fallen! even a son of the morning.

K. And while we were yet in the Spirit, the Lord commanded us that we should write the vision; for we beheld Satan, that old serpent, even the Devil, who rebelled against God, and sought to take the kingdom of our God and his Christ;

L. wherefore he maketh war with the saints of God, and encompasses them round about.

M. And we saw a vision of the sufferings of those with whom he made war and overcame, for thus came the voice of the Lord unto us.

4

A. Thus saith the Lord, "concerning all those who know my power, and have been made partakers thereof, and suffered themselves, through the power of the Devil, to be overcome, and to deny the truth, and defy my power;

B. they are they who are the sons of perdition, of whom I say it had been better for them never to have been born;

C. for they are vessels of wrath, doomed to suffer the wrath of God, with the Devil and his angels, in eternity, concerning whom I have said there is no forgiveness in this world nor in the world to come;

D. having denied the Holy Spirit, after having received it, and having denied the only begotten Son of the Father; having crucified him unto themselves, and put him to an open shame:

E. these are they who shall go away into the lake of fire and brimstone, with the Devil and his angels, and the only ones on whom the second death shall have any power; yea, verily, the only ones who shall not be redeemed in the due time of the Lord, after the sufferings of his wrath;

F. for all the rest shall be brought forth by the resurrection of the dead, through the triumph and the glory of the Lamb, who was slain, who was in the bosom of the Father before the worlds were made.

G. And this is the gospel, the glad tidings which the voice out of the heavens bore record unto us, that he came into the world, even Jesus to be crucified for the world, and to bear the sins of the world, and to sanctify the world, and to cleanse it from all unrighteousness;

H. that through him all might be saved, whom the Father had put into his power, and made by him; who glorifies the Father, and saves all the works of his hands, except those sons of perdition, who deny the Son after the Father has revealed him;

I. wherefore he saves all except them; they shall go away into everlasting punishment, which is endless punishment, which is eternal punishment, to reign with the Devil and his angels in eternity, where their worm dieth not and the fire is not quenched, which is their torment, and the end thereof, neither the place thereof, nor their torment, no man knows;

J. neither was it revealed, neither is, neither will be revealed unto man, except to them who are made partakers thereof:

K. nevertheless, I, the Lord, show it by vision unto many; but straightway shut it up again; wherefore the end, the width, the height, the depth, and the misery thereof, they understand not, neither any man except them who are ordained unto this condemnation.”

L. And we heard the voice saying, “Write the vision, for lo, this is the end of the vision of the sufferings of the ungodly!”

5

A. And again, we bear record for we saw and heard, and this is the testimony of the gospel of Christ, concerning them who come forth in the resurrection of the just:

B. They are they who received the testimony of Jesus, and believed on his name, and were baptized after the manner of his burial, being buried in the water in his name, and this according to the commandment which he has given, that by keeping the commandments, they might be washed and cleansed from all their sins,

C. and receive the Holy Spirit by the laying on of the hands of him who is ordained and sealed unto this power;

D. and who overcome by faith, and are sealed by that Holy Spirit of promise, which the Father sheds forth upon all those who are just and true;

E. they are they who are the church of the Firstborn;

F. they are they into whose hands the Father has given all things:

G. they are they who are priests and kings, who have received of his fullness, and of his glory, and are priests of the Most High after the order of Melchisedec, which was after the order of Enoch, which was after the order of the only begotten Son:

H. wherefore, as it is written, they are gods, even the sons of God; wherefore all things are theirs, whether life or death, or things present, or things to come, all are theirs, and they are Christ's, and Christ is God's; and they shall overcome all things;

I. wherefore let no man glory in man, but rather let him glory in God, who shall subdue all enemies under his feet;

J. these shall dwell in the presence of God and his Christ for ever and ever:

K. these are they whom he shall bring with him, when he shall come in the clouds of heaven, to reign on the earth over his people;

L. these are they who shall have part in the first resurrection;

M. these are they who shall come forth in the resurrection of the just;

N. these are they who are come unto Mount Zion, and unto the city of the living God, the heavenly place, the holiest of all;

O. these are they who have come to an innumerable company of angels; to the general assembly and church of Enoch, and of the Firstborn;

P. these are they whose names are written in heaven, where God and Christ are the judge of all;

Q. these are they who are just men made perfect through Jesus the mediator of the new covenant, who wrought out this perfect atonement through the shedding of his own blood;

R. these are they whose bodies are celestial, whose glory is that of the sun, even the glory of God the highest of all; whose glory the sun of the firmament is written of as being typical.

6

A. And again, we saw the terrestrial world, and, behold, and lo;

B. these are they who are of the terrestrial, whose glory differs from that of the church of the Firstborn, who have received the fullness of the Father, even as that of the moon differs from the sun of the firmament.

C. Behold, these are they who died without law; and also they who are the spirits of men kept in prison, whom the Son visited, and preached the gospel unto them, that they might be judged according to men in the flesh, who received not the testimony of Jesus in the flesh, but afterwards received it;

D. these are they who are honorable men of the earth, who were blinded by the craftiness of men:

E. these are they who receive of his glory, but not of his fullness;

F. these are they who receive of the presence of the Son, but not of the fullness of the Father; wherefore they are bodies terrestrial, and not bodies celestial, and differ in glory as the moon differs from the sun;

G. these are they who are not valiant in the testimony of Jesus; wherefore they obtained not the crown over the kingdom of our God.

H. And now this is the end of the vision which we saw of the terrestrial, that the Lord commanded us to write while we were yet in the Spirit.

7

A. And again, we saw the glory of the telestial, which glory is that of the lesser, even as the glory of the stars differs from that of the glory of the moon in the firmament;

B. these are they who received not the gospel of Christ, neither the testimony of Jesus;

C. these are they who deny not the Holy Spirit;

D. these are they who are thrust down to hell;

E. these are they who shall not be redeemed from the Devil, until the last resurrection, until the Lord, even Christ the Lamb, shall have finished his work;

F. these are they who receive not of his fullness in the eternal world, but of the Holy Spirit through the ministrations of the terrestrial; and the terrestrial through the ministrations of the celestial: and also the telestial receive it of the administering of angels, who are appointed to minister for them, or who are appointed to be ministering spirits for them, for they shall be heirs of salvation.

G. And thus we saw in the heavenly vision, the glory of the telestial which surpasses all understanding; and no man knows it except him to whom God has revealed it.

H. And thus we saw the glory of the terrestrial, which excels in all things the glory of the telestial, even in glory, and in power, and in might, and in dominion.

I. And thus we saw the glory of the celestial, which excels in all things; where God, even the Father, reigns upon his throne for ever and ever, before whose throne all things bow in humble reverence and give him glory for ever and ever.

J. They who dwell in his presence are the church of the Firstborn; and they see as they are seen, and know as they are known, having received of his fullness and of his grace; and he makes them equal in power, and in might, and in dominion.

K. And the glory of the celestial is one, even as the glory of the sun is one. And the glory of the terrestrial is one, even as the glory of the moon is one.

L. And the glory of the telestial is one, even as the glory of the stars is one, for as one star differs from another star in glory, even so differs one from another in glory in the telestial world; for these are they who are of Paul, and of Apollos, and of Cephas;

M. these are they who say they are some of one and some of another, some of Christ, and some of John, and some of Moses, and some of Elias; and some of Esais, and some of Isaiah, and some of Enoch, but received not the gospel, neither the testimony of Jesus, neither the prophets; neither the everlasting covenant;

N. last of all, these all are they who will not be gathered with the saints, to be caught up unto the church of the Firstborn, and received into the cloud;

O. these are they who are liars, and sorcerers, and adulterers, and whoremongers, and whosoever loves and makes a lie;

P. these are they who suffer the wrath of God on the earth;

Q. these are they who suffer the vengeance of eternal fire;

R. these are they who are cast down to hell and suffer the wrath of Almighty God until the fullness of times, when Christ shall have subdued all enemies under his feet, and shall have perfected his work, when he shall deliver up the kingdom and present it unto the Father spotless, saying:

S. I have overcome and have trodden the winepress alone, even the winepress of the fierceness of the wrath of Almighty God; then shall he be crowned with the crown of his glory, to sit on the throne of his power to reign for ever and ever.

T. But, behold, and lo, we saw the glory and the inhabitants of the telestial world, that they were as innumerable as the stars in the firmament of heaven, or as the sand upon the seashore, and heard the voice of the Lord saying:

U. These all shall bow the knee, and every tongue shall confess to him who sits upon the throne for ever and ever;

V. for they shall be judged according to their works; and every man shall receive according to his own works, and his own dominion, in the mansions which are prepared, and they shall be servants of the Most High, but where God and Christ dwell they cannot come, worlds without end.

W. This is the end of the vision which we saw, which we were commanded to write while we were yet in the Spirit.

8

A. But great and marvelous are the works of the Lord and the mysteries of his kingdom which he showed unto us, which surpasses all understanding in glory, and in might, and in dominion, which he commanded us we should not write, while we were yet in the Spirit, and are not lawful for man to utter,

B. neither is man capable to make them known, for they are only to be seen and understood by the power of the Holy Spirit, which God bestows on those who love him and purify themselves before him; to whom he grants this privilege of seeing and knowing for themselves;

C. that through the power and manifestation of the Spirit, while in the flesh, they may be able to bear his presence in the world of glory. And to God and the Lamb be glory, and honor, and dominion for ever and ever. Amen.

Section 77

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. The Lord spake unto Joseph Smith Jr., saying, Hearken unto me saith the Lord your God, who are ordained unto the high priesthood of my church, who have assembled yourselves together,

B. and listen to the counsel of him who has ordained you, from on high, who shall speak in your ears the words of wisdom, that salvation may be unto you in that thing which you have presented before me, saith the Lord God;

C. for verily I say unto you, The time has come, and is now at hand; and, behold, and lo, it must needs be that there be an organization of my people, in regulating and establishing the affairs of the storehouse for the poor of my people, both in this place and in the land of Zion, or in other words, the city of Joseph,

D. for a permanent and everlasting establishment and order unto my church, to advance the cause which ye have espoused, to the salvation of man, and to the glory of your Father who is in heaven, that you may be equal in the bands of heavenly things;

E. yea, and earthly things also, for the obtaining of heavenly things;

F. for if ye are not equal in earthly things, ye cannot be equal in obtaining heavenly things;

G. for if you will that I give unto you a place in the celestial world, you must prepare yourselves by doing the things which I have commanded you and required of you.

2

A. And now, verily thus saith the Lord, It is expedient that all things be done unto my glory, that ye should, who are joined together in this order;

B. or in other words, let my servant Newel K. Whitney, and my servant Joseph Smith Jr., and my servant Sidney Rigdon, sit in council with the Saints which are in Zion;

C. otherwise Satan seeketh to turn their hearts away from the truth, that they become blinded, and understand not the things which are prepared for them;

D. wherefore a commandment I give unto you, to prepare and organize yourselves by a bond or everlasting covenant that cannot be broken.

3

- A.** And he who breaketh it shall lose his office and standing in the church, and shall be delivered over to the buffetings of Satan until the day of redemption.
- B.** Behold, this is the preparation wherewith I prepare you, and the foundation, and the ensample, which I give unto you, whereby you may accomplish the commandments which are given you,
- C.** that through my providence, notwithstanding the tribulation which shall descend upon you,
- D.** that the church may stand independent above all other creatures beneath the celestial world,
- E.** that you may come up unto the crown prepared for you, and be made rulers over many kingdoms, saith the Lord God, the Holy One of Zion, who hath established the foundations of Adam-on-di-Ahman;
- F.** who hath appointed Michael, your prince, and established his feet, and set him upon high; and given unto him the keys of salvation under the counsel and direction of the Holy One, who is without beginning of days or end of life.

4

- A.** Verily, verily I say unto you, Ye are little children, and ye have not as yet understood how great blessings the Father has in his own hands, and prepared for you; and ye cannot bear all things now;
- B.** nevertheless be of good cheer, for I will lead you along; the kingdom is yours and the blessings thereof are yours; and the riches of eternity are yours;
- C.** and he who receiveth all things, with thankfulness, shall be made glorious, and the things of this earth shall be added unto him, even an hundredfold, yea, more;
- D.** wherefore do the things which I have commanded you, saith your Redeemer, even the Son Ahman, who prepareth all things before he taketh you; for ye are the church of the Firstborn, and he will take you up in the cloud, and appoint every man his portion.
- E.** And he that is a faithful and wise steward shall inherit all things. Amen.

Section 78

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Verily I say unto you, that it is my will that my servant Jared Carter should go again into the eastern countries, from place to place, and from city to city, in the power of the ordination wherewith he has been ordained,

B. proclaiming glad tidings of great joy, even the everlasting gospel, and I will send upon him the Comforter which shall teach him the truth and the way whither he shall go;

C. and inasmuch as he is faithful I will crown him again with sheaves; wherefore let your heart be glad, my servant Jared Carter, and fear not saith your Lord, even Jesus Christ. Amen.

Section 79

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

- A.** Verily, thus saith the Lord, unto you, my servant Stephen Burnett,
- B.** Go ye, go ye into the world, and preach the gospel to every creature that cometh under the sound of your voice, and inasmuch as you desire a companion I will give unto you my servant Eden Smith;
- C.** wherefore go ye and preach my gospel, whether to the north, or to the south; to the east, or to the west, it mattereth not, for ye cannot go amiss;
- D.** therefore declare the things which ye have heard and verily believe, and know to be true.
- E.** Behold, this is the will of him who hath called you, your Redeemer, even Jesus Christ. Amen.

Section 80

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

- A.** Verily, verily I say unto you, my servant, Frederick G. Williams,
- B.** Listen to the voice of him who speaketh, to the word of the Lord your God, and hearken to the calling wherewith you are called, even to be a high priest in my church, and a counselor unto my servant, Joseph Smith, Jr.,
- C.** unto whom I have given the keys of the kingdom, which belongeth always unto the Presidency of the high priesthood;
- D.** therefore, verily I acknowledge him and will bless him, and also thee, inasmuch as thou art faithful in council, in the office which I have appointed unto you, in prayer always vocally, and in thy heart, in public and in private;
- E.** also in thy ministry in proclaiming the gospel in the land of the living, and among thy brethren;
- F.** and in doing these things thou wilt do the greatest good unto thy fellow-beings, and will promote the glory of him who is your Lord;
- G.** wherefore, be faithful, stand in the office which I have appointed unto you, succor the weak, lift up the hands which hang down, and strengthen the feeble knees:
- H.** and if thou art faithful unto the end thou shalt have a crown of immortality and eternal life in the mansions which I have prepared in the house of my Father.
- I.** Behold, and lo, these are the words of Alpha and Omega, even Jesus Christ. Amen.

Section 81

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Verily I say unto you, my servants, that inasmuch as you have forgiven one another your trespasses, even so I, the Lord, forgive you;

B. nevertheless there are those among you who have sinned exceedingly; yea, even all of you have sinned, but verily I say unto you,

C. Beware from henceforth and refrain from sin lest sore judgments fall upon your heads; for unto whom much is given much is required; and he who sins against the greater light shall receive the greater condemnation.

D. Ye call upon my name for revelations, and I give them unto you; and inasmuch as ye keep not my sayings which I give unto you, ye become transgressors, and justice and judgment is the penalty which is affixed unto my law:

E. therefore, what I say unto one I say unto all, Watch, for the adversary spreadeth his dominions and darkness reigneth; and the anger of God kindleth against the inhabitants of the earth; and none doeth good, for all have gone out of the way.

2

And now, verily I say unto you, I, the Lord, will not lay any sin to your charge; go your ways and sin no more; but unto that soul who sinneth shall the former sins return, saith the Lord your God.

3

A. And again, I say unto you, I give unto you a new commandment, that you may understand my will concerning you, or in other words, I give unto you directions how you may act before me, that it may turn to you for your salvation.

B. I, the Lord, am bound when ye do what I say, but when ye do not what I say, ye have no promise.

4

A. Therefore, verily I say unto you, that it is expedient for my servants Edward Partridge and Newel K. Whitney, Sidney Gilbert and Sidney Rigdon, Joseph Smith Jr., and John Whitmer, and Oliver Cowdery, and W. W. Phelps, and Martin Harris, be bound together by a bond and covenant that cannot be broken by transgression except judgment shall immediately follow, in your several stewardships,

B. to manage the affairs of the poor, and all things pertaining to the bishopric both in the land of Zion, and in the land of Kirtland, for I have consecrated the land of Kirtland in mine own due time for the benefit of the Saints of the Most High, and for a stake to Zion;

C. for Zion must increase in beauty, and in holiness; her borders must be enlarged; her stakes must be strengthened; yea, verily I say unto you, Zion must arise and put on her beautiful garments;

D. therefore, I give unto you this commandment, that ye bind yourselves by this covenant, and it shall be done according to the laws of the Lord. Behold, here is wisdom, also, in me, for your good.

E. And you are to be equal, or in other words, you are to have equal claims on the properties, for the benefit of managing the concerns of your stewardships, every man according to his wants and his needs, inasmuch as his wants are just;

F. and all this for the benefit of the church of the living God, that every man may improve upon his talent, that every man may gain other talents;

G. yea, even an hundredfold, to be cast into the Lord's storehouse, to become the common property of the whole church, every man seeking the interest of his neighbor, and doing all things with an eye single to the glory of God.

5

A. This order I have appointed to be an everlasting order unto you and unto your successors, inasmuch as you sin not;

B. and the soul that sins against this covenant, and hardeneth his heart against it, shall be dealt with according to the laws of my church, and shall be delivered over to the buffetings of Satan until the day of redemption.

6

A. And now, verily I say unto you, and this is wisdom, Make unto yourselves friends with the mammon of unrighteousness, and they will not destroy you.

B. Leave judgment alone with me, for it is mine and I will repay.

C. Peace be with you; my blessings continue with you, for even yet the kingdom is yours, and shall be forever if you fall not from your steadfastness. Even so. Amen.

Section 82

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

- A.** Verily thus saith the Lord, in addition to the laws of the church concerning women and children, those who belong to the church, who have lost their husbands or fathers:
- B.** Women have claim on their husbands for their maintenance until their husbands are taken; and if they are not found transgressors they shall have fellowship in the church;
- C.** and if they are not faithful, they shall not have fellowship in the church; yet they may remain upon their inheritances according to the laws of the land.

2

- A.** All children have claim upon their parents for their maintenance until they are of age; and after that, they have claim upon the church; or, in other words, upon the Lord's storehouse, if their parents have not wherewith to give them inheritances.
- B.** And the storehouse shall be kept by the consecrations of the church, that widows and orphans shall be provided for, as also the poor. Amen.

Section 83

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. A revelation of Jesus Christ unto his servant Joseph Smith, Jr., and six elders, as they united their hearts and lifted their voices on high;

B. yea, the word of the Lord concerning his church, established in the last days for the restoration of his people, as he has spoken by the mouth of his prophets, and for the gathering of his Saints to stand upon Mount Zion, which shall be the city New Jerusalem;

C. which city shall be built, beginning at the Temple Lot, which is appointed by the finger of the Lord, in the western boundaries of the State of Missouri, and dedicated by the hand of Joseph Smith, Jr., and others, with whom the Lord was well pleased.

2

A. Verily, this is the word of the Lord, that the city New Jerusalem shall be built by the gathering of the Saints, beginning at this place, even the place of the temple, which temple shall be reared in this generation;

B. for verily, this generation shall not all pass away until an house shall be built unto the Lord, and a cloud shall rest upon it, which cloud shall be even the glory of the Lord, which shall fill the house.

C. And the sons of Moses, according to the holy priesthood, which he received under the hand of his father-in-law, Jethro; and Jethro received it under the hand of Caleb; and Caleb received it under the hand of Elihu;

D. and Elihu under the hand of Jeremy; and Jeremy under the hand of Gad; and Gad under the hand of Esaias; and Esaias received it under the hand of God;

E. Esaias also lived in the days of Abraham and was blessed of him, which Abraham received the priesthood from Melchisedec; who received it through the lineage of his fathers, even till Noah;

F. and from Noah till Enoch, through the lineage of their fathers; and from Enoch to Abel, who was slain by the conspiracy of his brother; who received the priesthood by the commandments of God, by the hand of his father Adam, who was the first man;

G. which priesthood continueth in the church of God in all generations, and is without beginning of days or end of years.

3

A. And the Lord confirmed a priesthood also upon Aaron and his seed throughout all their generations, which priesthood also continueth and abideth forever, with the priesthood which is after the holiest order of God.

B. And this greater priesthood administereth the gospel and holdeth the key of the mysteries of the kingdom, even the key of the knowledge of God.

C. Therefore, in the ordinances thereof the power of godliness is manifest; and without the ordinances thereof, and the authority of the priesthood, the power of godliness is not manifest unto men in the flesh; for without this, no man can see the face of God, even the Father, and live.

4

A. Now, this Moses plainly taught to the children of Israel in the wilderness, and sought diligently to sanctify his people that they might behold the face of God;

B. but they hardened their hearts, and could not endure his presence, therefore, the Lord, in his wrath (for his anger was kindled against them), swore that they should not enter into his rest, while in the wilderness, which rest is the fullness of his glory.

C. Therefore, he took Moses out of their midst and the holy priesthood also; and the lesser priesthood continued, which priesthood holdeth the key of the ministering of angels and the preparatory gospel, which gospel is the gospel of repentance and of baptism, and the remission of sins, and the law of carnal commandments,

D. which the Lord, in his wrath, caused to continue with the house of Aaron, among the children of Israel until John, whom God raised up, being filled with the Holy Ghost from his mother's womb:

E. for he was baptized while he was yet in his childhood, and was ordained by the angel of God at the time he was eight days old unto this power:

F. to overthrow the kingdom of the Jews, and to make straight the way of the Lord before the face of his people; to prepare them for the coming of the Lord, in whose hand is given all power.

5

A. And again, the office of elder and bishop are necessary appendages belonging unto the high priesthood.

B. And again, the offices of teachers and deacons are necessary appendages belonging to the lesser priesthood, which priesthood was confirmed upon Aaron and his sons.

6

- A.** Therefore, as I said concerning the sons of Moses—for the sons of Moses and also the sons of Aaron shall offer an acceptable offering and sacrifice in the house of the Lord, which house shall be built unto the Lord in this generation upon the consecrated spot, as I have appointed;
- B.** and the sons of Moses and of Aaron shall be filled with the glory of the Lord upon Mount Zion in the Lord's house, whose sons are ye; and also many whom I have called and sent forth to build up my church;
- C.** for whoso is faithful unto the obtaining these two priesthoods of which I have spoken, and the magnifying their calling, are sanctified by the Spirit unto the renewing of their bodies:
- D.** they become the sons of Moses and of Aaron, and the seed of Abraham, and the church and kingdom and the elect of God;
- E.** and also all they who receive this priesthood receiveth me, saith the Lord, for he that receiveth my servants receiveth me, and he that receiveth me receiveth my Father, and he that receiveth my Father receiveth my Father's kingdom.
- F.** Therefore, all that my Father hath shall be given unto him; and this is according to the oath and covenant which belongeth to the priesthood.
- G.** Therefore, all those who receive the priesthood receive this oath and covenant of my Father, which he cannot break, neither can it be moved;
- H.** but whoso breaketh this covenant, after he hath received it, and altogether turneth therefrom, shall not have forgiveness of sins in this world nor in the world to come.
- I.** And all those who come not unto this priesthood, which ye have received, which I now confirm upon you who are present, this day, by mine own voice out of the heavens, and even I have given the heavenly hosts and mine angels charge concerning you.

7

- A.** And now I give unto you a commandment to beware concerning yourselves, to give diligent heed to the words of eternal life; for you shall live by every word that proceedeth forth from the mouth of God.
- B.** For the word of the Lord is truth, and whatsoever is truth is light, and whatsoever is light is Spirit, even the Spirit of Jesus Christ;
- C.** and the Spirit giveth light to every man that cometh into the world; and the Spirit enlighteneth every man through the world, that hearkeneth to the voice of the Spirit;
- D.** and everyone that hearkeneth to the voice of the Spirit, cometh unto God, even the Father;

E. and the Father teacheth him of the covenant which he has renewed and confirmed upon you, which is confirmed upon you for your sakes, and not for your sakes only, but for the sake of the whole world:

F. and the whole world lieth in sin, and groaneth under the darkness and under the bondage of sin:

G. and by this you may know they are under the bondage of sin, because they come not unto me; for whoso cometh not unto me is under the bondage of sin;

H. and whoso receiveth not my voice is not acquainted with my voice, and is not of me;

I. and by this you may know the righteous from the wicked, and that the whole world groaneth under sin and darkness even now.

8

A. And your minds in times past have been darkened because of unbelief, and because you have treated lightly the things you have received, which vanity and unbelief hath brought the whole church under condemnation.

B. And this condemnation resteth upon the children of Zion, even all; and they shall remain under this condemnation until they repent and remember the new covenant, even the Book of Mormon and the former commandments which I have given them, not only to say, but to do according to that which I have written,

C. that they may bring forth fruit meet for their Father's kingdom, otherwise there remaineth a scourge and a judgment to be poured out upon the children of Zion; for, shall the children of the kingdom pollute my holy land? Verily, I say unto you, Nay.

9

A. Verily, verily I say unto you, who now have my words, which is my voice,

B. Blessed are ye inasmuch as you receive these things; for I will forgive you of your sins with this commandment, that you remain steadfast in your minds in solemnity, and the spirit of prayer, in bearing testimony to all the world of those things which are communicated unto you.

10

A. Therefore, go ye into all the world, and whatsoever place ye cannot go into, ye shall send, that the testimony may go from you into all the world, unto every creature.

B. And as I said unto mine apostles, even so I say unto you; for you are mine apostles, even God's high priests: ye are they whom my Father hath given me; ye are my friends;

C. therefore, as I said unto mine apostles, I say unto you again, that every soul who believeth on your words, and is baptized by water for the remission of sins, shall receive the Holy Ghost; and these signs shall follow them that believe:

11

A. In my name they shall do many wonderful works;

B. in my name they shall cast out devils:

C. in my name they shall heal the sick:

D. in my name they shall open the eyes of the blind, and unstop the ears of the deaf:

E. and the tongue of the dumb shall speak;

F. and if any man shall administer poison unto them, it shall not hurt them: and the poison of a serpent shall not have power to harm them.

G. But a commandment I give unto them, that they shall not boast themselves of these things, neither speak them before the world: for these things are given unto you for your profit and for salvation.

12

A. Verily, verily, I say unto you, They who believe not on your words, and are not baptized in water, in my name, for the remission of their sins, that they may receive the Holy Ghost, shall be damned, and shall not come into my Father's kingdom, where my Father and I am.

B. And this revelation unto you, and commandment, is in force from this very hour upon all the world, and the gospel is unto all who have not received it.

C. But verily I say unto all those to whom the kingdom has been given, From you it must be preached unto them that they shall repent of their former evil works:

D. for they are to be upbraided for their evil hearts of unbelief: and your brethren in Zion for their rebellion against you at the time I sent you.

13

A. And again I say unto you my friends (for from henceforth I shall call you friends), It is expedient that I give unto you this commandment, that ye become even as my friends in days when I was with them traveling to preach this gospel in my power:

B. for I suffered them not to have purse or scrip, neither two coats; behold, I send you out to prove the world, and the laborer is worthy of his hire.

C. And any man that shall go and preach this gospel of the kingdom, and fail not to continue faithful in all things, shall not be weary in mind, neither darkened, neither in body, limb or joint; and an hair of his head shall not fall to the ground unnoticed. And they shall not go hungry, neither athirst.

14

A. Therefore, take no thought for the morrow, for what ye shall eat, or what ye shall drink, or wherewithal ye shall be clothed;

B. for consider the lilies of the field, how they grow, they toil not, neither do they spin; and the kingdoms of the world, in all their glory, are not arrayed like one of these; for your Father who art in heaven, knoweth that you have need of all these things.

C. Therefore, let the morrow take thought for the things of itself.

D. Neither take ye thought beforehand what ye shall say, but treasure up in your minds continually the words of life, and it shall be given you in the very hour that portion that shall be meted unto every man.

15

A. Therefore, let no man among you (for this commandment is unto all the faithful who are called of God in the church, unto the ministry,) from this hour, take purse or scrip, that goeth forth to proclaim this gospel of the kingdom.

B. Behold, I send you out to reprove the world of all their unrighteous deeds, and to teach them of a judgment which is to come.

C. And whoso receiveth you, there will I be also; for I will go before your face: I will be on your right hand and on your left, and my Spirit shall be in your hearts, and my angels round about you, to bear you up.

16

A. Whoso receiveth you receiveth me, and the same will feed you, and clothe you, and give you money.

B. And he who feeds you, or clothes you, or gives you money, shall in no wise lose his reward: and he that doeth not these things is not my disciple: by this you may know my disciples.

C. He that receiveth you not, go away from him alone by yourselves, and cleanse your feet, even with water, pure water, whether in heat or in cold, and bear testimony of it unto your Father which is in heaven, and return not again unto that man.

D. And into whatsoever village or city ye enter, do likewise. Nevertheless, search diligently and spare not; and woe unto that house, or that village, or city, that rejecteth you, or your words, or testimony concerning me.

E. Woe, I say again, unto that house, or that village, or city, that rejecteth you, or your words, or your testimony of me; for I, the Almighty, have laid my hands upon the nations to scourge them for their wickedness;

F. and plagues shall go forth, and they shall not be taken from the earth until I have completed my work, which shall be cut short in righteousness;

G. until all shall know me, who remain, even from the least unto the greatest, and shall be filled with the knowledge of the Lord, and shall see eye to eye, and shall lift up their voice, and with the voice together sing this new song, saying:

17

A. The Lord hath brought again Zion:
The Lord hath redeemed his people, Israel,
According to the election of grace,
Which was brought to pass by the faith
And covenant of their fathers.

B. The Lord hath redeemed his people,
And Satan is bound, and time is no longer:
The Lord hath gathered all things in one:
The Lord hath brought down Zion from above:
The Lord hath brought up Zion from beneath;
The earth hath travailed and brought forth her strength;
And truth is established in her bowels;
And the heavens have smiled upon her,
And she is clothed with the glory of her God:
For he stands in the midst of his people:

C. Glory, and honor, and power, and might,
Be ascribed to our God, for he is full of mercy,
Justice, grace and truth, and peace,
For ever and ever, Amen.

18

A. And again, verily, verily I say unto you, It is expedient, that every man who goes forth to proclaim mine everlasting gospel, that inasmuch as they have families, and receive moneys by gift, that they should send it unto them, or make use of it for their benefit, as the Lord shall direct them, for thus it seemeth me good.

B. And let all those who have not families, who receive moneys, send it up unto the bishop in Zion, or unto the bishop in Ohio, that it may be consecrated for the bringing forth of the revelations and the printing thereof, and for establishing Zion.

19

A. And if any man shall give unto any of you a coat, or a suit, take the old and cast it unto the poor, and go your way rejoicing.

B. And if any man among you be strong in the Spirit, let him take with him he that is weak, that he may be edified in all meekness, that he may become strong also.

20

A. Therefore, take with you those who are ordained unto the lesser priesthood, and send them before you to make appointments, and to prepare the way, and to fill appointments that you yourselves are not able to fill.

B. Behold, this is the way that mine apostles, in ancient days, built up my church unto me.

21

A. Therefore, let every man stand in his own office, and labor in his own calling; and let not the head say unto the feet it hath no need of the feet, for without the feet how shall the body be able to stand?

B. Also, the body hath need of every member, that all may be edified together, that the system may be kept perfect.

22

And, behold, the high priests should travel, and also the elders, and also the lesser priests; but the deacons and teachers should be appointed to watch over the church, to be standing ministers unto the church.

23

A. And the bishop, Newel K. Whitney, also, should travel round about and among all the churches, searching after the poor, to administer to their wants by humbling the rich and the proud;

B. he should also employ an agent to take charge and to do his secular business, as he shall direct;

C. nevertheless, let the bishop go unto the city of New York, and also to the city of Albany, and also to the city of Boston, and warn the people of those cities with the sound of the gospel, with a loud voice, of the desolation and utter abolishment which awaits them if they do reject these things;

D. for if they do reject these things, the hour of their judgment is nigh, and their house shall be left unto them desolate.

E. Let him trust in me, and he shall not be confounded, and an hair of his head shall not fall to the ground unnoticed.

24

A. And verily I say unto you, the rest of my servants, Go ye forth as your circumstances shall permit, in your several callings, unto the great and notable cities and villages, reprovng the world in righteousness, of all their unrighteous and ungodly deeds, setting forth clearly and understandingly the desolation of abomination in the last days;

B. for with you, saith the Lord Almighty, I will rend their kingdoms; I will not only shake the earth, but the starry heavens shall tremble;

C. for I, the Lord, have put forth my hand to exert the powers of heaven; ye cannot see it now, yet a little while and ye shall see it, and know that I am, and that I will come and reign with my people. I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end. Amen.

Section 84

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Verily thus saith the Lord unto you, my servants, concerning the parable of the wheat and of the tares:

B. Behold, verily I say that the field was the world, and the apostles were the sowers of the seed;

C. and after they have fallen asleep, the great persecutor of the church, the apostate, the whore, even Babylon, that maketh all nations to drink of her cup, in whose hearts the enemy, even Satan, sitteth to reign;

D. behold, he soweth the tares, wherefore the tares choke the wheat and drive the church into the wilderness.

2

A. But, behold, in the last days, even now, while the Lord is beginning to bring forth the word, and the blade is springing up and is yet tender, behold, verily I say unto you,

B. The angels are crying unto the Lord day and night, who are ready and waiting to be sent forth to reap down the fields; but the Lord saith unto them,

C. Pluck not up the tares while the blade is yet tender (for verily your faith is weak), lest you destroy the wheat also; therefore let the wheat and tares grow together until the harvest is fully ripe;

D. then ye shall first gather out the wheat from among the tares, and after the gathering of the wheat, behold, and lo, the tares are bound in bundles, and the field remaineth to be burned.

3

A. Therefore, thus saith the Lord unto you, with whom the priesthood hath continued through the lineage of your fathers, for ye are lawful heirs, according to the flesh, and have been hid from the world with Christ in God:

B. therefore your life and the priesthood hath remained, and must needs remain, through you and your lineage, until the restoration of all things spoken by the mouths of all the holy prophets since the world began.

4

Therefore, blessed are ye if ye continue in my goodness, a light unto the Gentiles, and through this priesthood, a savor unto my people Israel. The Lord hath said it. Amen.

Section 85

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Verily, thus saith the Lord unto you, who have assembled yourselves together to receive his will concerning you.

B. Behold, this is pleasing unto your Lord, and the angels rejoice over you; the alms of your prayers have come up into the ears of the Lord of Sabaoth, and are recorded in the book of the names of the sanctified, even them of the celestial world.

C. Wherefore I now send upon you another Comforter, even upon you, my friends, that it may abide in your hearts, even the Holy Spirit of promise, which other Comforter is the same that I promised unto my disciples, as is recorded in the testimony of John.

2

A. This Comforter is the promise which I give unto you of eternal life, even the glory of the celestial kingdom; which glory is that of the church of the Firstborn, even of God, the holiest of all, through Jesus Christ, his Son;

B. he that ascended up on high, as also he descended below all things, in that he comprehended all things, that he might be in all and through all things, the light of truth, which truth shineth. This is the light of Christ.

C. As also he is in the sun, and the light of the sun, and the power thereof by which it was made.

D. As also he is in the moon, and is the light of the moon, and the power thereof by which it was made.

E. As also the light of the stars, and the power thereof by which they were made.

F. And the earth also, and the power thereof, even the earth upon which you stand.

3

A. And the light which now shineth, which giveth you light, is through him who enlighteneth your eyes, which is the same light that quickeneth your understandings; which light proceedeth forth from the presence of God, to fill the immensity of space.

B. The light which is in all things; which giveth life to all things; which is the law by which all things are governed; even the power of God who sitteth upon his throne, who is in the bosom of eternity, who is in the midst of all things.

4

A. Now, verily I say unto you, that through the redemption which is made for you, is brought to pass the resurrection from the dead. And the spirit and the body is the soul of man.

B. And the resurrection from the dead is the redemption of the soul; and the redemption of the soul is through him who quickeneth all things, in whose bosom it is decreed, that the poor and the meek of the earth shall inherit it.

C. Therefore, it must needs be sanctified from all unrighteousness, that it may be prepared for the celestial glory; for after it hath filled the measure of its creation, it shall be crowned with glory, even with the presence of God the Father;

D. that bodies who are of the celestial kingdom may possess it for ever and ever; for, for this intent was it made and created; and for this intent are they sanctified.

5

A. And they who are not sanctified through the law which I have given unto you, even the law of Christ, must inherit another kingdom, even that of a terrestrial kingdom, or that of a telestial kingdom.

B. For he who is not able to abide the law of a celestial kingdom, cannot abide a celestial glory; and he who cannot abide the law of a terrestrial kingdom, cannot abide a terrestrial glory; he who cannot abide the law of a telestial kingdom, cannot abide a telestial glory: therefore, he is not meet for a kingdom of glory.

C. Therefore, he must abide a kingdom which is not a kingdom of glory.

6

A. And again, verily I say unto you, The earth abideth the law of a celestial kingdom, for it filleth the measure of its creation, and transgresseth not the law.

B. Wherefore, it shall be sanctified; yea, notwithstanding it shall die, it shall be quickened again, and shall abide the power by which it is quickened, and the righteous shall inherit it:

C. for, notwithstanding they die, they also shall rise again a spiritual body: they who are of a celestial spirit shall receive the same body, which was a natural body: even ye shall receive your bodies, and your glory shall be that glory by which your bodies are quickened.

D. Ye who are quickened by a portion of the celestial glory, shall then receive of the same, even a fullness;

E. and they who are quickened by a portion of the terrestrial glory, shall then receive of the same, even a fullness:

F. and also they who are quickened by a portion of the telestial glory, shall then receive of the same, even a fullness:

G. and they who remain shall also be quickened; nevertheless, they shall return again to their own place, to enjoy that which they are willing to receive, because they were not willing to enjoy that which they might have received.

7

For what doth it profit a man if a gift is bestowed upon him, and he receive not the gift? Behold, he rejoices not in that which is given unto him, neither rejoices in him who is the giver of the gift.

8

A. And again, verily I say unto you, that which is governed by law, is also preserved by law, and perfected and sanctified by the same.

B. That which breaketh a law, and abideth not by law, but seeketh to become a law unto itself, and willeth to abide in sin, and altogether abideth in sin, cannot be sanctified by law, neither by mercy, justice, or judgment; therefore, they must remain filthy still.

9

A. All kingdoms have a law given: and there are many kingdoms; for there is no space in the which there is no kingdom; and there is no kingdom in which there is no space, either a greater or lesser kingdom.

B. And unto every kingdom is given a law; and unto every law there are certain bounds also, and conditions.

10

A. All beings who abide not in those conditions, are not justified; for intelligence cleaveth unto intelligence; wisdom receiveth wisdom; truth embraceth truth; virtue loveth virtue; light cleaveth unto light;

B. mercy hath compassion on mercy, and claimeth her own; justice continueth its course, and claimeth its own; judgment goeth before the face of him who sitteth upon the throne, and governeth and executeth all things:

C. he comprehendeth all things, and all things are before him, and all things are round about him; and he is above all things, and in all things, and is through all things, and is round about all things: and all things are by him, and of him; even God, for ever and ever.

11

A. And again, verily I say unto you, He hath given a law unto all things by which they move in their times, and their seasons; and their courses are fixed; even the courses of the heavens, and the earth; which comprehend the earth and all the planets;

B. and they give light to each other in their times, and in their seasons, in their minutes, in their hours, in their days, in their weeks, in their months, in their years: all these are one year with God, but not with man.

12

A. The earth rolls upon her wings; and the sun giveth his light by day, and the moon giveth her light by night; and the stars also giveth their light, as they roll upon their wings, in their glory, in the midst of the power of God.

B. Unto what shall I liken these kingdoms, that ye may understand?

C. Behold, all these are kingdoms, and any man who hath seen any or the least of these, hath seen God moving in his majesty and power.

D. I say unto you, He hath seen him: nevertheless, He who came unto his own was not comprehended.

E. The light shineth in darkness, and the darkness comprehendeth it not; nevertheless, the day shall come when you shall comprehend even God; being quickened in him, and by him.

F. Then shall ye know that ye have seen me, that I am, and that I am the true light that is in you, and that you are in me, otherwise ye could not abound.

13

A. Behold, I will liken these kingdoms unto a man having a field, and he sent forth his servants into the field, to dig in the field;

B. and he said unto the first, Go ye and labor in the field, and in the first hour I will come unto you, and ye shall behold the joy of my countenance:

C. and he said unto the second, Go ye also into the field, and in the second hour I will visit you with the joy of my countenance;

D. and also unto the third, saying, I will visit you; and unto the fourth, and so on unto the twelfth.

14

A. And the lord of the field went unto the first in the first hour, and tarried with him all that hour, and he was made glad with the light of the countenance of his lord;

B. and then he withdrew from the first that he might visit the second also, and the third, and the fourth, and so on unto the twelfth;

C. and thus they all received the light of the countenance of their lord; every man in his hour, and in his time, and in his season; beginning at the first, and so on unto the last, and from the last unto the first, and from the first unto the last;

D. every man in his own order, until his hour was finished, even according as his lord had commanded him, that his lord might be glorified in him, and he in him, that they all might be glorified.

15

Therefore, unto this parable will I liken all these kingdoms, and the inhabitants thereof; every kingdom in its hour, and in its time, and in its season; even according to the decree which God hath made.

16

A. And again, verily I say unto you, my friends, I leave these sayings with you, to ponder in your hearts with this commandment which I give unto you, that ye shall call upon me while I am near;

B. draw near unto me, and I will draw near unto you;

C. seek me diligently and ye shall find me;

D. ask and ye shall receive;

E. knock and it shall be opened unto you;

F. whatsoever ye ask the Father in my name it shall be given unto you, that is expedient for you; and if ye ask anything that is not expedient for you, it shall turn unto your condemnation.

17

Behold, that which you hear is as the voice of one crying in the wilderness; in the wilderness, because you cannot see him: my voice, because my voice is Spirit; my Spirit is truth: truth abideth and hath no end; and if it be in you it shall abound.

18

A. And if your eye be single to my glory, your whole bodies shall be filled with light, and there shall be no darkness in you, and that body which is filled with light comprehendeth all things.

B. Therefore, sanctify yourselves that your minds become single to God, and the days will come that you shall see him: for he will unveil his face unto you, and it shall be in his own time, and in his own way, and according to his own will.

19

A. Remember the great and last promise which I have made unto you: cast away your idle thoughts and your excess of laughter far from you;

B. tarry ye, tarry ye in this place, and call a solemn assembly, even of those who are the first laborers in this last kingdom; and let those whom they have warned in their traveling, call on the Lord, and ponder the warning in their hearts which they have received, for a little season.

C. Behold, and lo, I will take care of your flocks and will raise up elders and send unto them.

20

A. Behold, I will hasten my work in its time; and I give unto you who are the first laborers in this last kingdom, a commandment, that you assemble yourselves together, and organize yourselves, and prepare yourselves; and sanctify yourselves;

B. yea, purify your hearts, and cleanse your hands and your feet before me, that I may make you clean;

C. that I may testify unto your Father, and your God, and my God, that you are clean from the blood of this wicked generation, that I may fulfill this promise, this great and last promise which I have made unto you, when I will.

21

A. Also, I give unto you a commandment, that ye shall continue in prayer and fasting from this time forth.

B. And I give unto you a commandment, that you shall teach one another the doctrine of the kingdom; teach ye diligently and my grace shall attend you, that you may be instructed more perfectly in theory, in principle, in doctrine, in the law of the gospel, in all things that pertain unto the kingdom of God, that is expedient for you to understand;

C. of things both in heaven, and in earth, and under the earth; things which have been; things which are; things which must shortly come to pass;

D. things which are at home; things which are abroad; the wars and the perplexities of the nations; and the judgments which are on the land;

E. and a knowledge also of countries, and of kingdoms, that ye may be prepared in all things when I shall send you again, to magnify the calling whereunto I have called you, and the mission with which I have commissioned you.

22

A. Behold, I sent you out to testify and warn the people, and it becometh every man who hath been warned, to warn his neighbor; therefore, they are left without excuse, and their sins are upon their own heads.

B. He that seeketh me early shall find me, and shall not be forsaken.

23

A. Therefore, tarry ye, and labor diligently, that you may be perfected in your ministry, to go forth among the Gentiles for the last time, as many as the mouth of the Lord shall name, to bind up the law, and seal up the testimony, and to prepare the Saints for the hour of judgment, which is to come;

B. that their souls may escape the wrath of God, the desolation of abomination, which await the wicked, both in this world, and in the world to come.

C. Verily, I say unto you, Let those who are not the first elders, continue in the vineyard, until the mouth of the Lord shall call them, for their time is not yet come; their garments are not clean from the blood of this generation.

24

A. Abide ye in the liberty wherewith ye are made free; entangle not yourselves in sin, but let your hands be clean, until the Lord come,

B. for not many days hence and the earth shall tremble, and reel to and fro as a drunken man, and the sun shall hide his face, and shall refuse to give light, and the moon shall be bathed in blood, and the stars shall become exceeding angry, and shall cast themselves down as a fig that falleth from off a fig tree.

25

A. And after your testimony, cometh wrath and indignation upon the people; for after your testimony cometh the testimony of earthquakes, that shall cause groanings in the midst of her, and men shall fall upon the ground, and shall not be able to stand.

B. And also cometh the testimony of the voice of thunderings, and the voice of lightnings, and the voice of tempests, and the voice of the waves of the sea, heaving themselves beyond their bounds.

C. And all things shall be in commotion; and surely men's hearts shall fail them; for fear shall come upon all people; and the angels shall fly through the midst of heaven, crying with a loud voice, sounding the trump of God, saying,

D. Prepare ye, prepare ye, O inhabitants of the earth, for the judgment of our God is come: behold, and lo, the Bridegroom cometh, go ye out to meet him.

26

A. And immediately there shall appear a great sign in heaven, and all people shall see it together.

B. And another angel shall sound his trump, saying, That great church, the mother of abominations, that made all nations drink of the wine of the wrath of her fornication, that persecuteth the saints of God, that shed their blood:

C. she who sitteth upon many waters, and upon the islands of the sea; behold, she is the tares of the earth, she is bound in bundles, her bands are made strong, no man can loose them; therefore, she is ready to be burned.

D. And he shall sound his trump both long and loud, and all nations shall hear it.

27

A. And there shall be silence in heaven for the space of half an hour, and immediately after shall the curtain of heaven be unfolded, as a scroll is unfolded after it is rolled up, and the face of the Lord shall be unveiled;

B. and the saints that are upon the earth, who are alive, shall be quickened, and be caught up to meet him.

C. And they who have slept in their graves, shall come forth; for their graves shall be opened, and they also shall be caught up to meet him in the midst of the pillar of heaven: they are Christ's the first fruits:

D. they who shall descend with him first, and they who are on the earth, and in their graves, who are first caught up to meet him; and all this by the voice of the sounding of the trump of the angel of God.

28

A. And after this, another angel shall sound, which is the second trump; and then cometh the redemption of those who are Christ's at his coming;

B. who have received their part in that prison which is prepared for them, that they might receive the gospel, and be judged according to men in the flesh.

29

A. And again, another trump shall sound, which is the third trump: and then cometh the spirits of men who are to be judged, and are found under condemnation:

B. and these are the rest of the dead, and they live not again until the thousand years are ended, neither again, until the end of the earth.

30

And another trump shall sound, which is the fourth trump, saying, These are found among those who are to remain until that great and last day, even the end, who shall remain filthy still.

31

A. And another trump shall sound, which is the fifth trump, which is the fifth angel who committeth the everlasting gospel, flying through the midst of heaven, unto all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people;

B. and this shall be the sound of his trump, saying to all people, both in heaven and in earth, and that are under the earth; for every ear shall hear it, and every knee shall bow, and every tongue shall confess, while they hear the sound of the trump, saying,

C. Fear God, and give glory to him who sitteth upon the throne, for ever and ever: for the hour of his judgment is come.

32

And again, another angel shall sound his trump, which is the sixth angel, saying, She is fallen, who made all nations drink of the wine of the wrath of her fornication: she is fallen! is fallen!

33

A. And again, another angel shall sound his trump, which is the seventh angel, saying: It is finished! it is finished! the Lamb of God hath overcome, and trodden the winepress alone; even the winepress of the fierceness of the wrath of Almighty God;

B. and then shall the angels be crowned with the glory of his might, and the saints shall be filled with his glory, and receive their inheritance and be made equal with him.

34

And then shall the first angel again sound his trump in the ears of all living, and reveal the secret acts of men, and the mighty works of God in the first thousandth year.

35

A. And then shall the second angel sound his trump, and reveal the secret acts of men, and the thoughts and intents of their hearts, and the mighty works of God in the second thousandth year:

B. and so on, until the seventh angel shall sound his trump; and he shall stand forth upon the land and upon the sea, and swear in the name of him who sitteth upon the throne, that there shall be time no longer, and Satan shall be bound, that old serpent, who is called the Devil, and shall not be loosed for the space of a thousand years.

C. And then he shall be loosed for a little season, that he may gather together his armies; and Michael, the seventh angel, even the archangel, shall gather together his armies, even the hosts of heaven.

D. And the Devil shall gather together his armies, even the hosts of hell, and shall come up to battle against Michael and his armies: and then cometh the battle of the great God!

E. And the Devil and his armies shall be cast away into their own place, that they shall not have power over the saints any more at all; for Michael shall fight their battles, and shall overcome him who seeketh the throne of him who sitteth upon the throne, even the Lamb.

F. This is the glory of God and the sanctified; and they shall not any more see death.

36

A. Therefore, verily I say unto you, my friends, Call your solemn assembly, as I have commanded you; and as all have not faith, seek ye diligently and teach one another words of wisdom; yea, seek ye out of the best books words of wisdom; seek learning even by study, and also by faith.

B. Organize yourselves; prepare every needful thing, and establish a house, even a house of prayer, a house of fasting, a house of faith, a house of learning, a house of glory, a house of order, a house of God;

C. that your incomings may be in the name of the Lord; that your outgoings may be in the name of the Lord; that all your salutations may be in the name of the Lord, with uplifted hands unto the Most High.

37

A. Therefore cease from all your light speeches, from all laughter, from all your lustful desires, from all your pride and light-mindedness, and from all your wicked doings.

B. Appoint among yourselves a teacher, and let not all be spokesmen at once, but let one speak at a time, and let all listen unto his sayings, that when all have spoken, that all may be edified of all, and that every man may have an equal privilege.

38

A. See that ye love one another; cease to be covetous; learn to impart one to another as the gospel requires; cease to be idle; cease to be unclean; cease to find fault one with another;

B. cease to sleep longer than is needful; retire to thy bed early, that ye may not be weary; arise early, that your bodies and your minds may be invigorated;

C. and above all things, clothe yourselves with the bonds of charity, as with a mantle, which is a bond of perfectness and peace; pray always, that you may not faint until I come; behold, and lo, I will come quickly, and receive you unto myself. Amen.

39

A. And again, the order of the house prepared for the presidency of the school of the prophets, established for their instruction in all things that are expedient for them, even for all the officers of the church,

B. or, in other words, those who are called to the ministry in the church, beginning at the high priests, even down to the deacons; and this shall be the order of the house of the presidency of the school:

C. He that is appointed to be president, or teacher, shall be found standing in his place, in the house, which shall be prepared for him; therefore he shall be first in the house of God, in a place that the congregation in the house may hear his words carefully and distinctly, not with loud speech.

D. And when he cometh into the house of God (for he should be first in the house; behold, this is beautiful, that he may be an example)

40

Let him offer himself in prayer upon his knees before God, in token or remembrance of the everlasting covenant; and when any shall come in after him, let the teacher arise, and, with uplifted hands to heaven, yea, even directly, salute his brother or brethren with these words:

41

Art thou a brother or brethren, I salute you in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ, in token or remembrance of the everlasting covenant, in which covenant I receive you to fellowship, in a determination that is fixed, immovable, and unchangeable, to be your friend and brother, through the grace of God, in the bonds of love, to walk in all the commandments of God blameless, in thanksgiving, for ever and ever. Amen.

42

And he that is found unworthy of this salutation shall not have place among you; for ye shall not suffer that mine house shall be polluted by them.

43

And he that cometh in and is faithful before me, and is a brother, or if they be brethren, they shall salute the president or teacher, with uplifted hands to heaven, with this same prayer and covenant, or by saying Amen, in token of the same.

44

A. Behold, verily I say unto you, This is a sample unto you for a salutation to one another in the house of God, in the school of the prophets.

B. And ye are called to do this by prayer and thanksgiving, as the Spirit shall give utterance, in all your doings in the house of the Lord, in the school of the prophets, that it may become a sanctuary, a tabernacle, of the Holy Spirit to your edification.

45

And ye shall not receive any among you into this school, save he is clean from the blood of this generation; and he shall be received by the ordinance of the washing of feet, for unto this end was the ordinance of the washing of feet instituted.

46

A. And again, the ordinance of washing feet is to be administered by the president, or presiding elder of the church.

B. It is to be commenced with prayer; and after partaking of bread and wine, he is to gird himself, according to the pattern given in the thirteenth chapter of John's testimony concerning me. Amen.

Section 86

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Preface

To be sent greeting, not by commandment, or constraint, but by revelation and the word of wisdom; showing forth the order and will of God in the temporal salvation of all Saints in the last days. Given for a principle, with promise; adapted to the capacity of the weak, and the weakest of all Saints, who are or can be called Saints.

1

A. Behold, verily thus saith the Lord unto you, In consequence of evils and designs which do and will exist in the hearts of conspiring men in the last days, I have warned you, and forewarn you, by giving unto you this word of wisdom by revelation,

B. that inasmuch as any man drinketh wine or strong drink among you, behold, it is not good, neither meet in the sight of your Father, only in assembling yourselves together, to offer up your sacraments before him.

C. And behold, this should be wine; yea, pure wine of the grape of the vine, of your own make. And again, strong drinks are not for the belly, but for the washing of your bodies.

D. And again, tobacco is not for the body, neither for the belly, and is not good for man, but is an herb for bruises, and all sick cattle, to be used with judgment and skill.

E. And again, hot drinks are not for the body or belly.

2

A. And again, verily I say unto you: All wholesome herbs God hath ordained for the constitution, nature, and use of man, every herb in the season thereof, and every fruit in the season thereof. All these to be used with prudence and thanksgiving.

B. Yea, flesh also, of beasts and of the fowls of the air, I, the Lord, hath ordained for the use of man, with thanksgiving. Nevertheless, they are to be used sparingly; and it is pleasing unto me that they should not be used only in times of winter, or of cold, or famine.

C. All grain is ordained for the use of man and of beasts, to be the staff of life, not only for man, but for the beasts of the field, and the fowls of heaven, and all wild animals that run or creep on the earth; and these hath God made for the use of man only in times of famine and excess of hunger.

3

A. All grain is good for the food of man, as also the fruit of the vine, that which yieldeth fruit, whether in the ground or above the ground.

B. Nevertheless, wheat for man, and corn for the ox, and oats for the horse, and rye for the fowls, and for swine, and for all beasts of the field, and barley for all useful animals and for mild drinks and also other grain.

C. And all Saints who remember to keep and do these sayings, walking in obedience to the commandments, shall receive health in their navel, and marrow to their bones, and shall find wisdom and great treasures of knowledge, even hidden treasures;

D. and shall run and not be weary, and shall walk and not faint; and I, the Lord, give unto them a promise that the destroying angel shall pass by them, as the children of Israel, and not slay them. Amen.

Section 87

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Thus saith the Lord, Verily I say unto thee, my son, Thy sins are forgiven thee, according to thy petition, for thy prayers and the prayers of thy brethren have come up into my ears;

B. therefore thou art blessed from henceforth that bear the keys of the kingdom given unto thee; which kingdom is coming forth for the last time.

2

A. Verily I say unto you, The keys of this kingdom shall never be taken from you, while thou art in the world, neither in the world to come; nevertheless, through you shall the oracles be given to another; yea, even unto the church.

B. And all they who receive the oracles of God, let them beware how they hold them, lest they are accounted as a light thing, and are brought under condemnation thereby; and stumble and fall, when the storms descend, and the winds blow, and the rains descend, and beat upon their house.

3

A. And again, verily I say unto thy brethren Sidney Rigdon and Frederick G. Williams, their sins are forgiven them also, and they are accounted as equal with thee in holding the keys of this last kingdom;

B. as also through your administration the keys of the school of the prophets, which I have commanded to be organized, that thereby they may be perfected in their ministry for the salvation of Zion, and of the nations of Israel, and of the Gentiles, as many as will believe,

C. that through your administration, they may receive the word, and through their administration, the word may go forth unto the ends of the earth, unto the Gentiles first, and then, behold, and lo, they shall turn unto the Jews;

D. and then cometh the day when the arm of the Lord shall be revealed in power in convincing the nations, the heathen nations, the house of Joseph, of the gospel of their salvation.

4

For it shall come to pass in that day, that every man shall hear the fullness of the gospel in his own tongue, and in his own language, through those who are ordained unto this power, by the administration of the Comforter, shed forth upon them, for the revelation of Jesus Christ.

5

A. And now, verily I say unto you, I give unto you a commandment, that you continue in the ministry and presidency, and when you have finished the translation of the prophets, you shall from henceforth preside over the affairs of the church and the school;

B. and from time to time, as shall be manifest by the Comforter, receive revelations to unfold the mysteries of the kingdom, and set in order the churches, and study and learn, and become acquainted with all good books, and with languages, tongues, and people.

C. And this shall be your business and mission in all your lives to preside in council and set in order all the affairs of this church and kingdom.

D. Be not ashamed, neither confounded; but be admonished in all your highmindedness and pride, for it bringeth a snare upon your souls.

E. Set in order your houses; keep slothfulness and uncleanness far from you.

6

A. Now, verily I say unto thee, Let there be a place provided as soon as it is possible, for the family of thy counselor and scribe, even Frederick G. Williams;

B. and let mine aged servant Joseph Smith, Sr., continue with his family upon the place where he now lives, and let it not be sold until the mouth of the Lord shall name.

C. And let thy counselor, even Sidney Rigdon, remain where he now resides, until the mouth of the Lord shall name.

D. And let the bishop search diligently to obtain an agent; and let it be a man who has got riches in store; a man of God and of strong faith; that thereby he may be enabled to discharge every debt; that the storehouse of the Lord may not be brought into disrepute before the eyes of the people.

E. Search diligently, pray always, and be believing, and all things shall work together for your good, if ye walk uprightly, and remember the covenant wherewith ye have covenanted one with another.

F. Let your families be small, especially mine aged servant Joseph Smith, Sr., as pertaining to those who do not belong to your families;

G. that those things that are provided for you, to bring to pass my work, are not taken from you and given to those that are not worthy, and thereby you are hindered in accomplishing those things which I have commanded you.

7

A. And again, verily I say unto you, It is my will that my handmaid, Vienna Jaques, should receive money to bear her expenses, and go up unto the land of Zion; and the residue of the money may be consecrated unto me, and she be rewarded in mine own due time.

B. Verily I say unto you, that it is meet in mine eyes, that she should go up unto the land of Zion, and receive an inheritance from the hand of the bishop, that she may settle down in peace inasmuch as she is faithful, and not be idle in her days from thenceforth.

8

A. And, behold, verily I say unto you, that ye shall write this commandment, and say unto your brethren in Zion, in love greeting, that I have called you also to preside over Zion in mine own due time; therefore let them cease wearying me concerning this matter.

B. Behold, I say unto you, that your brethren in Zion begin to repent, and the angels rejoice over them; nevertheless, I am not well pleased with many things;

C. and I am not well pleased with my servant William E. McLellin, neither with my servant Sidney Gilbert; and the bishop also; and others have many things to repent of;

D. but verily I say unto you, that I, the Lord, will contend with Zion and plead with her strong ones, and chasten her, until she overcomes and is clean before me; for she shall not be removed out of her place. I, the Lord, have spoken it. Amen.

Section 88

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

- A.** Verily, thus saith the Lord unto you, concerning the Apocrypha,
- B.** There are many things contained therein that are true, and it is mostly translated correctly; there are many things contained therein that are not true, which are interpolations by the hands of men.
- C.** Verily I say unto you, that it is not needful that the Apocrypha should be translated.
- D.** Therefore, whoso readeth it let him understand, for the Spirit manifesteth truth; and whoso is enlightened by the Spirit shall obtain benefit therefrom; and whoso receiveth not by the Spirit, cannot be benefited; therefore, it is not needful that it should be translated. Amen.

Section 89

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

Verily, thus saith the Lord, I give unto the united order, organized agreeable to the commandment previously given, a revelation and commandment concerning my servant Frederick G. Williams, that ye shall receive him into the order. What I say unto one I say unto all.

2

And again, I say unto you, my servant Frederick G. Williams, You shall be a lively member in this order; and inasmuch as you are faithful in keeping all former commandments, you shall be blessed forever. Amen.

Section 90

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Verily, thus saith the Lord, It shall come to pass that every soul who forsaketh his sins and cometh unto me, and calleth on my name, and obeyeth my voice, and keepeth my commandments, shall see my face, and know that I am, and that I am the true light that lighteth every man that cometh into the world;

B. and that I am in the Father and the Father in me, and the Father and I are one; the Father because he gave me of his fullness; and the Son because I was in the world and made flesh my tabernacle, and dwelt among the sons of men.

C. I was in the world and received of my Father, and the works of him were plainly manifest; and John saw and bore record of the fullness of my glory; and the fullness of John's record is hereafter to be revealed.

D. And he bore record saying, I saw his glory that he was in the beginning before the world was; therefore, in the beginning the Word was; for he was the Word, even the messenger of salvation, the light and the Redeemer of the world;

E. the Spirit of truth, who came into the world because the world was made by him; and in him was the life of men and the light of men.

F. The worlds were made by him. Men were made by him. All things were made by him, and through him, and of him.

G. And I, John, bear record that I beheld his glory, as the glory of the Only Begotten of the Father, full of grace and truth; even the Spirit of truth which came and dwelt in the flesh, and dwelt among us.

2

A. And I, John, saw that he received not of the fullness at the first, but received grace for grace; and he received not of the fullness at first, but continued from grace to grace, until he received a fullness;

B. and thus he was called the Son of God, because he received not of the fullness at the first.

C. And I, John, bare record, and lo, the heavens were opened and the Holy Ghost descended upon him in the form of a dove, and sat upon him, and there came a voice out of heaven saying, This is my beloved Son.

D. And I, John, bare record that he received a fullness of the glory of the Father; and he received all power, both in heaven and on earth; and the glory of the Father was with him, for he dwelt in him.

3

A. And it shall come to pass, that if you are faithful, you shall receive the fullness of the record of John.

B. I give unto you these sayings that you may understand and know how to worship, and know what you worship, that you may come unto the Father in my name, and in due time receive of his fullness,

C. for if you keep my commandments you shall receive of his fullness and be glorified in me as I am in the Father: therefore, I say unto you, You shall receive grace for grace.

4

A. And now, verily I say unto you, I was in the beginning with the Father, and am the Firstborn; and all those who are begotten through me, are partakers of the glory of the same, and are the church of the Firstborn.

B. Ye were also in the beginning with the Father; that which is Spirit, even the Spirit of truth; and truth is knowledge of things as they are, and as they were, and as they are to come; and whatsoever is more or less than this, is the spirit of that wicked one, who was a liar from the beginning.

C. The Spirit of truth is of God. I am the Spirit of truth.

D. And John bore record of me, saying, He received a fullness of truth; yea, even of all truth, and no man receiveth a fullness unless he keepeth his commandments.

E. He that keepeth his commandments, receiveth truth and light, until he is glorified in truth, and knoweth all things.

5

A. Man was also in the beginning with God. Intelligence, or the light of truth, was not created or made, neither indeed can be.

B. All truth is independent in that sphere in which God has placed it, to act for itself, as all intelligence also, otherwise there is no existence.

C. Behold, here is the agency of man, and here is the condemnation of man, because that which was from the beginning is plainly manifest unto them, and they receive not the light.

D. And every man whose spirit receiveth not the light is under condemnation, for man is spirit.

E. The elements are eternal, and spirit and element, inseparably connected, receiveth a fullness of joy; and when separated, man cannot receive a fullness of joy.

F. The elements are the tabernacle of God; yea, man is the tabernacle of God, even temples; and whatsoever temple is defiled, God shall destroy that temple.

6

A. The glory of God is intelligence, or, in other words, light and truth; and light and truth forsaketh that evil one.

B. Every spirit of man was innocent in the beginning, and God having redeemed man from the fall, men became again in their infant state, innocent before God.

C. And that wicked one cometh and taketh away light and truth, through disobedience, from the children of men, and because of the tradition of their fathers.

D. But I have commanded you to bring up your children in light and truth,

E. but verily I say unto you, my servant Frederick G. Williams, You have continued under this condemnation; you have not taught your children light and truth, according to the commandments, and that wicked one hath power, as yet, over you, and this is the cause of your affliction.

F. And now a commandment I give unto you, if you will be delivered: you shall set in order your own house, for there are many things that are not right in your house.

7

Verily I say unto my servant Sidney Rigdon, that in some things he hath not kept the commandments, concerning his children; therefore, firstly set in order thy house.

8

A. Verily I say unto my servant Joseph Smith, Jr., or, in other words, I will call you friends, for you are my friends, and you shall have an inheritance with me.

B. I called you servants for the world's sake, and you are their servants for my sake; and now verily I say unto Joseph Smith, Jr., You have not kept the commandments, and must needs stand rebuked before the Lord.

C. Your family must needs repent and forsake some things, and give more earnest heed unto your sayings, or be removed out of their place.

D. What I say unto one I say unto all: Pray always, lest that wicked one have power in you, and remove you out of your place.

9

My servant Newel K. Whitney, also a bishop of my church, hath need to be chastened, and set in order his family, and see that they are more diligent and concerned at home, and pray always, or they shall be removed out of their place.

10

Now I say unto you, my friends, Let my servant Sidney Rigdon go his journey, and make haste, and also proclaim the acceptable year of the Lord, and the gospel of salvation, as I shall give him utterance, and by your prayer of faith with one consent, I will uphold him.

11

And let my servants Joseph Smith, Jr., and Frederick G. Williams, make haste also, and it shall be given them even according to the prayer of faith; and inasmuch as you keep my sayings, you shall not be confounded in this world, nor in the world to come.

12

And verily I say unto you, that it is my will that you should hasten to translate my Scriptures, and to obtain a knowledge of history, and of countries, and of kingdoms, of laws of God and man, and all this for the salvation of Zion. Amen.

Section 91

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. And again, verily I say unto you, my friends, A commandment I give unto you, that ye shall commence a work of laying out and preparing a beginning and foundation of the city of the stake of Zion, here in the land of Kirtland, beginning at my house; and, behold, it must be done according to the pattern which I have given unto you.

B. And let the first lot on the south be consecrated unto me for the building of an house for the Presidency, for the work of the Presidency, in obtaining revelations, and for the work of the ministry of the Presidency, in all things pertaining to the church and kingdom.

2

A. Verily I say unto you, that it shall be built fifty-five by sixty-five feet in the width thereof, and in the length thereof, in the inner court; and there shall be a lower court, and a higher court, according to the pattern which shall be given unto you hereafter;

B. and it shall be dedicated unto the Lord from the foundation thereof, according to the order of the priesthood, according to the pattern which shall be given unto you hereafter; and it shall be wholly dedicated unto the Lord for the work of the Presidency.

C. And you shall not suffer any unclean thing to come in unto it; and my glory shall be there, and my presence shall be there; but if there shall come into it any unclean thing, my glory shall not be there, and my presence shall not come into it.

3

A. And again, verily I say unto you, The second lot on the south shall be dedicated unto me, for the building of an house unto me, for the work of the printing of the translation of my Scriptures, and all things whatsoever I shall command you;

B. and it shall be fifty-five by sixty-five feet in the width thereof, and the length thereof, in the inner court; and there shall be a lower and a higher court;

C. and this house shall be wholly dedicated unto the Lord from the foundation thereof, for the work of the printing, in all things whatsoever I shall command you, to be holy, undefiled, according to the pattern, in all things, as it shall be given unto you.

4

A. And on the third lot shall my servant Hyrum Smith receive his inheritance.

B. And on the first and second lots, on the north, shall my servants Reynolds Cahoon and Jared Carter receive their inheritance, that they may do the work which I have appointed unto them, to be a committee to build mine houses, according to the commandments which I, the Lord God, have given unto you.

C. These two houses are not to be built until I give unto you a commandment concerning them.

5

And now I give unto you no more at this time. Amen.

Section 92

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Verily, thus saith the Lord unto you, whom I love; and whom I love I also chasten, that their sins may be forgiven; for with the chastisement I prepare a way for their deliverance, in all things, out of temptation; and I have loved you:

B. Wherefore, ye must needs be chastened and stand rebuked before my face, for ye have sinned against me a very grievous sin, in that ye have not considered the great commandment in all things, that I have given unto you, concerning the building of mine house,

C. for the preparation wherewith I design to prepare mine apostles to prune my vineyard for the last time, that I may bring to pass my strange act, that I may pour out my Spirit upon all flesh.

D. But, behold, verily I say unto you, There are many who have been ordained among you, whom I have called, but few of them are chosen:

E. they who are not chosen have sinned a very grievous sin, in that they are walking in darkness at noonday; and for this cause, I gave unto you a commandment, that you should call your solemn assembly;

F. that your fastings and your mourning might come up into the ears of the Lord of Sabaoth, which is, by interpretation, the Creator of the first day; the beginning and the end.

2

A. Yea, verily I say unto you, I gave unto you a commandment, that you should build an house, in the which house I design to endow those whom I have chosen with power from on high, for this is the promise of the Father unto you;

B. therefore, I commanded you to tarry, even as mine apostles at Jerusalem; nevertheless my servants sinned a very grievous sin; and contentions arose in the school of the prophets, which was very grievous unto me, saith your Lord; therefore I sent them forth to be chastened.

3

A. Verily I say unto you, It is my will that you should build an house; if you keep my commandments, you shall have power to build it; if you keep not my commandments the love of the Father shall not continue with you; therefore you shall walk in darkness.

B. Now here is wisdom and the mind of the Lord: let the house be built, not after the manner of the world, for I give not unto you, that ye shall live after the manner of the world;

C. therefore let it be built after the manner which I shall show unto three of you, whom ye shall appoint and ordain unto this power.

D. And the size thereof shall be fifty and five feet in width, and let it be sixty-five feet in length, in the inner court thereof;

E. and let the lower part of the inner court be dedicated unto me for your sacrament offering, and for your preaching; and your fasting, and your praying, and the offering up your most holy desires unto me, saith your Lord.

F. And let the higher part of the inner court, be dedicated unto me for the school of mine apostles, saith Son Ahman; or, in other words, Alphas; or in other words, Omegas; even Jesus Christ your Lord. Amen.

Section 93

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Behold, I say unto you, Here is wisdom whereby ye may know how to act concerning this matter, for it is expedient in me that this stake that I have set for the strength of Zion, should be made strong;

B. therefore, let my servant Newel K. Whitney take charge of the place which is named among you, upon which I design to build mine holy house; and again let it be divided into lots, according to wisdom, for the benefit of those who seek inheritances, as it shall be determined in council among you.

C. Therefore, take heed that ye see to this matter, and that portion that is necessary to benefit mine order, for the purpose of bringing forth my word to the children of men;

D. for, behold, verily I say unto you, This is the most expedient in me, that my word should go forth unto the children of men, for the purpose of subduing the hearts of the children of men, for your good. Even so. Amen.

2

A. And again, verily I say unto you, It is wisdom, and expedient in me, that my servant John Johnson, whose offering I have accepted, and whose prayers I have heard, unto whom I give a promise of eternal life, inasmuch as he keepeth my commandments from henceforth; for he is a descendant of Seth, and a partaker of the blessings of the promise made unto his fathers.

B. Verily I say unto you, It is expedient in me that he should become a member of the order, that he may assist in bringing forth my word unto the children of men;

C. therefore ye shall ordain him unto this blessing; and he shall seek diligently to take away incumbrances, that are upon the house named among you, that he may dwell therein. Even so. Amen.

Section 94

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Verily I say unto you my friends, I speak unto you with my voice, even the voice of my Spirit, that I may show unto you my will concerning your brethren in the land of Zion, many of whom are truly humble, and are seeking diligently to learn wisdom and to find truth;

B. verily, verily I say unto you, Blessed are all such for they shall obtain, for I, the Lord, show mercy unto all the meek, and upon all whomsoever I will, that I may be justified, when I shall bring them unto judgment.

2

A. Behold, I say unto you, concerning the school in Zion, I, the Lord, am well pleased that there should be a school in Zion;

B. and also with my servant Parley P. Pratt, for he abideth in me; and inasmuch as he continueth to abide in me, he shall continue to preside over the school in the land of Zion, until I shall give unto him other commandments;

C. and I will bless him with a multiplicity of blessings, in expounding all Scriptures and mysteries to the edification of the school, and of the church in Zion;

D. and to the residue of the school, I, the Lord, am willing to show mercy, nevertheless there are those that must needs be chastened, and their works shall be made known.

E. The ax is laid at the root of the trees, and every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit, shall be hewn down and cast into the fire; I, the Lord, have spoken it.

F. Verily I say unto you, All among them who know their hearts are honest, and are broken, and their spirits contrite, and are willing to observe their covenants by sacrifice; yea, every sacrifice which I, the Lord, shall command, they are all accepted of me,

G. for I, the Lord, will cause them to bring forth as a very fruitful tree which is planted in a goodly land, by a pure stream, that yieldeth much precious fruit.

3

A. Verily I say unto you, that it is my will that an house should be built unto me in the land of Zion, like unto the pattern which I have given you; yea, let it be built speedily by the tithing of my people:

B. behold, this is the tithing and the sacrifice which I, the Lord, require at their hands, that there may be an house built unto me for the salvation of Zion;

C. for a place of thanksgiving, for all Saints, and for a place of instruction for all those who are called to the work of the ministry, in all their several callings, and offices;

D. that they may be perfected in the understanding of their ministry; in theory; in principle and in doctrine; in all things pertaining to the kingdom of God on the earth, the keys of which kingdom have been conferred upon you.

4

A. And inasmuch as my people build an house unto me, in the name of the Lord, and do not suffer any unclean thing to come into it, that it be not defiled, my glory shall rest upon it;

B. yea, and my presence shall be there, for I will come into it, and all the pure in heart that shall come into it, shall see God: but if it be defiled I will not come into it, and my glory shall not be there, for I will not come into unholy temples.

5

A. And now, behold, if Zion do these things, she shall prosper and spread herself and become very glorious, very great, and very terrible;

B. and the nations of the earth shall honor her, and shall say, Surely Zion is the city of our God; and surely Zion cannot fall, neither be moved out of her place, for God is there, and the hand of the Lord is there, and he hath sworn by the power of his might to be her salvation, and her high tower;

C. therefore verily thus saith the Lord, Let Zion rejoice, for this is Zion, THE PURE IN HEART; therefore let Zion rejoice, while all the wicked shall mourn;

D. for, behold, and lo, vengeance cometh speedily upon the ungodly, as the whirlwind, and who shall escape it; the Lord's scourge shall pass over by night and by day; and the report thereof shall vex all people;

E. yet, it shall not be stayed until the Lord come; for the indignation of the Lord is kindled against their abominations, and all their wicked works;

F. nevertheless Zion shall escape if she observe to do all things whatsoever I have commanded her, but if she observe not to do whatsoever I have commanded her, I will visit her according to all her works, with sore affliction, with pestilence, with plague, with sword, with vengeance, with devouring fire;

G. nevertheless, let it be read this once in their ears, that I, the Lord, have accepted of their offering; and if she sin no more, none of these things shall come upon her, and I will bless her

with blessings, and multiply a multiplicity of blessings upon her, and upon her generations, for ever and ever, saith the Lord your God. Amen.

Section 95

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Verily I say unto you, my friends, Fear not, let your hearts be comforted, yea, rejoice evermore, and in everything give thanks, waiting patiently on the Lord;

B. for your prayers have entered into the ears of the Lord of Sabaoth, and are recorded with this seal and testament:

C. the Lord hath sworn and decreed that they shall be granted; therefore, he giveth this promise unto you, with an immutable covenant, that they shall be fulfilled, and all things wherewith you have been afflicted, shall work together for your good, and to my name's glory saith the Lord.

2

A. And now, verily I say unto you, concerning the laws of the land, It is my will that my people should observe to do all things whatsoever I command them, and that law of the land, which is constitutional, supporting that principle of freedom, in maintaining rights and privileges belongs to all mankind and is justifiable before me;

B. therefore, I, the Lord, justify you and your brethren of my church in befriending that law which is the constitutional law of the land; and as pertaining to law of man, whatsoever is more or less than these, cometh of evil.

C. I, the Lord God, make you free; therefore, ye are free indeed: and the law also maketh you free; nevertheless when the wicked rule the people mourn;

D. wherefore honest men and wise men should be sought for, diligently, and good men and wise men, ye should observe to uphold; otherwise whatsoever is less than these, cometh of evil.

3

A. And I give unto you a commandment, that ye shall forsake all evil and cleave unto all good, that ye shall live by every word which proceedeth forth out of the mouth of God; for he will give unto the faithful, line upon line, precept upon precept;

B. and I will try you, and prove you herewith; and whoso layeth down his life in my cause, for my name's sake, shall find it again; even life eternal;

C. therefore, be not afraid of your enemies; for I have decreed in my heart, saith the Lord, that I will prove you in all things, whether you will abide in my covenant, even unto death, that you may be found worthy;

D. for if ye will not abide in my covenant, ye are not worthy of me; therefore, renounce war and proclaim peace, and seek diligently to turn the hearts of the children to their fathers, and the hearts of the fathers to the children.

E. And again, the hearts of the Jews unto the prophets; and the prophets unto the Jews, lest I come and smite the whole earth with a curse, and all flesh be consumed before me.

F. Let not your hearts be troubled, for in my Father's house are many mansions, and I have prepared a place for you, and where my Father and I am, there ye shall be also.

4

A. Behold, I, the Lord, am not well pleased with many who are in the church at Kirtland, for they do not forsake their sins, and their wicked ways, the pride of their hearts, and their covetousness, and all their detestable things and observe the words of wisdom and eternal life which I have given unto them.

B. Verily I say unto you, that I, the Lord, will chasten them and will do whatsoever I list, if they do not repent and observe all things whatsoever I have said unto them.

C. And again, I say unto you, If ye observe to do whatsoever I command you, I, the Lord, will turn away all wrath and indignation from you, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against you.

5

A. Now, I speak unto you, concerning your families; if men will smite you, or your families, once, and ye bear it patiently and revile not against them, neither seek revenge, ye shall be rewarded, but if ye bear it not patiently, it shall be accounted unto you as being meted out a just measure unto you.

B. And again, if your enemy shall smite you the second time, and you revile not against your enemy, and bear it patiently, your reward shall be an hundredfold.

C. And again, if he shall smite you the third time, and ye bear it patiently, your reward shall be doubled unto you fourfold; and these three testimonies shall stand against your enemy, if he repent not, and shall not be blotted out.

D. And now, verily I say unto you, If that enemy shall escape my vengeance that he be not brought into judgment before me, then ye shall see to it, that ye warn him in my name that he come no more upon you, neither upon your family, even your children's children unto the third and fourth generation;

E. and then if he shall come upon you, or your children, or your children's children unto the third and fourth generation, I have delivered thine enemy into thine hands, and then if thou wilt spare him thou shalt be rewarded for thy righteousness; and also thy children and thy children's children unto the third and fourth generation;

F. nevertheless thine enemy is in thine hands, and if thou reward him according to his works, thou art justified, if he has sought thy life, and thy life is endangered by him; thine enemy is in thine hands, and thou art justified.

6

A. Behold, this is the law I gave unto my servant, Nephi; and thy father Joseph, and Jacob, and Isaac, and Abraham, and all mine ancient prophets and apostles.

B. And again, this is the law that I gave unto mine ancients, that they should not go out unto battle against any nation, kindred, tongue, or people, save I, the Lord, commanded them.

C. And if any nation, tongue, or people should proclaim war against them, they should first lift a standard of peace unto that people, nation, or tongue, and if that people did not accept the offering of peace, neither the second nor the third time, they should bring these testimonies before the Lord;

D. then, I, the Lord, would give unto them a commandment, and justify them in going out to battle against that nation, tongue, or people,

E. and I, the Lord, would fight their battles, and their children's battles and their children's children until they had avenged themselves on all their enemies, to the third and fourth generation;

F. behold, this is an ensample unto all people, saith the Lord, your God, for justification before me.

7

A. And again, verily I say unto you, If, after thine enemy has come upon thee the first time, he repent and come unto thee praying thy forgiveness thou shalt forgive him, and shall hold it no more as a testimony against thine enemy,

B. and so on unto the second and the third time, and as oft as thine enemy repenteth of the trespass wherewith he has trespassed against thee, thou shalt forgive him, until seventy times seven;

C. and if he transgress against thee and repent not the first time, nevertheless thou shalt forgive him; and if he trespass against thee the second time, and repent not, nevertheless thou shalt forgive him; and if he trespass against thee the third time and repent not, thou shalt also forgive him;

D. but if he trespass against thee the fourth time, thou shalt not forgive him but shall bring these testimonies before the Lord, and they shall not be blotted out until he repent and reward thee fourfold in all things wherewith he has trespassed against you;

E. and if he do this thou shalt forgive him with all thine heart, and if he do not this, I, the Lord, will avenge thee of thine enemy an hundredfold; and upon his children, and upon his children's children, of all them that hate me, unto the third and fourth generation;

F. but if the children shall repent, or the children's children and turn unto the Lord their God with all their hearts, and with all their might, mind, and strength, and restore fourfold for all their trespasses, wherewith they have trespassed, or wherewith their fathers have trespassed or their father's fathers,

G. then thine indignation shall be turned away and vengeance shall no more come upon them, saith the Lord your God, and their trespasses shall never be brought anymore as a testimony against them. Amen.

Section 96

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Behold, thus saith the Lord unto my servant John Murdock, Thou art called to go into the eastern countries from house to house, from village to village, and from city to city, to proclaim mine everlasting gospel unto the inhabitants thereof, in the midst of persecution and wickedness;

B. and whoso receiveth you receiveth me, and you shall have power to declare my word in the demonstration of my Holy Spirit;

C. and whoso receiveth you as a little child, receiveth my kingdom, and blessed are they, for they shall obtain mercy; and whoso rejecteth you shall be rejected of my Father and his house: and you shall cleanse your feet in the secret places by the way for a testimony against them.

2

A. And, behold, and lo, I come quickly to judgment, to convince all of their ungodly deeds which they have committed against me, as it is written of me in the volume of the book.

B. And now, verily I say unto thee, that it is not expedient that thou shouldst go until thy children are provided for, and kindly sent up unto the bishop in Zion,

C. and after a few years, if thou desirest of me thou mayest go up also unto the goodly land, to possess thine inheritance; otherwise thou shalt continue proclaiming my gospel until thou be taken. Amen.

Section 97

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Verily, thus saith the Lord unto you my friends, Sidney, and Joseph, your families are well; they are in mine hands, and I will do with them as seemeth me good; for in me there is all power; therefore, follow me, and listen to the counsel which I shall give unto you.

B. Behold, and lo, I have much people in this place, in the regions round about, and an effectual door shall be opened in the regions round about in this eastern land;

C. therefore, I, the Lord, have suffered you to come unto this place; for thus it was expedient in me for the salvation of souls;

D. therefore, verily I say unto you, Lift up your voices unto this people; speak the thoughts that I shall put into your hearts, and ye shall not be confounded before men; for it shall be given you in the very hour, yea, in the very moment, what ye shall say.

2

A. But a commandment I give unto you, that ye shall declare whatsoever things ye declare in my name, in solemnity of heart, in the spirit of meekness, in all things.

B. And I give unto you this promise, that inasmuch as ye do this, the Holy Ghost shall be shed forth in bearing record unto all things whatsoever ye shall say.

3

A. And it is expedient in me that you, my servant Sidney, should be a spokesman unto this people; yea, verily, I will ordain you unto this calling, even to be a spokesman unto my servant Joseph;

B. and I will give unto him power to be mighty in testimony; and I will give unto thee power to be mighty in expounding all Scriptures, that thou mayest be a spokesman unto him, and he shall be a revelator unto thee, that thou mayest know the certainty of all things pertaining to the things of my kingdom on the earth.

C. Therefore, continue your journey and let your hearts rejoice; for, behold, and lo, I am with you even unto the end.

4

A. And now I give unto you a word concerning Zion: Zion shall be redeemed, although she is chastened for a little season.

B. Thy brethren, my servants, Orson Hyde and John Gould, are in my hands, and inasmuch as they keep my commandments they shall be saved.

C. Therefore, let your hearts be comforted, for all things shall work together for good to them that walk uprightly, and to the sanctification of the church;

D. for I will raise up unto myself a pure people, that will serve me in righteousness; and all that call on the name of the Lord and keep his commandments, shall be saved. Even so. Amen.

Section 98

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Verily, I say unto you, concerning your brethren who have been afflicted, and persecuted, and cast out from the land of their inheritance, I, the Lord, have suffered the affliction to come upon them, wherewith they have been afflicted in consequence of their transgressions;

B. yet, I will own them, and they shall be mine in that day when I shall come to make up my jewels.

2

Therefore, they must needs be chastened, and tried, even as Abraham, who was commanded to offer up his only son; for all those who will not endure chastening, but deny me, cannot be sanctified.

3

A. Behold, I say unto you, there were jarrings, and contentions, and envyings, and strifes, and lustful and covetous desires among them; therefore by these things they polluted their inheritances.

B. They were slow to hearken unto the voice of the Lord their God; therefore, the Lord their God is slow to hearken unto their prayers, to answer them in the day of their trouble.

C. In the day of their peace they esteemed lightly my counsel; but in the day of their trouble, of necessity they feel after me.

4

A. Verily, I say unto you, Notwithstanding their sins, my bowels are filled with compassion toward them; I will not utterly cast them off; and in the day of wrath I will remember mercy.

B. I have sworn, and the decree hath gone forth by a former commandment which I have given unto you, that I would let fall the sword of mine indignation in the behalf of my people; and even as I have said, it shall come to pass.

C. Mine indignation is soon to be poured out without measure upon all nations, and this will I do when the cup of their iniquity is full.

D. And in that day, all who are found upon the watchtower, or in other words, all mine Israel shall be saved.

E. And they that have been scattered shall be gathered; and all they who have mourned shall be comforted; and all they who have given their lives for my name shall be crowned.

F. Therefore, let your hearts be comforted concerning Zion, for all flesh is in mine hands: be still, and know that I am God.

G. Zion shall not be moved out of her place, notwithstanding her children are scattered, they that remain and are pure in heart shall return and come to their inheritances; they and their children, with songs of everlasting joy; to build up the waste places of Zion. And all these things, that the prophets might be fulfilled.

H. And, behold, there is none other place appointed than that which I have appointed, neither shall there be any other place appointed than that which I have appointed for the work of the gathering of my Saints, until the day cometh when there is found no more room for them;

I. and then I have other places which I will appoint unto them, and they shall be called stakes, for the curtains, or the strength of Zion.

5

A. Behold, it is my will, that all they who call on my name, and worship me according to mine everlasting gospel, should gather together and stand in holy places, and prepare for the revelation which is to come when the veil of the covering of my temple, in my tabernacle, which hideth the earth, shall be taken off, and all flesh shall see me together.

B. And every corruptible thing, both of man, or of the beasts of the field, or of the fowls of heaven, or of the fish of the sea, that dwell upon all the face of the earth, shall be consumed; and also, that of element shall melt with fervent heat; and all things shall become new, that my knowledge and glory may dwell upon all the earth.

C. And in that day the enmity of man, and the enmity of beasts; yea, the enmity of all flesh shall cease from before my face.

D. And in that day whatsoever any man shall ask it shall be given unto him.

E. And in that day Satan shall not have power to tempt any man. And there shall be no sorrow because there is no death.

F. In that day an infant shall not die until he is old, and his life shall be as the age of a tree, and when he dies he shall not sleep (that is to say in the earth), but shall be changed in the twinkling of an eye, and shall be caught up, and his rest shall be glorious.

G. Yea, verily I say unto you, In that day when the Lord shall come he shall reveal all things; things which have passed, and hidden things which no man knew; things of the earth by which it was made, and the purpose and the end thereof; things most precious; things that are above, and things that are beneath; things that are in the earth, and upon the earth, and in heaven.

H. And all they who suffer persecution for my name, and endure in faith, though they are called to lay down their lives for my sake, yet shall they partake of all this glory.

I. Wherefore, fear not even unto death; for in this world your joy is not full, but in me your joy is full.

J. Therefore, care not for the body, neither the life of the body; but care for the soul, and for the life of the soul, and seek the face of the Lord always, that in patience ye may possess your souls, and ye shall have eternal life.

K. When men are called unto mine everlasting gospel, and covenant with an everlasting covenant, they are accounted as the salt of the earth, and the savor of men. They are called to be the savor of men.

L. Therefore, if that salt of the earth lose its savor, behold, it is thenceforth good for nothing, only to be cast out and trodden under the feet of men.

M. Behold, here is wisdom concerning the children of Zion; even many, but not all; they were found transgressors, therefore, they must needs be chastened. He that exalteth himself shall be abased, and he that abaseth himself shall be exalted.

6

A. And now, I will show unto you a parable that you may know my will concerning the redemption of Zion.

B. A certain nobleman had a spot of land, very choice; and he said unto his servants, Go ye into my vineyard, even upon this very choice piece of land, and plant twelve olive trees; and set watchmen round about them and build a tower, that one may overlook the land round about, to be a watchman upon the tower;

C. that mine olive trees may not be broken down, when the enemy shall come to spoil and take unto themselves the fruit of my vineyard.

D. Now the servants of the nobleman went and did as their lord commanded them; and planted the olive trees, and built a hedge round about, and set watchmen, and began to build a tower.

E. And while they were yet laying the foundation thereof, they began to say among themselves, And what need hath my lord of this tower? and consulted for a long time, saying among themselves, What need hath my lord of this tower, seeing this is a time of peace?

F. Might not this money be given to the exchangers? for there is no need of these things!

G. And while they were at variance one with another they became very slothful, and they hearkened not unto the commandments of their lord,

H. and the enemy came by night and broke down the hedge, and the servants of the nobleman arose, and were affrighted, and fled; and the enemy destroyed their works and broke down the olive trees.

7

A. Now, behold, the nobleman, the lord of the vineyard, called upon his servants, and said unto them, Why! what is the cause of this great evil? ought ye not to have done even as I commanded you? and after ye had planted the vineyard, and built the hedge round about, and set watchmen upon the walls thereof,

B. built the tower also, and set a watchman upon the tower, and watched for my vineyard, and not have fallen asleep, lest the enemy should come upon you?

C. and, behold, the watchman upon the tower would have seen the enemy while he was yet afar off, and then you could have made ready and kept the enemy from breaking down the hedge thereof, and saved my vineyard from the hands of the destroyer.

D. And the lord of the vineyard said unto one of his servants, Go, and gather together the residue of my servants; and take all the strength of mine house, which are my warriors, my young men, and they that are of middle age also, among all my servants, who are the strength of mine house, save those only whom I have appointed to tarry;

E. and go ye straightway unto the land of my vineyard, and redeem my vineyard, for it is mine, I have bought it with money.

F. Therefore, get ye straightway unto my land; break down the walls of mine enemies, throw down their tower, and scatter their watchmen;

G. and inasmuch as they gather together against you, avenge me of mine enemies; that by and by I may come with the residue of mine house and possess the land.

8

A. And the servant said unto his lord, When shall these things be?

B. And he said unto his servants, When I will: go ye straightway, and do all things whatsoever I have commanded you; and this shall be my seal and blessing upon you; a faithful and wise steward in the midst of mine house; a ruler in my kingdom.

C. And his servant went straightway, and did all things whatsoever his lord commanded him, and after many days all things were fulfilled.

9

A. Again, verily I say unto you, I will show unto you wisdom in me concerning all the churches, inasmuch as they are willing to be guided in a right and proper way for their salvation, that the work of the gathering together of my Saints may continue, that I may build them up unto my name upon holy places; for the time of harvest is come, and my word must needs be fulfilled.

B. Therefore, I must gather together my people according to the parable of the wheat and the tares, that the wheat may be secured in the garners to possess eternal life, and be crowned with celestial glory when I shall come in the kingdom of my Father, to reward every man according as his work shall be;

C. while the tares shall be bound in bundles, and their bands made strong, that they may be burned with unquenchable fire.

D. Therefore, a commandment I give unto all the churches, that they shall continue to gather together unto the places which I have appointed;

E. nevertheless, as I have said unto you in a former commandment, let not your gathering be in haste, nor by flight; but let all things be prepared before you;

F. and in order that all things be prepared before you, observe the commandments which I have given concerning these things, which saith, or teacheth, to purchase all the lands by money, which can be purchased for money, in the region round about the land which I have appointed to be the land of Zion, for the beginning of the gathering of my Saints;

G. all the land which can be purchased in Jackson County, and the counties round about, and leave the residue in mine hand.

10

A. Now, verily I say unto you, Let all the churches gather together all their moneys; let these things be done in their time, be not in haste; and observe to have all things prepared before you.

B. And let honorable men be appointed, even wise men, and send them to purchase these lands; and every church in the eastern countries when they are built up, if they will hearken unto this counsel, they may buy lands and gather together upon them, and in this way they may establish Zion.

C. There is even now already in store a sufficient, yea, even abundance to redeem Zion, and establish her waste places, no more to be thrown down, were the churches, who call themselves after my name, willing to hearken to my voice.

D. And again I say unto you, Those who have been scattered by their enemies, it is my will that they should continue to importune for redress, and redemption, by the hands of those who are placed as rulers, and are in authority over you,

E. according to the laws and constitution of the people which I have suffered to be established, and should be maintained for the rights and protection of all flesh, according to just and holy principles, that every man may act in doctrine, and principle pertaining to futurity,

F. according to the moral agency which I have given unto them, that every man may be accountable for his own sins in the day of judgment.

G. Therefore, it is not right that any man should be in bondage one to another.

H. And for this purpose have I established the constitution of this land, by the hands of wise men whom I raised up unto this very purpose, and redeemed the land by the shedding of blood.

11

A. Now, unto what shall I liken the children of Zion?

B. I will liken them unto the parable of the woman and the unjust judge (for men ought always to pray and not faint), which saith, There was in a city a judge which feared not God, neither regarded man.

C. And there was a widow in that city, and she came unto him, saying, Avenge me of mine adversary.

D. And he would not for a while, but afterward he said within himself, Though I fear not God, nor regard men, yet because this widow troubleth me I will avenge her, lest by her continual coming, she weary me. Thus will I liken the children of Zion.

12

A. Let them importune at the feet of the judge; and if he heed them not, let them importune at the feet of the governor; and if the governor heed them not, let them importune at the feet of the president;

B. and if the president heed them not, then will the Lord arise and come forth out of his hiding place, and in his fury vex the nation, and in his hot displeasure, and in his fierce anger, in his time, will cut off these wicked, unfaithful, and unjust stewards, and appoint them their portion among hypocrites and unbelievers; even in outer darkness, where there is weeping, and wailing, and gnashing of teeth.

C. Pray ye, therefore, that their ears may be opened unto your cries, that I may be merciful unto them, that these things may not come upon them.

D. What I have said unto you, must needs be, that all men may be left without excuse; that wise men and rulers may hear and know that which they have never considered;

E. that I may proceed to bring to pass my act, my strange act, and perform my work, my strange work. That men may discern between the righteous and the wicked, saith your God.

A. And again, I say unto you, It is contrary to my commandment, and my will, that my servant Sidney Gilbert should sell my storehouse, which I have appointed unto my people, into the hands of mine enemies.

B. Let not that which I have appointed, be polluted by mine enemies, by the consent of those who call themselves after my name; for this is a very sore and grievous sin against me, and against my people, in consequence of those things which I have decreed, and are soon to befall the nations.

C. Therefore, it is my will that my people should claim, and hold claim, upon that which I have appointed unto them, though they should not be permitted to dwell thereon;

D. nevertheless, I do not say they shall not dwell thereon; for inasmuch as they bring forth fruit and works meet for my kingdom, they shall dwell thereon;

E. they shall build, and another shall not inherit it; they shall plant vineyards, and they shall eat the fruit thereof. Even so. Amen.

Section 99

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. This day a general council of twenty-four high priests assembled at the house of Joseph Smith, Jr., by revelation, and proceeded to organize the high council of the church of Christ, which was to consist of twelve high priests, and one or three presidents, as the case might require.

B. This high council was appointed by revelation for the purpose of settling important difficulties, which might arise in the church, which could not be settled by the church, or the bishop's council, to the satisfaction of the parties.

2

A. Joseph Smith, Jr., Sidney Rigdon, and Frederick G. Williams, were acknowledged presidents by the voice of the council; and Joseph Smith, Sr., John Smith, Joseph Coe, John Johnson, Martin Harris, John S. Carter, Jared Carter, Oliver Cowdery, Samuel H. Smith, Orson Hyde, Sylvester Smith, and Luke Johnson, high priests, were chosen to be a standing council for the church, by the unanimous voice of the council.

B. The above-named councilors were then asked whether they accepted their appointments, and whether they would act in that office according to the law of heaven;

C. to which they all answered, that they accepted their appointments, and would fill their offices according to the grace of God bestowed upon them.

3

The number composing the council, who voted in the name and for the church in appointing the above-named councilors, were forty-three, as follows: nine high priests, seventeen elders, four priests, and thirteen members.

4

A. Voted: that the high council cannot have power to act without seven of the above-named councilors, or their regularly appointed successors, are present.

B. These seven shall have power to appoint other high priests, whom they may consider worthy and capable, to act in the place of absent councilors.

5

- A.** Voted: that whenever any vacancy shall occur by the death, removal from office for transgression, or removal from the bounds of this church government, of any of the above-named councilors,
- B.** it shall be filled by the nomination of the president or presidents, and sanctioned by the voice of a general council of high priests, convened for that purpose, to act in the name of the church.

6

- A.** The president of the church, who is also the president of the council, is appointed by revelation, and acknowledged, in his administration, by the voice of the church;
- B.** and it is according to the dignity of his office, that he should preside over the high council of the church; and it is his privilege to be assisted by two other presidents, appointed after the same manner that he himself was appointed;
- C.** and in case of the absence of one or both of those who are appointed to assist him, he has power to preside over the council without an assistant; and in case that he himself is absent, the other presidents have power to preside in his stead, both or either of them.

7

Whenever a high council of the church of Christ is regularly organized, according to the foregoing pattern, it shall be the duty of the twelve councilors to cast lots by numbers, and thereby ascertain who, of the twelve, shall speak first, commencing with number 1; and so in succession to number 12.

8

- A.** Whenever this council convenes to act upon any case, the twelve councilors shall consider whether it is a difficult one or not; if it is not, two only of the councilors shall speak upon it, according to the form above written.
- B.** But if it is thought to be difficult, four shall be appointed; and if more difficult, six; but in no case shall more than six be appointed to speak.
- C.** The accused, in all cases, has a right to one half of the council, to prevent insult or injustice; and the councilors appointed to speak before the council, are to present the case, after the evidence is examined, in its true light, before the council; and every man is to speak according to equity and justice.
- D.** Those councilors who draw even numbers, that is, 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, and 12, are the individuals who are to stand up in the behalf of the accused, and prevent insult or injustice.

9

- A.** In all cases the accuser and the accused shall have a privilege of speaking for themselves, before the council, after the evidences are heard, and the councilors who are appointed to speak on the case, have finished their remarks.
- B.** After the evidences are heard, the councilors, accuser, and accused have spoken, the president shall give a decision according to the understanding which he shall have of the case, and call upon the twelve councilors to sanction the same by their vote.
- C.** But should the remaining councilors, who have not spoken, or any one of them, after hearing the evidences and pleadings impartially, discover an error in the decision of the president, they can manifest it, and the case shall have a rehearing;
- D.** and if, after a careful rehearing, any additional light is shown upon the case, the decision shall be altered accordingly; but in case no additional light is given, the first decision shall stand, the majority of the council having power to determine the same.

10

In cases of difficulty respecting doctrine, or principle (if there is not a sufficiency written to make a case clear to the minds of the council), the president may inquire and obtain the mind of the Lord by revelation.

11

- A.** The high priests, when abroad, have power to call and organize a council after the manner of the foregoing, to settle difficulties when the parties, or either of them, shall request it;
- B.** and the said council of high priests shall have power to appoint one of their own number, to preside over such council for the time being.
- C.** It shall be the duty of said council to transmit, immediately, a copy of their proceedings, with a full statement of the testimony accompanying their decision, to the high council of the seat of the first presidency of the church.
- D.** Should the parties, or either of them, be dissatisfied with the decision of said council, they may appeal to the high council of the seat of the first presidency of the church, and have a rehearing, which case shall there be conducted, according to the former pattern written, as though no such decision had been made.

12

- A.** This council of high priests abroad, is only to be called on the most difficult cases of church matters; and no common or ordinary case is to be sufficient to call such council.

B. The traveling or located high priests abroad, have power to say whether it is necessary to call such a council or not.

13

A. There is a distinction between the high council of traveling high priests abroad, and the traveling high council composed of the twelve apostles, in their decisions: from the decision of the former there can be an appeal, but from the decision of the latter there cannot.

B. The latter can only be called in question by the general authorities of the church in case of transgression.

14

Resolved, that the president, or presidents of the seat of the first presidency of the church, shall have power to determine whether any such case, as may be appealed, is justly entitled to a rehearing, after examining the appeal and the evidences and statements accompanying it.

15

A. The twelve councilors then proceeded to cast lots, or ballot, to ascertain who should speak first, and the following was the result, namely:

B. Oliver Cowdery, No. 1

Joseph Coe, No. 2

Samuel H. Smith, No. 3

Luke Johnson, No. 4

John S. Carter, No. 5

Sylvester Smith, No. 6

John Johnson, No. 7

Orson Hyde, No. 8

Jared Carter, No. 9

Joseph Smith, Sr., No. 10

John Smith, No. 11

Martin Harris, No. 12

C. After prayer the conference adjourned.

Oliver Cowdery,

Orson Hyde

Clerks

Section 100

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Verily I say unto you, my friends, Behold, I will give unto you a revelation and commandment, that you may know how to act in the discharge of your duties concerning the salvation and redemption of your brethren, who have been scattered on the land of Zion, being driven and smitten by the hands of mine enemies; on whom I will pour out my wrath without measure in mine own time;

B. for I have suffered them thus far, that they might fill up the measure of their iniquities, that their cup might be full, and that those who call themselves after my name might be chastened for a little season, with a sore and grievous chastisement, because they did not hearken altogether unto the precepts and commandments which I gave unto them.

2

A. But verily I say unto you, that I have decreed a decree which my people shall realize, inasmuch as they hearken from this very hour, unto the counsel which I, the Lord, their God, shall give unto them.

B. Behold, they shall, for I have decreed it, begin to prevail against mine enemies from this very hour, and by hearkening to observe all the words which I, the Lord their God, shall speak unto them, they shall never cease to prevail until the kingdoms of the world are subdued under my feet; and the earth is given unto the saints, to possess it for ever and ever.

C. But inasmuch as they keep not my commandments, and hearken not to observe all my words, the kingdoms of the world shall prevail against them, for they were set to be a light unto the world, and to be the saviors of men;

D. and inasmuch as they are not the saviors of men, they are as salt that has lost its savor, and is thenceforth good for nothing but to be cast out and trodden under foot of men.

3

A. But verily I say unto you, I have decreed that your brethren, which have been scattered, shall return to the land of their inheritances and build up the waste places of Zion; for after much tribulation, as I have said unto you in a former commandment, cometh the blessing.

B. Behold, this is the blessing which I have promised after your tribulations, and the tribulations of your brethren; your redemption, and the redemption of your brethren; even their restoration to the land of Zion, to be established, no more to be thrown down;

C. nevertheless, if they pollute their inheritances, they shall be thrown down; for I will not spare them if they pollute their inheritances.

D. Behold, I say unto you, The redemption of Zion must needs come by power; therefore I will raise up unto my people a man, who shall lead them like as Moses led the children of Israel, for ye are the children of Israel, and of the seed of Abraham;

E. and ye must needs be led out of bondage by power, and with a stretched out arm; and as your fathers were led at the first, even so shall the redemption of Zion be.

F. Therefore, let not your hearts faint, for I say not unto you as I said unto your fathers, Mine angel shall go up before you, but not my presence; but I say unto you, Mine angels shall go before you, and also my presence, and in time ye shall possess the goodly land.

4

Verily, verily I say unto you, that my servant Joseph Smith Jr. is the man to whom I likened the servant to whom the Lord of the vineyard spoke in the parable which I have given unto you.

5

A. Therefore, let my servant Joseph Smith Jr. say unto the strength of my house, my young men and the middle-aged, Gather yourselves together unto the land of Zion, upon the land which I have bought with moneys that have been consecrated unto me;

B. and let all the churches send up wise men, with their moneys, and purchase lands even as I have commanded them; and inasmuch as mine enemies come against you to drive you from my goodly land, which I have consecrated to be the land of Zion;

C. even from your own lands after these testimonies, which ye have brought before me, against them, ye shall curse them; and whomsoever ye curse, I will curse; and ye shall avenge me of mine enemies; and my presence shall be with you, even in avenging me of mine enemies, unto the third and fourth generation of them that hate me.

6

A. Let no man be afraid to lay down his life for my sake; for whoso layeth down his life for my sake, shall find it again. And whoso is not willing to lay down his life for my sake, is not my disciple.

B. It is my will that my servant Sidney Rigdon shall lift up his voice in the congregations, in the eastern countries, in preparing the churches to keep the commandments which I have given unto them, concerning the restoration and redemption of Zion.

C. It is my will that my servant Parley P. Pratt, and my servant Lyman Wight should not return to the land of their brethren, until they have obtained companies to go up unto the land of Zion, by

tens, or by twenties, or by fifties, or by an hundred, until they have obtained to the number of five hundred of the strength of my house.

D. Behold, this is my will; ask and you shall receive, but men do not always do my will; therefore, if you cannot obtain five hundred, seek diligently that peradventure you may obtain three hundred;

E. and if ye cannot obtain three hundred, seek diligently that peradventure ye may obtain one hundred.

F. But verily I say unto you, A commandment I give unto you, that ye shall not go up unto the land of Zion, until you have obtained one hundred of the strength of my house, to go up with you unto the land of Zion.

G. Therefore, as I said unto you, Ask and ye shall receive; pray earnestly that peradventure my servant Joseph Smith Jr. may go with you and preside in the midst of my people, and organize my kingdom upon the consecrated land; and establish the children of Zion, upon the laws and commandments which have been, and which shall be given, unto you.

7

A. All victory and glory is brought to pass unto you through your diligence, faithfulness, and prayers of faith.

B. Let my servant Parley P. Pratt, journey with my servant Joseph Smith, Jr. Let my servant Lyman Wight, journey with my servant Sidney Rigdon. Let my servant Hyrum Smith, journey with my servant Frederick G. Williams.

C. Let my servant Orson Hyde, journey with my servant Orson Pratt; whithersoever my servant Joseph Smith, Jr., shall counsel them in obtaining the fulfillment of these commandments, which I have given unto you, and leave the residue in my hands. Even so. Amen.

Section 101

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Verily I say unto you, my friends, I give unto you counsel and a commandment, concerning all the properties which belong to the order, which I commanded to be organized and established, to be an united order, and an everlasting order for the benefit of my church, and for the salvation of men until I come,

B. with promise immutable and unchangeable, that inasmuch as those whom I commanded were faithful, they should be blessed with a multiplicity of blessings; but inasmuch as they were not faithful, they were nigh unto cursing.

C. Therefore, inasmuch as some of my servants have not kept the commandment, but have broken the covenant, by covetousness and with feigned words, I have cursed them with a very sore and grievous curse;

D. for I, the Lord, have decreed in my heart, that inasmuch as any man, belonging to the order, shall be found a transgressor; or, in other words, shall break the covenant with which ye are bound, he shall be cursed in his life, and shall be trodden down by whom I will, for I, the Lord, am not to be mocked in these things;

E. and all this that the innocent among you, may not be condemned with the unjust; and that the guilty among you may not escape, because I, the Lord, have promised unto you a crown of glory at my right hand.

F. Therefore, inasmuch as you are found transgressors, ye cannot escape my wrath in your lives; inasmuch as ye are cut off by transgression, ye cannot escape the buffetings of Satan until the day of redemption.

2

A. And now I give unto you power from this very hour, that if any man among you, of the order, is found a transgressor, and repenteth not of the evil, that ye shall deliver him over unto the buffetings of Satan; and he shall not have power to bring evil upon you.

B. It is wisdom in me; therefore, a commandment I give unto you, that ye shall organize yourselves, and appoint every man his stewardship, that every man may give an account unto me of the stewardship which is appointed unto him;

C. for it is expedient that I, the Lord, should make every man accountable, as stewards over earthly blessings, which I have made and prepared for my creatures.

D. I, the Lord, stretched out the heavens, and builded the earth as a very handy work; and all things therein are mine; and it is my purpose to provide for my saints, for all things are mine; but it must needs be done in mine own way;

E. and, behold, this is the way, that I, the Lord, have decreed to provide for my saints;

F. that the poor shall be exalted, in that the rich are made low; for the earth is full, and there is enough and to spare; yea, I prepared all things, and have given unto the children of men to be agents unto themselves.

G. Therefore, if any man shall take of the abundance which I have made, and impart not his portion, according to the law of my gospel, unto the poor, and the needy, he shall, with the wicked, lift up his eyes in hell, being in torment.

3

A. And now, verily I say unto you, concerning the properties of the order:

B. Let my servant Sidney Rigdon have appointed unto him the place where he now resides, and the lot of the tannery, for his stewardship, for his support while he is laboring in my vineyard, even as I will when I shall command him;

C. and let all things be done according to counsel of the order, and united consent, or voice of the order, which dwell in the land of Kirtland.

D. And this stewardship and blessing, I, the Lord, confer upon my servant Sidney Rigdon, for a blessing upon him, and his seed after him, and I will multiply blessings upon him, inasmuch as he shall be humble before me.

4

A. And again, let my servant Martin Harris have appointed unto him, for his stewardship, the lot of land which my servant John Johnson obtained in exchange for his former inheritance, for him and his seed after him; and inasmuch as he is faithful, I will multiply blessings upon him and his seed after him.

B. And let my servant Martin Harris devote his moneys for the printing of my words, according as my servant Joseph Smith Jr. shall direct.

5

A. And again, let my servant Frederick G. Williams have the place upon which he now dwells.

B. And let my servant Oliver Cowdery have the lot which is set off joining the house which is to be for the printing office, which is lot number one; and also the lot upon which his father resides.

C. And let my servant Frederick G. Williams and Oliver Cowdery have the printing office and all things that pertain unto it; and this shall be their stewardship which shall be appointed unto them; and inasmuch as they are faithful, behold, I will bless, and multiply blessings upon them;

D. and this is the beginning of the stewardship which I have appointed them, for them and their seed after them; and inasmuch as they are faithful, I will multiply blessings upon them and their seed after them; even a multiplicity of blessings.

6

A. And again, let my servant John Johnson have the house in which he lives, and the inheritance, all save the ground which has been reserved for the building of my houses, which pertains to that inheritance; and those lots which have been named for my servant Oliver Cowdery.

B. And inasmuch as he is faithful, I will multiply blessings upon him.

C. And it is my will that he should sell the lots that are laid off for the building up of the city of my Saints, inasmuch as it shall be made known to him by the voice of the Spirit, and according to the counsel of the order; and by the voice of the order.

D. And this is the beginning of the stewardship which I have appointed unto him, for a blessing unto him, and his seed after him; and inasmuch as he is faithful, I will multiply a multiplicity of blessings upon him.

7

A. And again, let my servant Newel K. Whitney have appointed unto him, the houses and lot where he now resides, and the lot and building on which the store stands; and also the lot which is on the corner south of the store; and also the lot on which the ashery is situated;

B. and all this I have appointed unto my servant Newel K. Whitney, for his stewardship, for a blessing upon him and his seed after him, for the benefit of the mercantile of my order, which I have established for my stake in the land of Kirtland;

C. yea, verily this is the stewardship which I have appointed unto my servant Newel K. Whitney; even this whole mercantile establishment, him and his agent, and his seed after him;

D. and inasmuch as he is faithful in keeping my commandments, which I have given unto him, I will multiply blessings upon him, and his seed after him, even a multiplicity of blessings.

8

A. And again, let my servant Joseph Smith Jr. have appointed unto him, the lot which is laid off for the building of my house, which is forty rods long, and twelve wide, and also the inheritance upon which his father now resides;

B. and this is the beginning of the stewardship which I have appointed unto him, for a blessing upon him, and upon his father; for, behold, I have reserved an inheritance for his father, for his support:

C. therefore he shall be reckoned in the house of my servant Joseph Smith Jr., and I will multiply blessings upon the house of my servant Joseph Smith Jr., inasmuch as he is faithful, even a multiplicity of blessings.

9

A. And now a commandment I give unto you concerning Zion, that you shall no longer be bound as an united order to your brethren of Zion, only on this wise: after you are organized, you shall be called the united order of the stake of Zion, the city of Kirtland.

B. And your brethren, after they are organized, shall be called the united order of the city of Zion; and they shall be organized in their own names, and in their own name; and they shall do their business in their own name, and in their own names; and you shall do your business in your own name, and in your own names.

C. And this I have commanded to be done for your salvation, and also for their salvation in consequence of their being driven out, and that which is to come.

D. The covenants being broken through transgression, by covetousness and feigned words; therefore, you are dissolved as a united order with your brethren, that you are not bound only up to this hour, unto them, only on this wise, as I said, by loan, as shall be agreed by this order, in council, as your circumstances will admit, and the voice of the council direct.

10

A. And again, a commandment I give unto you concerning your stewardship which I have appointed unto you;

B. behold, all these properties are mine, or else your faith is vain, and ye are found hypocrites, and the covenants which ye have made unto me are broken; and if the properties are mine then ye are stewards, otherwise ye are no stewards.

C. But verily I say unto you, I have appointed unto you to be stewards over mine house, even stewards indeed; and for this purpose I have commanded you to organize yourselves, even to shinelah my words, the fullness of my Scriptures, the revelations which I have given unto you, and which I shall hereafter, from time to time, give unto you,

D. for the purpose of building up my church and kingdom on the earth, and to prepare my people for the time when I shall dwell with them, which is nigh at hand.

11

A. And ye shall prepare for yourselves a place for a treasury, and consecrate it unto my name; and ye shall appoint one among you to keep the treasury, and he shall be ordained unto this blessing;

B. and there shall be a seal upon the treasury, and all the sacred things shall be delivered into the treasury, and no man among you shall call it his own, or any part of it, for it shall belong to you all with one accord; and I give it unto you from this very hour;

C. and now see to it, that ye go to and make use of the stewardship which I have appointed unto you, exclusive of the sacred things, for the purpose of printing these sacred things, as I have said;

D. and the avails of the sacred things shall be had in the treasury, and a seal shall be upon it, and it shall not be used or taken out of the treasury by anyone, neither shall the seal be loosed which shall be placed upon it, only by the voice of the order, or by commandment.

E. And thus shall ye preserve all the avails of the sacred things in the treasury, for sacred and holy purposes; and this shall be called the sacred treasury of the Lord; and a seal shall be kept upon it, that it may be holy and consecrated unto the Lord.

12

A. And again, there shall be another treasury prepared and a treasurer appointed to keep the treasury, and a seal shall be placed upon it;

B. and all moneys that you receive in your stewardships, by improving upon the properties which I have appointed unto you, in houses or in lands, or in cattle, or in all things save it be the holy and sacred writings, which I have reserved unto myself for holy and sacred purposes,

C. shall be cast into the treasury as fast as you receive moneys, by hundreds or by fifties, or by twenties, or by tens, or by fives, or in other words, if any man among you obtain five dollars let him cast them into the treasury;

D. or if he obtain ten, or twenty, or fifty, or an hundred, let him do likewise; and let not any man among you say that it is his own, for it shall not be called his, nor any part of it;

E. and there shall not any part of it be used, or taken out of the treasury, only by the voice and common consent of the order.

F. And this shall be the voice and common consent of the order: that any man among you, say unto the treasurer, I have need of this to help me in my stewardship;

G. if it be five dollars, or if it be ten dollars, or twenty, or fifty, or an hundred, the treasurer shall give unto him the sum which he requires, to help him in his stewardship, until he be found a

transgressor, and it is manifest before the council of the order plainly, that he is an unfaithful and an unwise steward;

H. but so long as he is in full fellowship, and is faithful, and wise in his stewardship, this shall be his token unto the treasurer that the treasurer shall not withhold.

I. But in case of transgression the treasurer shall be subject unto the counsel and voice of the order.

J. And in case the treasurer is found an unfaithful, and an unwise steward, he shall be subject to the counsel and voice of the order, and shall be removed out of his place, and another shall be appointed in his stead.

13

A. And again, verily I say unto you, concerning your debts,

B. Behold, it is my will that you should pay all your debts; and it is my will that you should humble yourselves before me, and obtain this blessing by your diligence and humility, and the prayer of faith;

C. and inasmuch as you are diligent and humble, and exercise the prayer of faith, behold, I will soften the hearts of those to whom you are in debt, until I shall send means unto you for your deliverance.

D. Therefore write speedily unto New York, and write according to that which shall be dictated by my Spirit, and I will soften the hearts of those to whom you are in debt, that it shall be taken away out of their minds to bring affliction upon you.

E. And inasmuch as ye are humble and faithful and call on my name, behold, I will give you the victory.

F. I give unto you a promise, that you shall be delivered this once, out of your bondage; inasmuch as you obtain a chance to loan [borrow] money by hundreds, or thousands, even until you shall loan [borrow] enough to deliver yourselves from bondage, it is your privilege, and pledge the properties which I have put into your hands, this once, by giving your names, by common consent, or otherwise, as it shall seem good unto you.

G. I give unto you this privilege, this once, and, behold, if you proceed to do the things which I have laid before you, according to my commandments, all these things are mine, and ye are my stewards, and the master will not suffer his house to be broken up. Even so. Amen.

Section 102

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

Verily I say unto you, who have assembled yourselves together that you may learn my will concerning the redemption of mine afflicted people:

2

A. Behold, I say unto you, Were it not for the transgressions of my people, speaking concerning the church and not individuals, they might have been redeemed even now;

B. but, behold, they have not learned to be obedient to the things which I require at their hands, but are full of all manner of evil, and do not impart of their substance, as becometh Saints, to the poor and afflicted among them, and are not united according to the union required by the law of the celestial kingdom;

C. and Zion cannot be built up unless it is by the principles of the law of the celestial kingdom, otherwise I cannot receive her unto myself;

D. and my people must needs be chastened until they learn obedience, if it must needs be, by the things which they suffer.

3

A. I speak not concerning those who are appointed to lead my people, who are the first elders of my church, for they are not all under this condemnation; but I speak concerning my churches abroad;

B. there are many who will say, Where is their God? Behold, he will deliver in time of trouble; otherwise we will not go up unto Zion, and will keep our moneys.

C. Therefore, in consequence of the transgression of my people, it is expedient in me that mine elders should wait for a little season for the redemption of Zion, that they themselves may be prepared, and that my people may be taught more perfectly, and have experience, and know more perfectly, concerning their duty, and the things which I require at their hands;

D. and this cannot be brought to pass until mine elders are endowed with power from on high;

E. for, behold, I have prepared a great endowment and blessing to be poured out upon them, inasmuch as they are faithful, and continue in humility before me;

F. therefore, it is expedient in me that mine elders should wait for a little season, for the redemption of Zion; for, behold, I do not require at their hands to fight the battles of Zion; for, as I said in a former commandment, even so will I fulfill, I will fight your battles.

4

A. Behold, the destroyer I have sent forth to destroy and lay waste mine enemies;

B. and not many years hence, they shall not be left to pollute mine heritage, and to blaspheme my name upon the lands which I have consecrated for the gathering together of my Saints.

5

A. Behold, I have commanded my servant Joseph Smith Jr., to say unto the strength of my house, even my warriors, my young men and middle-aged, to gather together for the redemption of my people, and throw down the towers of mine enemies, and scatter their watchmen;

B. but the strength of mine house have not hearkened unto my words; but inasmuch as there are those who have hearkened unto my words, I have prepared a blessing and an endowment for them, if they continue faithful.

C. I have heard their prayers, and will accept their offering; and it is expedient in me, that they should be brought thus far, for a trial of their faith.

6

A. And now, verily I say unto you, A commandment I give unto you, that as many as have come up hither, that can stay in the region round about, let them stay;

B. and those that cannot stay, who have families in the east, let them tarry for a little season, inasmuch as my servant Joseph shall appoint unto them, for I will counsel him concerning this matter; and all things whatsoever he shall appoint unto them shall be fulfilled.

7

A. And let all my people who dwell in the regions round about, be very faithful, and prayerful, and humble before me, and reveal not the things which I have revealed unto them, until it is wisdom in me that they should be revealed.

B. Talk not judgment, neither boast of faith, nor of mighty works; but carefully gather together, as much in one region as can be consistently with the feelings of the people:

C. and, behold, I will give unto you favor and grace in their eyes, that you may rest in peace and safety, while you are saying unto the people, Execute judgment and justice for us according to law, and redress us of our wrongs.

8

A. Now, behold, I say unto you, my friends, in this way you may find favor in the eyes of the people, until the army of Israel becomes very great;

B. and I will soften the hearts of the people, as I did the heart of Pharaoh, from time to time, until my servant Joseph Smith Jr. and mine elders, whom I have appointed, shall have time to gather up the strength of my house, and to have sent wise men, to fulfill that which I have commanded concerning the purchasing of all the lands in Jackson County, that can be purchased, and in the adjoining counties round about; for it is my will that these lands be purchased, and after they are purchased that my Saints should possess them according to the laws of consecration which I have given;

C. and after these lands are purchased, I will hold the armies of Israel guiltless in taking possession of their own lands, which they have previously purchased with their moneys, and of throwing down the towers of mine enemies, that may be upon them,

D. and scattering their watchmen, and avenging me of mine enemies, unto the third and fourth generation of them that hate me.

9

A. But firstly, let my army become very great, and let it be sanctified before me, that it may become fair as the sun, and clear as the moon, and that her banners may be terrible unto all nations;

B. that the kingdoms of this world may be constrained to acknowledge that the kingdom of Zion is in very deed the kingdom of our God and his Christ; therefore, let us become subject unto her laws.

10

A. Verily I say unto you, It is expedient in me that the first elders of my church should receive their endowment from on high, in my house, which I have commanded to be built unto my name in the land of Kirtland;

B. and let those commandments which I have given concerning Zion and her law, be executed and fulfilled, after her redemption.

C. There has been a day of calling, but the time has come for a day of choosing; and let those be chosen that are worthy; and it shall be manifest unto my servant, by the voice of the Spirit, those that are chosen, and they shall be sanctified;

D. and inasmuch as they follow the counsel which they receive, they shall have power after many days to accomplish all things pertaining to Zion.

- A.** And again, I say unto you, Sue for peace, not only the people that have smitten you, but also to all people;
- B.** and lift up an ensign of peace, and make a proclamation for peace unto the ends of the earth;
- C.** and make proposals for peace, unto those who have smitten you, according to the voice of the Spirit which is in you, and all things shall work together for your good;
- D.** therefore, be faithful, and, behold, and lo, I am with you even unto the end. Even so. Amen.

Section 103

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. It is my will that my servant, Warren A. Cowdery, should be appointed and ordained a presiding high priest over my church in the land of Freedom, and the regions round about, and should preach my everlasting gospel, and lift up his voice and warn the people, not only in his own place, but in the adjoining countries,

B. and devote his whole time in this high and holy calling which I now give unto him, seeking diligently the kingdom of heaven and its righteousness, and all things necessary shall be added thereunto; for the laborer is worthy of his hire.

2

And again, verily I say unto you, The coming of the Lord draweth nigh, and it overtaketh the world as a thief in the night; therefore, gird up your loins that you may be the children of the light, and that day shall not overtake you as a thief.

3

A. And again, verily I say unto you, There was joy in heaven when my servant, Warren, bowed to my scepter, and separated himself from the crafts of men;

B. therefore, blessed is my servant, Warren, for I will have mercy on him, and notwithstanding the vanity of his heart, I will lift him up inasmuch as he will humble himself before me; and I will give him grace and assurance wherewith he may stand;

C. and if he continues to be a faithful witness and a light unto the church, I have prepared a crown for him in the mansions of my Father. Even so. Amen.

Section 104

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

- A.** There are, in the church, two priesthoods; namely: the Melchisedec, and the Aaronic, including the Levitical priesthood.
- B.** Why the first is called the Melchisedec priesthood, is because Melchisedec was such a great high priest: before his day it was called the holy priesthood, after the order of the Son of God;
- C.** but out of respect or reverence to the name of the Supreme Being, to avoid the too frequent repetition of his name, they, the church, in ancient days, called that priesthood after Melchisedec, or the Melchisedec priesthood.

2

All other authorities, or offices in the church are appendages to this priesthood; but there are two divisions, or grand heads—one is the Melchisedec priesthood, and the other is the Aaronic, or Levitical priesthood.

3

- A.** The office of an elder comes under the priesthood of Melchisedec.
- B.** The Melchisedec priesthood holds the right of presidency, and has power and authority over all the offices in the church, in all ages of the world, to administer in spiritual things.

4

The presidency of the high priesthood, after the order of Melchisedec, have a right to officiate in all the offices in the church.

5

High priests, after the order of the Melchisedec priesthood, have a right to officiate in their own standing, under the direction of the Presidency, in administering spiritual things, and also in the office of an elder, priest (of the Levitical order), teacher, deacon, and member.

6

An elder has a right to officiate in his stead when the high priest is not present.

7

The high priest and elder are to administer in spiritual things, agreeably to the covenants and commandments of the church; and they have a right to officiate in all these offices of the church when there are no higher authorities present.

8

A. The second priesthood is called the priesthood of Aaron, because it was conferred upon Aaron and his seed, throughout all their generations.

B. Why it is called the lesser priesthood is, because it is an appendage to the greater, or the Melchisedec priesthood, and has power in administering outward ordinances.

C. The bishopric is the presidency of this priesthood, and holds the keys or authority of the same. No man has a legal right to this office, to hold the keys of this priesthood, except he be a literal descendant of Aaron.

D. But as a high priest of the Melchisedec priesthood has authority to officiate in all the lesser offices, he may officiate in the office of bishop when no literal descendant of Aaron can be found, provided he is called and set apart and ordained unto this power by the hands of the Presidency of the Melchisedec priesthood.

9

A. The power and authority of the higher, or Melchisedec, priesthood, is to hold the keys of all the spiritual blessings of the church; to have the privilege of receiving the mysteries of the kingdom of heaven; to have the heavens opened unto them;

B. to commune with the general assembly and church of the Firstborn; and to enjoy the communion and presence of God the Father, and Jesus the Mediator of the new covenant.

10

The power and authority of the lesser, or Aaronic, priesthood is, to hold the keys of the ministering of angels, and to administer in outward ordinances—the letter of the gospel—the baptism of repentance for the remission of sins, agreeably to the covenants and commandments.

11

A. Of necessity, there are presidents, or presiding offices, growing out of, or appointed of, or from among those who are ordained to the several offices in these two priesthoods.

B. Of the Melchisedec priesthood, three presiding high priests, chosen by the body, appointed and ordained to that office, and upheld by the confidence, faith, and prayer of the church, form a quorum of the Presidency of the church.

C. The twelve traveling councilors are called to be the Twelve Apostles, or special witnesses of the name of Christ, in all the world; thus differing from other officers in the church in the duties of their calling.

D. And they form a quorum equal in authority and power to the three presidents previously mentioned.

E. The seventy are also called to preach the gospel, and to be especial witnesses unto the Gentiles and in all the world—thus differing from other officers in the church in the duties of their calling; and they form a quorum equal in authority to that of the twelve especial witnesses, or apostles, just named.

F. And every decision made by either of these quorums must be by the unanimous voice of the same; that is, every member in each quorum must be agreed to its decisions, in order to make their decisions of the same power or validity one with the other.

G. (A majority may form a quorum, when circumstances render it impossible to be otherwise.)

H. Unless this is the case, their decisions are not entitled to the same blessings which the decisions of a quorum of three presidents were anciently, who were ordained after the order of Melchisedec, and were righteous and holy men.

I. The decisions of these quorums, or either of them, are to be made in all righteousness, in holiness and lowliness of heart, meekness and longsuffering, and in faith and virtue and knowledge; temperance, patience, godliness, brotherly kindness, and charity, because the promise is, if these things abound in them, they shall not be unfruitful in the knowledge of the Lord.

J. And in case that any decision of these quorums is made in unrighteousness, it may be brought before a general assembly of the several quorums which constitute the spiritual authorities of the church, otherwise there can be no appeal from their decision.

12

The Twelve are a traveling, presiding high council, to officiate in the name of the Lord, under the direction of the Presidency of the church, agreeably to the institution of heaven, to build up the church and regulate all the affairs of the same, in all nations; first unto the Gentiles, and secondly unto the Jews.

13

A. The Seventy are to act in the name of the Lord, under the direction of the Twelve, or the traveling high council, in building up the church, and regulating all the affairs of the same, in all nations; first unto the Gentiles, and then to the Jews;

B. the Twelve being sent out, holding the keys to open the door by the proclamation of the gospel of Jesus Christ; and first unto the Gentiles, and then unto the Jews.

14

The standing high councils, at the stakes of Zion, form a quorum equal in authority, in the affairs of the church, in all their decisions, to the quorum of the Presidency or to the traveling high council.

15

The high council in Zion forms a quorum equal in authority, in the affairs of the church, in all their decisions, to the councils of the twelve at the stakes of Zion.

16

It is the duty of the traveling high council to call upon the Seventy, when they need assistance, to fill the several calls for preaching and administering the gospel, instead of any others.

17

It is the duty of the Twelve, in all large branches of the church, to ordain evangelical ministers, as they shall be designated unto them by revelation.

18

The order of this priesthood was confirmed to be handed down from father to son, and rightly belongs to the literal descendants of the chosen seed, to whom the promises were made. This order was instituted in the days of Adam, and came down by lineage in the following manner:

19

A. From Adam to Seth, who was ordained by Adam at the age of sixty-nine years, and was blessed by him three years previous to his (Adam's) death, and received the promise of God by his father, that his posterity should be the chosen of the Lord,

B. and that they should be preserved unto the end of the earth, because he (Seth) was a perfect man, and his likeness was the express likeness of his father, insomuch that he seemed to be like unto his father in all things; and could be distinguished from him only by his age.

20

Enos was ordained at the age of one hundred and thirty-four years, and four months, by the hand of Adam.

21

God called upon Cainan in the wilderness, in the fortieth year of his age, and he met Adam in journeying to the place Shedolamak: he was eighty-seven years old when he received his ordination.

22

Mahalaleel was four hundred and ninety-six years and seven days old when he was ordained by the hand of Adam, who also blessed him.

23

Jared was two hundred years old when he was ordained under the hand of Adam, who also blessed him.

24

A. Enoch was twenty-five years old when he was ordained under the hand of Adam, and he was sixty-five and Adam blessed him—and he saw the Lord:

B. and he walked with him, and was before his face continually: and he walked with God three hundred and sixty-five years: making him four hundred and thirty years old when he was translated.

25

Methuselah was one hundred years old when he was ordained under the hand of Adam.

26

Lamech was thirty-two years old when he was ordained under the hand of Seth.

27

Noah was ten years old when he was ordained under the hand of Methuselah.

28

A. Three years previous to the death of Adam, he called Seth, Enos, Cainan, Mahalaleel, Jared, Enoch, and Methuselah, who were all high priests, with the residue of his posterity, who were righteous, into the valley of Adam-ondi-Ahman, and there bestowed upon them his last blessing.

B. And the Lord appeared unto them, and they rose up and blessed Adam, and called him Michael, the Prince, the Archangel.

C. And the Lord administered comfort unto Adam, and said unto him, I have set thee to be at the head: a multitude of nations shall come of thee; and thou art a prince over them forever.

29

A. And Adam stood up in the midst of the congregation, and notwithstanding he was bowed down with age, being full of the Holy Ghost, predicted whatsoever should befall his posterity unto the latest generation.

B. These things were all written in the Book of Enoch, and are to be testified of in due time.

30

It is the duty of the Twelve, also, to ordain and set in order all the other officers of the church, agreeably to the revelation which says:

31

A. To the church of Christ in the land of Zion, in addition to the church laws, respecting church business:

B. Verily, I say unto you, saith the Lord of hosts, There must needs be presiding elders, to preside over those who are of the office of an elder; and also priests, to preside over those who are of the office of a priest;

C. and also teachers to preside over those who are of the office of a teacher, in like manner; and also the deacons:

D. wherefore, from deacon to teacher, and from teacher to priest, and from priest to elder, severally as they are appointed, according to the covenants and commandments of the church;

E. then comes the high priesthood, which is the greatest of all; wherefore, it must needs be that one be appointed, of the high priesthood, to preside over the priesthood; and he shall be called

president of the high priesthood of the church, or, in other words, the presiding high priest over the high priesthood of the church.

F. From the same comes the administering of ordinances and blessings upon the church, by the laying on of the hands.

32

A. Wherefore the office of a bishop is not equal unto it, for the office of a bishop is in administering all temporal things:

B. nevertheless, a bishop must be chosen from the high priesthood, unless he is a literal descendant of Aaron; for unless he is a literal descendant of Aaron he cannot hold the keys of that priesthood.

C. Nevertheless, a high priest, that is after the order of Melchisedec, may be set apart unto the ministering of temporal things, having a knowledge of them by the Spirit of truth, and also to be a judge in Israel, to do the business of the church, to sit in judgment upon transgressors, upon testimony, as it shall be laid before him, according to the laws, by the assistance of his counselors, whom he has chosen, or will choose among the elders of the church.

D. This is the duty of a bishop who is not a literal descendant of Aaron, but has been ordained to the high priesthood after the order of Melchisedec.

33

A. Thus shall he be a judge, even a common judge among the inhabitants of Zion, or in a stake of Zion, or in any branch of the church where he shall be set apart unto this ministry,

B. until the borders of Zion are enlarged, and it becomes necessary to have other bishops, or judges in Zion, or elsewhere:

C. and inasmuch as there are other bishops appointed they shall act in the same office.

34

A. But a literal descendant of Aaron has a legal right to the presidency of this priesthood, to the keys of this ministry, to act in the office of bishop independently, without counselors, except in a case where a president of the high priesthood, after the order of Melchisedec, is tried; to sit as a judge in Israel.

B. And the decision of either of these councils, agreeably to the commandment which says:

35

A. Again, verily I say unto you: The most important business of the church, and the most difficult cases of the church, inasmuch as there is not satisfaction upon the decision of the bishop, or judges, it shall be handed over and carried up unto the council of the church, before the presidency of the high priesthood;

B. and the presidency of the council of the high priesthood shall have power to call other high priests, even twelve, to assist as counselors; and thus the presidency of the high priesthood, and its counselors shall have power to decide upon testimony according to the laws of the church.

C. And after this decision it shall be had in remembrance no more before the Lord; for this is the highest council of the church of God, and a final decision upon controversies, in spiritual matters.

36

There is not any person belonging to the church, who is exempt from this council of the church.

37

A. And inasmuch as a president of the high priesthood shall transgress, he shall be had in remembrance before the common council of the church, who shall be assisted by twelve councilors of the high priesthood; and their decision upon his head shall be an end of controversy concerning him.

B. Thus, none shall be exempted from the justice and laws of God; that all things may be done in order and in solemnity, before him, according to truth and righteousness.

38

And again, verily I say unto you, The duty of a president over the office of a deacon, is to preside over twelve deacons, to sit in council with them, and to teach them their duty—edifying one another, as it is given according to the covenants.

39

And also the duty of the president over the office of the teachers, is to preside over twenty-four of the teachers, and to sit in council with them—teaching them the duties of their office, as given in the covenants.

40

A. Also the duty of the president over the priesthood of Aaron, is to preside over forty-eight priests, and sit in council with them, to teach them the duties of their office, as is given in the covenants.

B. This president is to be a bishop; for this is one of the duties of this priesthood.

41

A. Again, the duty of the president over the office of elders is to preside over ninety-six elders, and to sit in council with them, and to teach them according to the covenants.

B. This presidency is a distinct one from that of the Seventy, and is designed for those who do not travel into all the world.

42

A. And again, the duty of the president of the office of the high priesthood is to preside over the whole church, and to be like unto Moses.

B. Behold, here is wisdom, yea, to be a seer, a revelator, a translator, and a prophet; having all the gifts of God which he bestows upon the head of the church.

43

A. And it is according to the vision, showing the order of the Seventy, that they should have Seven Presidents to preside over them, chosen out of the number of the Seventy, and the seventh president of these presidents is to preside over the six;

B. and these Seven Presidents are to choose other Seventy besides the first Seventy, to whom they belong, and are to preside over them; and also other Seventy until seven times seventy, if the labor in the vineyard of necessity requires it.

C. And these Seventy are to be traveling ministers unto the Gentiles, first, and also unto the Jews, whereas other officers of the church, who belong not unto the Twelve neither to the Seventy, are not under the responsibility to travel among all nations, but are to travel as their circumstances shall allow, notwithstanding they may hold as high and responsible offices in the church.

44

A. Wherefore, now let every man learn his duty, and to act in the office in which he is appointed, in all diligence.

B. He that is slothful shall not be counted worthy to stand, and he that learns not his duty and shows himself not approved, shall not be counted worthy to stand. Even so. Amen

Section 105

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

Verily, thus saith the Lord unto thee my servant, Thomas, I have heard thy prayers, and thine alms have come up as a memorial before me, in behalf of those thy brethren who were chosen to bear testimony of my name, and to send it abroad among all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people; and ordained through the instrumentality of my servants.

2

A. Verily I say unto thee, There have been some few things in thine heart and with thee, with which I, the Lord, was not well pleased; nevertheless, inasmuch as thou hast abased thyself thou shalt be exalted; therefore, all thy sins are forgiven thee.

B. Let thy heart be of good cheer before my face, and thou shalt bear record of my name, not only unto the Gentiles, but also unto the Jews; and thou shalt send forth my word unto the ends of the earth.

3

Contend thou, therefore, morning by morning, and day after day; let thy warning voice go forth, and when the night cometh, let not the inhabitants of the earth slumber because of thy speech.

4

A. Let thy habitation be known in Zion, and remove not thy house, for I, the Lord, have a great work for thee to do, in publishing my name among the children of men; therefore, gird up thy loins for the work.

B. Let thy feet be shod also, for thou art chosen and thy path lieth among the mountains, and among many nations; and by thy word many high ones shall be brought low; and by thy word many low ones shall be exalted.

C. Thy voice shall be a rebuke unto the transgressor; and at thy rebuke let the tongue of the slanderer cease its perverseness.

5

A. Be thou humble, and the Lord thy God shall lead thee by the hand, and give thee answer to thy prayers. I know thy heart, and have heard thy prayers concerning thy brethren.

B. Be not partial towards them in love above many others, but let thy love be for them as for thyself; and let thy love abound unto all men, and unto all who love my name.

C. And pray for thy brethren of the Twelve. Admonish them sharply for my name's sake, and let them be admonished for all their sins; and be ye faithful before me unto my name.

D. And after their temptations and much tribulations, behold, I, the Lord, will feel after them, and if they harden not their hearts, and stiffen not their necks against me, they shall be converted, and I will heal them.

6

A. Now, I say unto you,—and what I say unto you I say unto all the Twelve,—Arise and gird up your loins, take up your cross, follow me, and feed my sheep.

B. Exalt not yourselves; rebel not against my servant Joseph, for verily I say unto you, I am with him, and my hand shall be over him, and the keys which I have given unto him, and also to youward, shall not be taken from him till I come.

7

A. Verily I say unto thee, my servant Thomas, Thou art the man whom I have chosen to hold the keys of my kingdom (as pertaining to the Twelve) abroad among all nations, that thou mayest be my servant to unlock the door of the kingdom in all places where my servant Joseph, and my servant Sidney, and my servant Hyrum, cannot come;

B. for on them have I laid the burden of all the churches for a little season;

C. wherefore, whithersoever they shall send you, go ye, and I will be with you, and in whatsoever place ye shall proclaim my name, an effectual door shall be opened unto you, that they may receive my word;

D. whosoever receiveth my word receiveth me, and whosoever receiveth me, receiveth those (the First Presidency) whom I have sent, whom I have made counselors for my name's sake unto you.

8

A. And again I say unto you, that whosoever ye shall send in my name, by the voice of your brethren, the Twelve, duly recommended and authorized by you, shall have power to open the door of my kingdom unto any nation whithersoever ye shall send them,

B. inasmuch as they shall humble themselves before me, and abide in my word, and hearken to the voice of my Spirit.

9

A. Verily, verily I say unto you, Darkness covereth the earth, and gross darkness the minds of the people, and all flesh has become corrupt before my face.

B. Behold, vengeance cometh speedily upon the inhabitants of the earth—a day of wrath, a day of burning, a day of desolation, of weeping, of mourning, and of lamentation—and as a whirlwind it shall come upon all the face of the earth, saith the Lord.

10

A. And upon my house shall it begin, and from my house shall it go forth, saith the Lord.

B. First among those among you, saith the Lord, who have professed to know my name and have not known me, and have blasphemed against me in the midst of my house, saith the Lord.

11

A. Therefore, see to it that ye trouble not yourselves concerning the affairs of my church in this place, saith the Lord;

B. but purify your hearts before me, and then go ye into all the world, and preach my gospel unto every creature who has not received it;

C. and he that believeth and is baptized shall be saved, and he that believeth not, and is not baptized, shall be damned.

12

A. For unto you (the Twelve), and those (the First Presidency), who are appointed with you, to be your counselors and your leaders, is the power of this priesthood given, for the last days and for the last time, in the which is the dispensation of the fullness of times,

B. which power you hold in connection with all those who have received a dispensation at any time from the beginning of the creation;

C. for verily I say unto you, The keys of the dispensation which ye have received, have come down from the fathers; and last of all, being sent down from heaven unto you.

13

A. Verily I say unto you, Behold how great is your calling. Cleanse your hearts and your garments, lest the blood of this generation be required at your hands.

B. Be faithful until I come, for I come quickly, and my reward is with me to recompense every man according as his work shall be. I am Alpha and Omega. Amen.

Section 106

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Verily, thus saith the Lord, I require all their surplus property to be put into the hands of the bishop of my church of Zion, for the building of mine house, and for the laying the foundation of Zion, and for the priesthood, and for the debts of the presidency of my church;

B. and this shall be the beginning of the tithing of my people; and after that, those who have thus been tithed, shall pay one tenth of all their interest annually; and this shall be a standing law unto them forever, for my holy priesthood, saith the Lord.

2

A. Verily I say unto you, It shall come to pass that all those who gather unto the land of Zion shall be tithed of their surplus properties, and shall observe this law, or they shall not be found worthy to abide among you.

B. And I say unto you, If my people observe not this law, to keep it holy, and by this law sanctify the land of Zion unto me, that my statutes and my judgments may be kept thereon, that it may be most holy,

C. behold, verily I say unto you, It shall not be a land of Zion unto you; and this shall be an ensample unto all the stakes of Zion. Even so. Amen.

Section 107

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

See the Historical Appendix

Section 108

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Hearken, O ye people of my church, saith the Lord your God, and hear the word of the Lord concerning you; the Lord who shall suddenly come to his temple; the Lord who shall come down upon the world with a curse to judgment; yea, upon all the nations that forget God, and upon all the ungodly among you.

B. For he shall make bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations, and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of their God.

2

A. Wherefore prepare ye, prepare ye, O my people; sanctify yourselves; gather ye together, O ye people of my church, upon the land of Zion, all you that have not been commanded to tarry.

B. Go ye out from Babylon. Be ye clean that bear the vessels of the Lord. Call your solemn assemblies, and speak often one to another.

C. And let every man call upon the name of the Lord; yea, verily I say unto you again, The time has come when the voice of the Lord is unto you, Go ye out of Babylon; gather ye out from among the nations, from the four winds, from one end of heaven to the other.

3

A. Send forth the elders of my church unto the nations which are afar off; unto the islands of the sea; send forth unto foreign lands; call upon all nations; firstly, upon the Gentiles, and then upon the Jews.

B. And, behold, and lo, this shall be their cry, and the voice of the Lord unto all people:

C. Go ye forth unto the land of Zion, that the borders of my people may be enlarged, and that her stakes may be strengthened, and that Zion may go forth unto the regions round about; yea, let the cry go forth among all people: Awake and arise and go forth to meet the Bridegroom.

D. Behold, and lo, the Bridegroom cometh, go ye out to meet him. Prepare yourselves for the great day of the Lord.

4

A. Watch, therefore, for ye know neither the day nor the hour. Let them, therefore, who are among the Gentiles, flee unto Zion.

B. And let them who be of Judah, flee unto Jerusalem, unto the mountains of the Lord's house. Go ye out from among the nations, even from Babylon, from the midst of wickedness, which is spiritual Babylon.

C. But verily thus saith the Lord, Let not your flight be in haste, but let all things be prepared before you; and he that goeth, let him not look back, lest sudden destruction shall come upon him.

5

A. Hearken and hear O ye inhabitants of the earth.

B. Listen, ye elders of my church together, and hear the voice of the Lord, for he calleth upon all men and he commandeth all men everywhere to repent; for, behold, the Lord God hath sent forth the angel, crying through the midst of heaven, saying:

C. Prepare ye the way of the Lord, and make his paths strait, for the hour of his coming is nigh, when the Lamb shall stand upon Mount Zion, and with him a hundred and forty-four thousand, having his father's name written in their foreheads;

D. wherefore, prepare ye for the coming of the Bridegroom; go ye, go ye out to meet him, for, behold, he shall stand upon the Mount of Olivet, and upon the mighty ocean, even the great deep, and upon the islands of the sea, and upon the land of Zion;

E. and he shall utter his voice out of Zion, and he shall speak from Jerusalem, and his voice shall be heard among all people, and it shall be a voice as the voice of many waters, and as the voice of a great thunder, which shall break down the mountains, and the valleys shall not be found;

F. he shall command the great deep and it shall be driven back into the north countries, and the islands shall become one land, and the land of Jerusalem and the land of Zion shall be turned back into their own place, and the earth shall be like as it was in the days before it was divided.

G. And the Lord even the Savior shall stand in the midst of his people, and shall reign over all flesh.

6

A. And they who are in the north countries shall come in remembrance before the Lord, and their prophets shall hear his voice, and shall no longer stay themselves, and they shall smite the rocks, and the ice shall flow down at their presence.

B. And an highway shall be cast up in the midst of the great deep. Their enemies shall become a prey unto them, and in the barren deserts there shall come forth pools of living water; and the parched ground shall no longer be a thirsty land.

C. And they shall bring forth their rich treasures unto the children of Ephraim my servants. And the boundaries of the everlasting hills shall tremble at their presence.

D. And then shall they fall down and be crowned with glory, even in Zion, by the hands of the servants of the Lord, even the children of Ephraim; and they shall be filled with songs of everlasting joy.

E. Behold, this is the blessing of the everlasting God upon the tribes of Israel, and the richer blessing upon the head of Ephraim and his fellows.

F. And they also of the tribe of Judah, after their pain, shall be sanctified in holiness before the Lord to dwell in his presence day and night for ever and ever.

7

A. And now verily saith the Lord, That these things might be known among you, O inhabitants of the earth, I have sent forth mine angel, flying through the midst of heaven, having the everlasting gospel, who hath appeared unto some, and hath committed it unto man, who shall appear unto many that dwell on the earth;

B. and this gospel shall be preached unto every nation, and kindred, and tongue, and people, and the servants of God shall go forth, saying, with a loud voice:

C. Fear God and give glory to him; for the hour of his judgment is come: and worship him that made heaven, and earth, and sea, and the fountain of waters, calling upon the name of the Lord day and night, saying: O that thou wouldst rend the heavens, that thou wouldst come down, that the mountains might flow down at thy presence.

D. And it shall be answered upon their heads, for the presence of the Lord shall be as the melting fire that burneth, and as the fire which causeth the waters to boil.

8

A. O Lord, thou shalt come down to make thy name known to thine adversaries, and all nations shall tremble at thy presence.

B. When thou doeth terrible things, things they look not for; yea, when thou comest down and the mountains flow down at thy presence, thou shalt meet him who rejoiceth and worketh righteousness, who remembereth thee in thy ways;

C. for since the beginning of the world have not men heard nor perceived by the ear, neither hath any eye seen, O God, besides thee, how great things thou hast prepared for him that waiteth for thee.

9

A. And it shall be said, Who is this that cometh down from God in heaven with dyed garments; yea, from the regions which are not known, clothed in his glorious apparel, traveling in the greatness of his strength?

B. And he shall say, I am he who spake in righteousness, mighty to save.

C. And the Lord shall be red in his apparel, and his garments like him that treadeth in the wine vat, and so great shall be the glory of his presence, that the sun shall hide his face in shame; and the moon shall withhold its light; and the stars shall be hurled from their places;

D. and his voice shall be heard, I have trodden the winepress alone, and have brought judgment upon all people; and none was with me;

E. and I have trampled them in my fury, and I did tread upon them in mine anger, and their blood have I sprinkled upon my garments, and stained all my raiment; for this was the day of vengeance which was in my heart.

10

A. And now the year of my redeemed is come, and they shall mention the loving kindness of their Lord, and all that he has bestowed upon them, according to his goodness, and according to his loving kindness, for ever and ever.

B. In all their afflictions he was afflicted. And the angel of his presence saved them; and in his love, and in his pity, he redeemed them, and bare them, and carried them all the days of old;

C. yea, and Enoch also, and they who were with him; the prophets who were before him, and Noah also, and they who were before him, and Moses also, and they who were before him, and from Moses to Elijah, and from Elijah to John, who were with Christ in his resurrection, and the holy apostles, with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, shall be in the presence of the Lamb.

D. And the graves of the saints shall be opened, and they shall come forth and stand on the right hand of the Lamb, when he shall stand upon Mount Zion, and upon the holy city, the New Jerusalem, and they shall sing the song of the Lamb day and night for ever and ever.

11

A. And for this cause, that men might be made partakers of the glories which were to be revealed, the Lord sent forth the fullness of his gospel, his everlasting covenant, reasoning in plainness and simplicity, to prepare the weak for those things which are coming on the earth;

B. and for the Lord's errand in the day when the weak shall confound the wise, and the little one become a strong nation, and two should put their tens of thousands to flight; and by the weak things of the earth, the Lord should thresh the nations by the power of his Spirit.

C. And for this cause these commandments were given; they were commanded to be kept from the world in the day that they were given, but now are to go forth unto all flesh.

D. And this according to the mind and will of the Lord, who ruleth over all flesh; and unto him that repenteth and sanctifieth himself before the Lord, shall be given eternal life.

E. And upon them that hearken not to the voice of the Lord, shall be fulfilled that which was written by the prophet Moses, that they should be cut off from among the people.

12

A. And also that which was written by the prophet Malachi:

B. For, behold, the day cometh that shall burn as an oven, and all the proud, yea, and all that do wickedly, shall be stubble: and the day that cometh shall burn them up, saith the Lord of hosts, that it shall leave them neither root nor branch.

C. Wherefore this shall be the answer of the Lord unto them:

D. In that day when I came unto my own, no man among you received me, and you were driven out.

E. When I called again, there was none of you to answer, yet my arm was not shortened at all, that I could not redeem, neither my power to deliver.

F. Behold, at my rebuke I dry up the sea. I make the rivers a wilderness; their fish stinketh, and dieth for thirst. I clothe the heavens with blackness, and make sackcloth their covering. And this shall ye have of my hand, ye shall lie down in sorrow.

13

A. Behold, and lo, there are none to deliver you, for ye obeyed not my voice when I called to you out of the heavens, ye believed not my servants; and when they were sent unto you ye received them not;

B. wherefore, they sealed up the testimony and bound up the law, and ye were delivered over unto darkness; these shall go away into outer darkness, where there is weeping, and wailing, and gnashing of teeth. Behold, the Lord your God hath spoken it. Amen.

Section 108A

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

See the Historical Appendix

Section 109

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

See the Historical Appendix

Section 110

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

See the Historical Appendix

Section 111

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

- A.** According to the custom of all civilized nations, marriage is regulated by laws and ceremonies:
- B.** therefore we believe, that all marriages in this Church of Christ of Latter Day Saints should be solemnized in a public meeting, or feast, prepared for that purpose:
- C.** and that the solemnization should be performed by a presiding high priest, high priest, bishop, elder, or priest, not even prohibiting those persons who are desirous to get married, of being married by other authority.
- D.** We believe that it is not right to prohibit members of this church from marrying out of the church, if it be their determination so to do, but such persons will be considered weak in the faith of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ.

2

- A.** Marriage should be celebrated with prayer and thanksgiving; and at the solemnization, the persons to be married, standing together, the man on the right, and the woman on the left, shall be addressed, by the person officiating, as he shall be directed by the Holy Spirit; and if there be no legal objections, he shall say, calling each by their names:
- B.** “You both mutually agree to be each other’s companion, husband and wife, observing the legal rights belonging to this condition; that is, keeping yourselves wholly for each other, and from all others, during your lives?”
- C.** And when they have answered “Yes,” he shall pronounce them “husband and wife” in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ, and by virtue of the laws of the country and authority vested in him:
- D.** “May God add his blessings and keep you to fulfill your covenants from henceforth and forever. Amen.”

3

The clerk of every church should keep a record of all marriages solemnized in his branch.

4

- A.** All legal contracts of marriage made before a person is baptized into this church, should be held sacred and fulfilled.
- B.** Inasmuch as this Church of Christ has been reproached with the crime of fornication, and polygamy: we declare that we believe that one man should have one wife; and one woman but one husband, except in case of death, when either is at liberty to marry again.
- C.** It is not right to persuade a woman to be baptized contrary to the will of her husband, neither is it lawful to influence her to leave her husband.
- D.** All children are bound by law to obey their parents; and to influence them to embrace any religious faith, or be baptized, or leave their parents without their consent, is unlawful and unjust.
- E.** We believe that all persons who exercise control over their fellow-beings, and prevent them from embracing the truth, will have to answer for that sin.

Section 112

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

We believe that governments were instituted of God for the benefit of man, and that he holds men accountable for their acts in relation to them, either in making laws or administering them, for the good and safety of society.

2

We believe that no government can exist, in peace, except such laws are framed and held inviolate as will secure to each individual the free exercise of conscience, the right and control of property, and the protection of life.

3

We believe that all governments necessarily require civil officers and magistrates to enforce the laws of the same, and that such as will administer the law in equity and justice should be sought for and upheld by the voice of the people (if a republic), or the will of the sovereign.

4

A. We believe that religion is instituted of God, and that men are amenable to him and to him only for the exercise of it, unless their religious opinion prompts them to infringe upon the rights and liberties of others;

B. but we do not believe that human law has a right to interfere in prescribing rules of worship to bind the consciences of men, nor dictate forms for public or private devotion;

C. that the civil magistrate should restrain crime, but never control conscience; should punish guilt, but never suppress the freedom of the soul.

5

A. We believe that all men are bound to sustain and uphold the respective governments in which they reside, while protected in their inherent and inalienable rights by the laws of such governments, and that sedition and rebellion are unbecoming every citizen thus protected, and should be punished accordingly;

B. and that all governments have a right to enact such laws as in their own judgments are best calculated to secure the public interest, at the same time, however, holding sacred the freedom of conscience.

6

A. We believe that every man should be honored in his station: rulers and magistrates as such—being placed for the protection of the innocent and the punishment of the guilty;

B. and that to the laws all men owe respect and deference, as without them peace and harmony would be supplanted by anarchy and terror:

C. human laws being instituted for the express purpose of regulating our interests as individuals and nations, between man and man, and divine laws, given of heaven, prescribing rules on spiritual concerns, for faith and worship, both to be answered by man to his Maker.

7

A. We believe that rulers, states, and governments have a right, and are bound to enact laws for the protection of all citizens in the free exercise of their religious belief;

B. but we do not believe that they have a right, in justice, to deprive citizens of this privilege, or proscribe them in their opinions, so long as a regard and reverence is shown to the laws, and such religious opinions do not justify sedition nor conspiracy.

8

A. We believe that the commission of crime should be punished according to the nature of the offense:

B. that murder, treason, robbery, theft, and the breach of the general peace, in all respects, should be punished according to their criminality and their tendency to evil among men, by the laws of that government in which the offense is committed:

C. and for the public peace and tranquility, all men should step forward and use their ability in bringing offenders, against good laws, to punishment.

9

We do not believe it just to mingle religious influence with civil government, whereby one religious society is fostered and another proscribed in its spiritual privileges, and the individual rights of its members, as citizens, denied.

10

A. We believe that all religious societies have a right to deal with their members for disorderly conduct according to the rules and regulations of such societies, provided that such dealings be for fellowship and good standing;

B. but we do not believe that any religious society has authority to try men on the right of property or life, to take from them this world's goods, or put them in jeopardy of either life or limb, neither to inflict any physical punishment upon them—they can only excommunicate them from their society and withdraw from their fellowship.

11

A. We believe that men should appeal to the civil law for redress of all wrongs and grievances, where personal abuse is inflicted, or the right of property or character infringed, where such laws exist as will protect the same;

B. but we believe that all men are justified in defending themselves, their friends and property, and the government, from the unlawful assaults and encroachments of all persons, in times of exigencies, where immediate appeal cannot be made to the laws, and relief afforded.

12

A. We believe it just to preach the gospel to the nations of the earth, and warn the righteous to save themselves from the corruption of the world;

B. but we do not believe it right to interfere with bond servants, neither preach the gospel to, nor baptize them, contrary to the will and wish of their masters,

C. nor to meddle with, or influence them in the least to cause them to be dissatisfied with their situations in this life, thereby jeopardizing the lives of men:

D. such interference we believe to be unlawful and unjust, and dangerous to the peace of every government allowing human beings to be held in servitude.

Section 113

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

See the Historical Appendix

Section 114

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. In order to place the church in a position to carry on the promulgation of the gospel, and as a means of fulfilling the law, the Twelve will take measures in connection with the Bishop, to execute the law of tithing;

B. and let them before God see to it, that the temporal means so obtained is truly used for the purposes of the church, and not as a weapon of power in the hands of one man for the oppression of others, or for the purposes of self-aggrandizement by anyone, be he whomsoever he may be.

2

As I live, saith the Lord, in the manner ye execute this matter, so shall ye be judged in the day of judgment.

Section 115

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Hearken unto me, O ye elders of my church. Lo! I have seen your efforts in my cause, and they are pleasing unto me.

B. I declare unto you, It is my will that you ordain and set apart my servant William Marks to be a counselor to my servant Joseph, even the president of my church, that the first presidency of my church may be more perfectly filled.

C. And moreover it is expedient in me that my elders in going to declare my gospel to the nations, shall observe the pattern which I have given.

D. Two by two let them be sent, that they may be a help and a support to each other in their ministry.

E. Press onward, ye elders and people of my church, even my little flock, and as I have spoken to you in times past, so will I speak again to you as my friends, inasmuch as you speak in my name; and lo! I am Alpha and Omega, and will be with you unto the end. Amen.

Section 116

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. Hearken! Ye elders of my church, I am he who hath called you friends. Concerning the matter you have asked of me:

B. Lo! It is my will that my gospel shall be preached to all nations in every land, and that men of every tongue shall minister before me:

C. Therefore it is expedient in me that you ordain priests unto me, of every race who receive the teachings of my law, and become heirs according to the promise.

2

A. Be ye very careful, for many elders have been ordained unto me, and are come under my condemnation, by reason of neglecting to lift up their voices in my cause, and for such there is tribulation and anguish:

B. haply they themselves may be saved (if doing no evil) though their glory, which is given for their works, be withheld, or in other words their works are burned, not being profitable unto me.

3

A. Loosen ye one another's hands and uphold one another, that ye who are of the Quorum of Twelve, may all labor in the vineyard, for upon you rests much responsibility;

B. and if ye labor diligently the time is soon when others shall be added to your number till the quorum be full, even twelve.

4

A. Be not hasty in ordaining men of the Negro race to offices in my church, for verily I say unto you,

B. All are not acceptable unto me as servants, nevertheless I will that all may be saved, but every man in his own order, and there are some who are chosen instruments to be ministers to their own race. Be ye content, I the Lord have spoken it.

Section 117

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

Hearken to the voice of the Spirit, O ye elders of my church; the prayers of my people have prevailed with me.

2

Behold, it is wisdom in me, and expedient in my church that the chief quorums should be more nearly filled, and their organization more nearly completed. Thus saith the Spirit.

3

A. Let my servants, William W. Blair and David H. Smith, be chosen and ordained to be counselors to my servant, the presiding elder of my church.

B. Let them be set apart to this office by the laying on of hands by my servants whose duty it is to ordain and set in order the officers of my church;

C. and let my servants, the president of the high priests' quorum and the president of the lesser priesthood, also lay their hands upon these their brethren who are to be counselors, but let my servants of the Twelve be the spokesmen.

4

A. Let my servants William H. Kelley, Thomas W. Smith, James Caffall, John H. Lake, Alexander H. Smith, Zenas H. Gurley, and Joseph R. Lambert, be chosen as especial witnesses, even of the Quorum of Twelve, for they are called thereunto, that they may take this ministry upon them.

B. Let them be ordained and set apart to this office by the laying on of the hands of my servants Joseph Smith, Jason W. Briggs, and William W. Blair.

5

Verily, I say unto you, If these my servants will henceforth magnify their calling in honor before me, they shall become men of power and excellent wisdom in the assemblies of my people.

6

Let the names of my servants Daniel B. Rasey and Reuben Newkirk be taken from the record of the Quorum of the Twelve and placed with the records of the names of the elders, and let them labor as elders, and their labors will be accepted by me.

7

A. It is my will that my servants, Jason W. Briggs, Josiah Ells, and Edmund C. Briggs, remain and stand in their lot as especial witnesses before me.

B. Let them diligently labor in their ministry, encouraging and directing their brethren in their labors.

C. It is expedient for the good of my cause that my servant Jason take the active oversight of this quorum.

8

A. Let my servants Archibald M. Wilsey, William D. Morton, and George Rarick, be ordained high priests:

B. and let my servants E. C. Brand, Charles W. Wandell, and Duncan Campbell be appointed as special witnesses of the Seventy in their places;

C. and let my servants Joseph Lakeman, Glaud Rodger, John T. Davies, and John S. Patterson be also appointed as witnesses of the Seventy before me.

9

A. Until such time as the quorum of the Twelve shall be filled, the decision of that quorum, a unanimous decision, shall be accounted final, as if such quorum were filled, according to my law as given in the Book of Doctrine and Covenants.

B. And until such time as the quorum of the Seventy shall be filled, their decision, if unanimous and agreeing with that of the quorum of the Twelve, shall be considered the same as if the quorum were filled.

10

A. It is expedient that the Bishop of my church shall choose two counselors, and that they be ordained to their office as my law directs, that there may be henceforth no caviling among my people.

B. The Bishop of my church may also choose and appoint bishop's agents, until it shall be wisdom in me to ordain other bishops, in the districts and large branches of my church.

11

A. It is not expedient in me that there shall be any stakes appointed until I command my people. When it shall be necessary I will command that they be established.

B. Let my commandments to gather into the regions round about, and the counsel of the elders of my church guide in this matter until it shall be otherwise given of me.

12

Behold, if my servants and my handmaidens, of the different organizations for good among my people, shall continue in righteousness, they shall be blessed, even as they bless others of the household of faith.

13

Let contentions and quarrelings among you cease. Sustain each other in peace, and ye shall be blessed with my Spirit, in comforting and strengthening you for my work.

14

It is not expedient that I command you further at this time; but be ye diligent, wise, and faithful, doing all things with an eye single for the glory of your God, and for the good of his people. Thus saith the Lord. Amen.

Section 118

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. In asking of me, ye did well. I will hasten my work in its time.

B. Ye cannot now prosecute missions in many foreign lands, nor is it expedient that the elders of the first quorums be sent out of the land of America until the work of the reorganization of my church be more fully established, and a greater unity of understanding between them be obtained.

C. Nor is it expedient now to further fill up the quorums, except it be the elders, priests, teachers, and deacons: which ye may do, as ye deem wise, by the direction of conference.

2

Continue the mission in Chicago until the April conference, when if it be found expedient it may be left in the charge of the authorities of the Northern Illinois District.

3

It is my will that ye more fully honor and pay heed to the voice and counsel of the traveling ministry in spiritual things; which if ye do not, the office which they hold is not honored in my service, and the good they should do is made void.

4

A. If they approve themselves as righteous ministers, they shall be blessed; if they be found transgressors, or idle servants, ye shall not uphold them.

B. But be not hasty in withdrawing your support from them, peradventure ye shall injure my work.

C. Even now I am not well pleased with some, but space is granted for repentance and a renewal of diligence. Let no one deceive himself that he shall not account for his stewardship unto me.

Joseph Smith
By command of the Spirit

Section 119

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

To the Elders of the Church:

Thus saith the Spirit:

1

A. It is not yet expedient that the Quorum of the Twelve shall be filled; nevertheless separate my servants, James W. Gillen, Heman C. Smith, Joseph Luff, and Gomer T. Griffiths, unto the office of apostles, that the quorum may be more perfectly prepared to act before me.

B. I have still other men of my church who shall be designated in their time if they still continue faithful unto me and in the work whereunto they are now called.

2

A. There is a great work to be done by mine elders, and that they may be fitted to do this work and the accomplishment thereof be not prevented, it is enjoined upon them that they shall not only be kind of heart and of a lowly spirit, that their wisdom may be the wisdom of the Lord and their strength the strength of the Spirit,

B. but they shall lay aside lightness of speech and lightness of manner when standing to declare the word, and shall study to approve their ministrations to the people by candor in speech and courtesy in demeanor, that as ministers of the gospel they may win souls unto Christ.

3

A. The elders and men of the church should be of cheerful heart and countenance among themselves and in their intercourse with their neighbors and men of the world, yet they must be without blame in word and deed.

B. It is therefore not seemly that they indulge in loud and boisterous speech, or in the relating of coarse and vulgar stories, or those in which the names of their God and their Redeemer are blasphemed.

C. Men of God, who bear the vessels of the Lord, be ye clean in your bodies and in your clothing; let your garments be of a sober character and free from excess of ornamentation.

D. Avoid the use of tobacco and be not addicted to strong drink in any form, that your counsel to be temperate may be made effectual by your example.

4

- A.** That the work of restoration to which the people of my church are looking forward may be hastened in its time, the elders must cease to be overcareful concerning the return of those who were once of the faith but were overcome in the dark and cloudy day, fearing lest they should bring in hidden heresies to the overthrowing of the work;
- B.** for verily, there are some who are chosen vessels to do good, who have been estranged by the hindering snares which are in the world and who will in due time return unto the Lord if they be not hindered by the men of the church.
- C.** The Spirit says "Come"; let not the ministers for Christ prevent their coming.

5

- A.** And the Spirit saith further: Contention is unseemly; therefore, cease to contend respecting the sacrament and the time of administering it;
- B.** for whether it be upon the first Lord's day of every month, or upon the Lord's day of every week, if it be administered by the officers of the church with sincerity of heart and in purity of purpose, and be partaken of in remembrance of Jesus Christ and in willingness to take upon them his name by them who partake, it is acceptable to God.
- C.** To avoid confusion let him who presides in the sacrament meeting, and those who administer it cause that the emblems be duly prepared upon clean vessels for the bread and clean vessels for the wine, or the water, as may be expedient;
- D.** and the officer may break the bread before it is blessed, and pour the wine before it is blessed; or he may, if he be so led, bless the bread before it be broken and the wine before it be poured;
- E.** nevertheless both bread and wine should be uncovered when presented for the blessing to be asked upon it.
- F.** It is expedient that the bread and wine should be administered in the early part of the meeting, before weariness and confusion ensue.
- G.** Let him that partaketh and him that refraineth cease to contend with his brother that each may be benefited when he eateth at the table of the Lord.

6

- A.** The service of song in the house of the Lord with humility and unity of Spirit in them that sing and them that hear is blessed, and acceptable with God; but song with grievous sadness in them that sing and bitterness of spirit in them that hear is not pleasing to God.

B. Therefore, in all the congregations of the people of God, let all strife and contention concerning song service cease;

C. and that the worship in the house of the Lord may be complete and wholly acceptable, let them who shall be moved thereto by a desire and the gift to sing take upon them the burden and care of the service, and use therein instruments of music of the reed and of the string, or instruments of brass in congregations that are large, and as wisdom and choice may direct.

D. Let the young men and the maidens cultivate the gifts of music and of song; let not the middle-aged and the old forget the gladness of their youth and let them aid and assist so far as their cares will permit; and remember that Saints should be cheerful in their warfare that they may be joyous in their triumph.

E. Nevertheless, let the organ and the stringed instrument, and the instrument of brass be silent when the Saints assemble for prayer and testimony, that the feelings of the tender and sad may not be intruded upon.

F. To facilitate unity in the song service of the church those to whom the work of providing a book of song has been intrusted may hasten their work in its time.

7

A. And the Spirit saith further: Inasmuch as there has been much discussion in the past concerning the Sabbath of the Lord, the church is admonished that until further revelation is received, or the quorums of the church are assembled to decide concerning the law in the church articles and covenants,

B. the Saints are to observe the first day of the week commonly called the Lord's day, as a day of rest: as a day of worship, as given in the covenants and commandments.

C. And on this day they should refrain from unnecessary work; nevertheless, nothing should be permitted to go to waste on that day, nor should necessary work be neglected.

D. Be not harsh in judgment but merciful in this, as in all other things. Be not hypocrites nor of those who make a man an offender for a word.

8

A. Prosecute the missionary work in this land and abroad so far and so widely as you may.

B. All are called according to the gifts of God unto them; and to the intent that all may labor together, let him that laboreth in the ministry and him that toileth in the affairs of the men of business and of work labor together with God for the accomplishment of the work intrusted to all.

9

A. Be clean, be frugal, cease to complain of pain and sickness and distress of body; take sleep in the hours set apart by God for the rebuilding and strengthening of the body and mind;

B. for even now there are some, even among the elders, who are suffering in mind and body, who have disregarded the advice of the Spirit to retire early and to rise early that vigor of mind and body should be retained.

C. Bear the burdens of body of which the Spirit of healing from the Lord in faith, or the use of that which wisdom directs does not relieve or remove, and in cheerfulness do whatever may be permitted you to perform that the blessing of peace may be upon all. Amen.

Kirtland, Ohio April 11, 1887

Section 120

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Unto my servants, the First Presidency and the traveling High Council of my church; thus saith the Spirit:

1

A. The epistle is to be left without approval, or disapproval by the conference, as the judgment of the Quorum of the Twelve, until further experience shall have tested the matters therein stated.

B. In the meantime, branches and their officers, and districts and their officers are to be considered as provided for by my law to carry on the work of the ministry in caring for the membership of the church, and to relieve the Twelve and Seventy from the vexation and anxiety of looking after local organizations when effected.

C. When branches and districts are organized, they should be so organized by direction of the conferences, or by the personal presence and direction of the Twelve, or some member of that quorum who may be in charge, if practicable;

D. or, if a branch, by the president of the district with the consent, knowledge, and direction of the missionary in charge, when circumstances prevent the missionary in charge being present.

2

A. A branch may be presided over by a high priest, an elder, priest, teacher, or deacon, chosen and sustained by the vote of the branch.

B. Districts may be presided over by a high priest, or an elder, who shall be received and sustained in his office by the vote of the district.

C. If a branch, or district be large, he who is chosen to preside should be an high priest, if there be one possessed of the spirit of wisdom to administer in the office of president;

D. or if an elder be chosen who may by experience be found qualified to preside, as soon as practicable thereafter he should be ordained an high priest by the spirit of wisdom and revelation in the one ordaining, and by direction of a high council, or General Conference, as required in the law.

3

A. There should be no conflict or jealousy of authority between the quorums of the church; all are necessary and equally honorable, each in its place.

B. The Twelve and Seventy are traveling ministers and preachers of the gospel, to persuade men to obey the truth;

C. the high priests and elders holding the same priesthood are the standing ministers of the church, having the watchcare of the membership and nurturing and sustaining them, under the direction and instruction of the Presidency and the Twelve.

D. The Seventy when traveling by the voice of the church, or sent by the Twelve to minister the word where the Twelve cannot go, are in the powers of their ministration apostles—those sent—and in meetings where no organization exists should preside, if no member of the Twelve or Presidency be present.

4

A. In both branches and districts the presiding officers should be considered and respected in their offices;

B. nevertheless, the traveling presiding councils of the church being made by the law, their calling and the voice of the church the directing, regulating and advising authorities of the church, and representing it abroad, should when present in either district or branch be regarded and considered as the leading representative authorities of the church, and be respected as such, their counsel and advice be sought and respected when given;

C. and in cases of conflict, or extremity, their decision should be listened to and regarded, subject to the appeal and adjudication provided for in the law.

5

He that heareth him that is sent heareth the Lord who sent him, if he be called of God and be sent by the voice of the church.

6

In these matters there is no conflict in the law.

7

A. In matters of personal importance and conduct arising in branches or districts, the authorities of those branches and districts should be authorized and permitted to settle them;

B. the traveling councils taking cognizance of those only in which the law and usages of the church are involved, and the general interests of the church are concerned.

C. Where cases of difficulty are of long standing, the council may require local authorities to adjust them; and in case of failure to do so, may regulate them as required by their office and

duty; and this that the work and church may not be put to shame and the preaching of the word be hindered.

8

That the traveling council of the Twelve may be better prepared to act as a quorum, my servant A. H. Smith may be chosen president of the Twelve, and any one of the council be chosen to act as its secretary, until the quorum be filled, or other instruction be given.

9

A. Those who were presented by the high priests for ordination to their number, if approved by the council of the high priests now present, and the conference, may be ordained;

B. and from their number there may be selected by a committee of conference composed of one of the First Presidency, the president of the Twelve and one other to be chosen by the Council of Twelve, the president of the high priests and one other to be chosen by that council of their number,

C. a sufficient number to fill the vacancies now existing in the high council, that the high council may be properly organized and prepared to hear matters of grave importance when presented to them.

D. And this committee shall make these selections according to the spirit of wisdom and revelation that shall be given unto them, to provide that such council may be convened at any General Conference when emergency may demand, by reason of their residing at or near to places where conferences may be held.

10

A. The presidents of Seventy are instructed to select from the several quorums of elders such as are qualified and in a condition to take upon them the office of Seventy, that they may be ordained unto the filling of the first quorum of Seventy.

B. In making these selections the presidents of Seventy should confer with the several quorums before so selecting, and be guided by wisdom and the spirit of revelation, choosing none but men of good repute.

Section 121

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. At the April session of conference of 1885, during the consideration of the sustaining of the officers of the church made the special order for the 11th, when David H. Smith, second counselor to the President, was presented, the question was asked whether any communication had been received in regard to it.

B. The President of the church replied: "The voice of the Spirit is that David H. Smith be released. He is in mine hand."

2

A. When the Quorum of the Twelve were presented the question was again asked: Has any information been received concerning said quorum?

B. President Joseph Smith replied: "The voice of the Spirit is that E. C. Briggs be sustained for the present. J. W. Briggs and Z. H. Gurley are in your hands, to approve or disapprove as wisdom may direct. Be merciful, for to him that is merciful shall mercy be shown."

3

On the 14th of the month, the eighth day of the session, when the mission of Elder E. C. Briggs was being considered, the following instruction was presented as the will of the Lord concerning the Chicago mission, over which some trouble had occurred:

4

A. "It is my will that my servants shall contend no longer one with another in regard to the Chicago Branch. Let the branch be instructed to report to the conference of my Saints of the district where the branch is located, the Northern Illinois District.

B. My servants, the elders, when passing to and from, should labor in the city when time and opportunity permit, that my people there may be strengthened and encouraged.

C. And this should be agreeable to the elders in charge of the branch and the district, who should ever be willing to aid such ministrations; and this should be without jealousy on either part."

5

A. The following also received in 1885, is added by direction of the conference of 1894:

B. “My servants of the Seventy may select from their number seven; of which number those now being of the seven presidents of Seventy shall be a part; who shall form the presidency of seven presidents of Seventy as provided in my law.”

6

A. The foregoing was accepted as proper instruction, and the conference acted upon it as such; but the word received was not presented to the quorums, nor acted upon by them as is the usual custom of the church in regard to revelations received for the guidance of the church.

B. It is given here as having been acquiesced in by all, in answer to prayer and decisive upon the matters referred to.

Section 122

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Preface

I was, on the fifteenth day of the fourth month, of the year 1894, in fasting and prayer before the Lord, and being commanded of the Spirit I arose from my praying and wrote:

Thus saith the Spirit unto the elders and the church:

1

A. My servants have been harsh one with another; and some have not been sufficiently willing to hear those whose duty it is to teach the revelations which my church has already received.

B. Until my people shall hear and heed those who are set in the church to teach the revelations there will be misunderstanding and confusion among the members.

2

A. The burden of the care of the church is laid on him who is called to preside over the high priesthood of the church, and on those who are called to be his counselors;

B. and they shall teach according to the spirit of wisdom and understanding, and as they shall be directed by revelation, from time to time.

3

A. It is the duty of the Twelve to preach the gospel, and administer in the ordinances thereof, as is directed in the Scriptures which ye have received.

B. They are called and set apart to this duty; and are to travel and preach, under the direction and counsel of the Presidency.

4

A. It is not yet expedient in me that the Quorum of the Presidency, and the Quorum of the Twelve apostles shall be filled, for reasons which will be seen and known unto you in due time.

B. My servant David H. Smith is yet in my hand and I will do my will in the time for its accomplishment. Be not troubled or fearful in this matter for it shall be well for my work in the end.

5

A. When I said unto mine apostles, “The Twelve will take measures in connection with the bishop, to execute the law of tithing; and let them before God see to it, that the temporal means so obtained is truly used for the purposes of the church, and not as a weapon of power in the hands of one man for the oppression of others, or for purposes of self-aggrandizement by anyone, be he whomsoever he may be”;

B. the one whom I had called to preside over the church, had not yet approved himself unto the scattered flock; and I gave this command unto the quorum next in authority in spiritual things that the scattered ones, and those who had been made to suffer might have assurance that I would not suffer that he whom I had called should betray the confidence of the faithful, nor squander the moneys of the treasury for the purposes of self.

C. And for the reason that the law of tithing was but little understood, and would not be observed, unless it should be taught, and enforced by the precepts of the chief missionaries of the church.

D. It was not then intended, nor is it now, to burden them with the duty of looking after the disbursements of the moneys in the treasury, or the management of the properties of the church;

E. except as it may be at times necessary to do so in council with the Presidency, the high council in case of exigency, the Bishopric, bishops, or bishop’s agents abroad, or the conferences; and in accordance with the agreement hitherto made.

F. Whatever burden the quorum may have felt rested upon them in this regard, they are now absolved from, the end designed by it having been reached;

G. except that should it become apparent to the quorum that there was abuse in the administration of the temporal affairs of the church, they shall at once make such inquiry and examination through the proper officers of the church as will correct the evil and save the church from injury.

6

A. And further the Spirit saith unto you, that “with the Lord one day is as a thousand years, and a thousand years as a day”;

B. therefore, the law given to the church in section forty-two, over the meaning of some parts of which there has been so much controversy, is as if it were given today;

C. and the bishop and his counselors, and the high council, and the bishop and his council, and the storehouse and the temple and the salvation of my people, are the same to me now that they were in that day when I gave the revelation;

D. nevertheless, that portion of that commandment which made it the duty of the high council to assist in looking after the poor and needy of the church, was not intended to put the high council over the bishop in the administration of the affairs of his office and calling,

E. except as they might do so in an advisory manner, and in such way that no one of the poor and the needy should be neglected;

F. nor was it designed that the high council should dictate in the matter of purchasing lands, building houses of worship, building up the New Jerusalem, and the gathering of the people,

G. these last named being within the province of the Presidency, the Twelve as a quorum, the councils or other officers of the branches or stakes where houses of worship are to be built, the conferences and the general assembly of the church, and the direction of the Lord by revelation.

H. The high council could not in justice dictate to the Bishop in direction in any of these matters and then try and condemn and punish him if he did not obey.

7

A. The work now lying before the missionary quorums of the church is of such increased magnitude and importance—the field so white unto the harvest, and the need for laborers so great—that the Twelve and the Seventy under their direction, together with such high priests, and elders as can travel and preach as missionaries, shall be free to wait upon their ministry in gospel work,

B. leaving the branches and districts where organization is effected to the care and administration of the standing ministers, high priest, elders, priests, teachers, and deacons, so far as possible;

C. thus freeing these spiritual authorities and leaving them at liberty to push the preaching of the word into the new fields now widening before them;

D. in which work, if they will but now take counsel, saith the Spirit, they shall feel a peace and vigor of mind surpassing what they have enjoyed in the past.

8

A. That part of the law which says: “It is the duty of the Twelve, also, to ordain and set in order all the other officers of the church,” is to be understood by the revelation which went before and in accordance with which it was written; and which follows after it in the book;

B. and when those officers are ordained and set in their order, in the church, they should be left to administer in the things unto which they were ordained, having charge of the affairs over which they are called and set apart to preside;

C. the Twelve and Seventy administering as those prosecuting the work of preaching with the warning voice, baptizing, organizing and setting in order, then pushing their ministry into other fields until the world is warned.

D. It is the will of God that they do this; yea, verily, thus saith the Spirit, If they will now enter upon this work, leaving the burden of care in organized districts, or conferences to the standing ministry, under the Presidency of the church;

E. observing the law already given to ordain and set high priests or elders to preside in large branches and in districts, and also evangelical ministers, then will those offices set in the church be useful and he who gave the law be honored;

F. the differences between the quorums be healed, confidence be restored and good will and peace come to the people as a cherishing fountain.

9

A. The quorums in respect to authority are designed to take precedence in office as follows: The Presidency, the Twelve, the Seventy in all meetings and gatherings of the membership, where no previous organization has been effected.

B. Where organization has been arranged and officers have been ordained and set in order; the standing ministry in their order; high priests, elders, priests, teachers, and deacons;

C. the parallels are: in the Presidency, the President and his counselors; in the second presidency, the Twelve; in the missionary work, first the Twelve, second, the Seventy; in the standing ministry, the Presidency, second, the high priests; third, the elders, then priests, teachers, and deacons in their order.

10

A. Should the church fall into disorder, or any portion of it, it is the duty of the several quorums of the church, or any one of them to take measures to correct such disorder; through the advice and direction of the Presidency, the Twelve, and the Seventy, or a council of high priests, in case of emergency;

B. and in case the Presidency is in transgression, the Bishop and his council of high priests, as provided in the law; and the Presidency and high council if the Bishop, or his counselors, if high priests, are in transgression.

C. The Scriptures and the church articles and covenants, with the rules adopted by the church, shall govern in procedure.

11

The Spirit saith further: That it is wisdom that the Presidency and Twelve in council together make such appointments as may be necessary to provide for the fields not named in the appointments made by the Presidency and recommended to the Twelve, as may be agreed by them.

12

A. The Spirit saith further: That Lamoni, Iowa, having been made by the agreement of the church under the law of the land the principal place of business of the church, it is wise and expedient that it should be considered and declared by the conference to be the seat of the Presidency of the church, and in due time be made a stake.

B. In the meantime the district may be left to the care of its district organization subject to the direction of the Presidency, no one of the missionary force being appointed to the charge thereof for the conference year, or longer if it shall be found advisable.

13

A. The Spirit saith further: The Twelve should remain at Lamoni, and continue in council with the Presidency and the Bishop, and his counselors if practicable, a sufficient time after the adjournment of conference to counsel together, and agree on the things of the law and the general affairs of the church,

B. so that when the traveling council shall separate for their several fields, there may be no longer reason for distrust, suspicion, or dissension;

C. and if these officers will so counsel together in the spirit of moderation and mutual forbearance and concession, my law will be more perfectly understood by them and a unity of sentiment and purpose will be reached by them.

D. It is the will of your Lord and your God that this should be done. It should have been done before, but the adversary hath hindered, desiring to prevent the success of my work in the earth.

14

For the same reasons in me that it is not expedient to fill the quorums of the First Presidency and the Twelve, who are apostles and high priests, it is not expedient that a patriarch for the church should be indicated and appointed.

15

My servant Thomas W. Smith is in my hand; and his bishopric shall be continued for a season; if he fully recover he will enter again into the work; if I take him unto myself, another will be appointed in his stead when the quorum is filled.

16

A. And now I say unto you mine elders, apostles and high priests of my church, Continue ye in the ministry unto which you have been called; and if ye cannot fully agree on all the points of the law, be patient and be not contentious; so far as you can agree work together without heat, confusion, or malice.

B. Ye are equal in worth of position and place in the work of the church; and if in honor ye shall prefer one another, ye will not strive for precedence or place in duty or privilege, and shall be blessed of me.

17

A. Yea, verily, thus saith the Lord, unto the elders of the church: Continue in steadfastness and faith.

B. Let nothing separate you from each other and the work whereunto you have been called; and I will be with you by my Spirit and presence of power unto the end. Amen.

Joseph Smith

Section 123

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

See the Historical Appendix

Section 124

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Preface

By the grace of God and the Lord Jesus Christ I am permitted to write unto you and the church, in answer to prayer. On the night of the 7th of April in the year of our Lord 1897, and on the morning of the 8th, I was in the Spirit and was commanded to write, and say unto the elders and the church:

1

Thus saith the Spirit of your Lord and Savior Jesus Christ: Your fasting and your prayers are accepted and have prevailed.

2

A. Separate and set apart my servant Alexander Hale Smith to be a counselor to my servant, the President of the church, his brother; and to be patriarch to the church, and an evangelical minister to the whole church.

B. Also, appoint my servant E. L. Kelley, Bishop of the church, to act as counselor to the President of the church, for the conference year, or until one shall be chosen to succeed my servant W. W. Blair, whom I have taken unto myself;

C. he to sit in council with his brethren of the Presidency and act with and for them and the church; though he shall still be and act in the office of his calling of Bishop of the church with his brethren of the Bishopric.

3

The Quorum of Twelve, my servants, may choose and appoint one of their number to take the place of my servant Alexander H. Smith, and if they shall choose William H. Kelley, from among them for this place it will be pleasing unto me; nevertheless, if directed by the spirit of revelation and wisdom they may choose another.

4

A. And, that the quorum may be filled and be prepared to stand as a unit in the councils of the church, in equality with the Presidency and the Seventy, choose and set apart to act as apostles in the Quorum of Twelve, my servants I. N. White, J. W. Wight, and R. C. Evans, for they are called unto this office and calling.

B. And, if these will accept this appointment and remain humble, faithful, and diligent, they shall with their brethren be greatly blessed in ministering the word and bringing souls unto me. Let the quorum be not doubting but believing and I, the Lord, will bless them.

5

A. My servants, the presidents of the Seventy, may with the consent and approval of their brethren of the Seventy sitting in council together, select from their brethren one to take the place of my servant I. N. White, if he accept the appointment to the Quorum of Twelve, and his choosing be approved by the church;

B. and in like manner they may fill any other vacancy that has occurred or may occur; such selection and appointment to be made in the spirit of prayer and supplication and wisdom, and to be approved by the church.

6

A. It is according to the vision that the seven presidents of the Seventy shall preside over the whole number of the Seventy when assembled in council together;

B. the senior, or chosen president of the seven presidents shall preside over the six other presidents in their councils as presidents of the Seventy;

C. and when either quorum is sitting in council, as a quorum, then its chosen president shall preside over its sittings.

D. When any quorum of the Seventy may be sitting, any one, or all of the seven presidents, may at their request, or by invitation of such quorum, be present and take part in the deliberations of such council, but the president of such quorum only shall preside, except by consent of the quorum obtained by vote properly taken.

7

A. The sons of my servant the President of the church, the sons of my servant William W. Blair, whom I have taken to myself, the sons of my servant the Bishop of the church, and the sons of my servants of the leading quorums of the church are admonished,

B. that upon their fathers is laid a great and onerous burden, and they are called to engage in a great work, which shall bring them honor and glory, or shame, contempt and final great loss and destruction;

C. as they shall in uprightness, faithfulness and diligence discharge their duties acceptably to God, or shall in carelessness, slothfulness, or wickedness fail in their calling and ministry therein;

D. and to their sons shall come honor, or shame, as they shall approve, or disapprove themselves to God.

E. These sons of my servants are called, and if faithful shall in time be chosen to places whence their fathers shall fall, or fail, or be removed by honorable release before the Lord and the church.

8

A. The Spirit saith further unto the church, Be of good cheer.

B. It has pleased the Father to accept many of the sacrifices of his people; and, notwithstanding some have fallen while engaged in their work; some have been tried, and are still tried; some have been and are afflicted, yet the Lord has seen the affliction and trial and will accept and bless, and no man shall lose his reward.

—

Brethren of the ministry and members of the church; my soul has been cheered, my spirit and body have been strengthened and my heart made exceeding glad by the blessed and holy influence of the Spirit which was with me, and still is with me as I write; causing me to give praise, honor and glory to God and the Lamb, to whom honor and glory belong, and with whom are might, power and dominion evermore. Amen.

Your servant for Christ's sake.

Joseph Smith
President of the Church
Lamoni, Iowa, April 9, 1897

Section 125

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Statement and Revelation

Before entering further upon the business, I have something to present. I spent a sleepless night. After retiring to my rest, weary, as you must know, I engaged in a season of prayer, quietly, as I had been doing all day; and I suddenly found myself very wide awake; and from that on I was in the Spirit, the spirit of inspiration burning in my breast; and by it I was bidden to come to the house of assembly and tell what was given to me of light and instruction. I trust that it shall be so to you.

Vacancy in the Presidency

1

The successor of my servant W. W. Blair is with the body, but the conditions are not ripe for this addition to the presidency; but it shall be made in due time. In the meantime, let the presidency continue as at present constituted.

Vacancy in the Twelve

2

To fill this vacancy I was instructed to present the name of “my servant Peter Andersen.”

Evangelical Ministers

3

A. The patriarch is an evangelical minister. The duties of this office are to be an evangelical minister; to preach, teach, expound, exhort, to be a revivalist, and to visit branches and districts as wisdom may direct, invitation, request, or the Spirit of God determine and require;

B. to comfort the Saints; to be a father to the church; to give counsel and advice to individuals who may seek for such; to lay on hands for the conferment of spiritual blessing, and if so led, to point out the lineage of the one who is blessed.

4

A. He is to be free from responsibility—ministerial—as a traveling minister, and from the care of the local branch or church and district affairs.

B. When traveling and preaching, holding revival meetings, he is to labor in connection with the branch and district officers, not subject to the ministerial control of the missionary in charge, except he should transcend his bounds and teach false doctrine or be found in transgression.

C. He is not to meddle with branch affairs or district affairs.

D. He is not to listen to complaints made by individuals to him, but if persons insist upon presenting their troubles, he is to request them and require them to make them in writing, signing the name, giving time, place, and character of the trouble, with the witnesses, which it will be his duty to present to the branch or district officers, as the case may require.

E. He is not to be put in charge of either branch or district. These are the privileges which attach to the office of patriarch and evangelical minister.

5

A. The Presiding Patriarch is to be considered the first, and when patriarchs meet in council, is to preside.

B. Besides these duties, the patriarch may meet with quorums in their quorum meetings, where he may be asked for counsel, but will not have either voice or vote, except by courtesy, having no direct control of quorums.

6

A. Other evangelical ministers beside the Presiding Patriarch have similar duties in the districts where they are appointed.

B. Revelations have been given, as my people know, that these men should receive ordination, but hitherto those upon whom this burden has lain have neglected, for the reason that they did not understand the duties and prerogatives that attach to the office. Let my servants take heed and hesitate no longer.

Rules of Representation

7

A. My servant was directed to present to the church rules of representation, and he so stated to the body at different times that he was so led; but the conferences of my people saw proper to

change these articles and rules of representation, and propositions are pending that they be still further changed.

B. The direction of the Spirit is that they be left as they now are until such time as the increased numbers of the members of the church shall require either an enlargement of the number entitled to delegate, or that there may be a closer line drawn as to the number of delegates which the church shall require to meet.

8

The word elders used in the law signifies those holding the Melchisedec priesthood only; all classes and orders of this priesthood are characterized by the word elder.

9

The only qualification for delegates chosen by the branches or districts should be membership and good standing, it being given by the Spirit that those other than the eldership should be represented in this way.

Stakes

10

A. My people are directed to establish two stakes; one at Independence, one at Lamoni, Iowa, organizing them after the pattern which is found in the law; a presiding high priest with counselors, a high council, and a bishop and his counselors.

B. These stakes shall be made to comprise the boundaries of the districts as they now stand, the center at the towns and places named;

C. and the majority of the councils that should be chosen should be residents of the places named, in order that there may ever be a sufficient body to transact the business required.

Tracts

11

A. It is the duty of the church to provide tracts in the Scandinavian, German, Chinese, Japanese, and Portuguese languages, and others, as the missions may require;

B. these tracts to be written by those in the ministry and those of the brothers who are not of the ministry who have a talent for writing, and to be submitted to the Presidency before being published.

C. They should be short, clearly stated, and a sufficient number should be printed to furnish the traveling ministry with the quantities desirable for them to distribute.

Foreign Missions

12

A. The missions abroad other than those in the land of Joseph which were opened officially during the lifetime of the martyrs shall be considered as having been opened unto us, whether they were at once undertaken and prosecuted during the lifetime of the martyrs, or whether subsequent to their death they were prosecuted in righteousness—wherever they were sent.

B. Other missions not thus opened, it will be requisite that the Twelve shall either go, or in the exercise of their missionary authority send, as provided in the law, of the Seventy.

13

A. For prosecuting the work in two of these missions, this is offered and directed:

B. Send the Bishop to England with my servant Gomer T. Griffiths, to aid in arranging the affairs of the church there, organizing the ministry locally and determining what help in the missionary field may be required from America.

C. Authorize the selection and the ordination of a high priest to officiate in the office of bishop in England, that it may be accomplished as soon as practicable and without fail, in answer to the request made by my servants in that land.

D. Authorize the patriarch as one of the Presidency to visit Australia and the islands of the sea, the Society Islands, authorizing him to assist the authorities there in arranging their missionary labor by his advice,

E. and also selecting and ordaining a high priest to act in the office of bishop, carrying with him the authority of the conference.

14

A. Branches and districts are to be conducted according to the rules given in the law as directed in a former revelation: They shall take the things which have been given unto them as my law to the church to be my law to govern my church.

B. And these affairs are not to be conducted by manifestations of the Spirit unless these directions and manifestations come through the regularly authorized officers of branch or district.

C. If my people will respect the officers whom I have called and set in the church, I will respect these officers; and if they do not, they cannot expect the riches of gifts and the blessings of direction.

15

A. Propheying over them that are sick in administering to them has been a fruitful source of trouble among my people.

B. They must observe that this they are not required to do except there be a direct manifestation of the Spirit which may direct it.

C. Pray over the sick, anoint them with oil, as commanded in the law, and leave them in my hands, that the Spirit may deal with them according to my wisdom.

D. Many spiritual manifestations have been had. Some of these have been false, and under the operation of the law which I gave many, many years ago, those who make these false presentations are not to be feared among my people.

E. They are not justified in permitting their human sympathies to overcome that which has been written in my Scriptures. The spirit of the prophets is subject to the prophets.

16

A. The college debt should be paid, the ministers going out from the conferences held by the elders of my church are not expected or authorized to throw obstacles in the way of the accomplishment of that which has been intrusted to the Bishopric to pay this great debt.

B. Their right to free speech, their right to liberty of conscience, does not permit them as individuals to frustrate the commands of the body in conference assembly.

C. They are sent out as ministers to preach the gospel, and their voices if opposed to what may be presented to the conference should be heard in the conferences, and not in the mission fields, to prevent the accomplishment of the object with which the officers of the church have been intrusted.

Section 126

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

To the Officers and Members of the Conference:

1

On the night of April 16 I made the condition of the church a subject of prayer, intensely desirous of receiving light and information in relation thereto and my duty. I awoke at the hour of three and had in presentation the following vision:

2

A. I saw the assembly of the Saints and the general authorities, the latter being arranged upon a platform with the seats arranged in lines, each line from the front of the platform slightly raised to the rear.

B. On that platform I saw the quorum of the Presidency, the Bishopric, the Twelve, and a line above the Twelve on the seat behind them, a number of the brethren, including four of the present members of the Twelve and the patriarchs now ordained and recognized in the church.

C. The Quorum of the Twelve was filled, and the places of the four whom I saw on the upper tier of seats were occupied by others known to the church.

3

I asked the question who these men occupying the upper row of seats were, and I was told that they were evangelical ministers, called to minister in spiritual blessings to the church and to preach the gospel undeterred by the burden of the care and anxiety of presiding over missions and districts.

4

I saw in the Presidency two known to the church, but who have not hitherto been connected with the Presidency.

5

A. I saw the Bishopric as at present constituted, with the attendant bishops upon either side. I asked what was the meaning of this.

B. I was told that the Bishop should not be burdened with the spiritual care of the church except as such might be brought before him in pursuance of the law which provided for the bishop's court.

6

I then asked what was meant by the choosing of members for the presidency so young in years. I was informed that it was for the purpose that before the Presidency should be invaded by death these younger men should be prepared by association to be of assistance to whosoever should be chosen as the President upon the emergency which should occur.

7

A. The names of those of the present Quorum of Twelve whom I saw upon the upper tier of seats were James Caffall, John H. Lake, Edmund C. Briggs, and Joseph R. Lambert. These were sitting with the other evangelical ministers.

B. Those whom I saw sitting with the Quorum of the Twelve were Frederick A. Smith, Francis M. Sheehy, Ulysses W. Greene, Cornelius A. Butterworth, and John W. Rushton.

8

Sitting with the Presidency were Frederick M. Smith and Richard C. Evans.

9

The assembly seemed to be large and orderly, with the different officers of the church in their quorums assembled in much the same order as observed at our annual conferences, but did not seem to be so large as at other times I had seen them.

10

A. In regard to the gathering and the work of the Bishopric in regard to the law of tithing and consecration, I made inquiry what should be the attitude of the church in regard thereto.

B. To this question I was answered, that the Book of Doctrine and Covenants as accepted by the church was to guide the advice and action of the Bishopric, taken as a whole, each revelation contained therein having its appropriate bearing upon each of the others and their relation thereto;

C. and unless the liberties of the people of the church should be in jeopardy, the application of the law as stated by the bishopric should be acceded to.

D. In case there should be a flagrant disregard of the rights of the people, the quorums of the church in joint council should be appealed to, and their action and determination should govern.

E. I inquired what quorums of the church were meant, and I was answered, the three quorums the decisions of which are provided for in the law—the Presidency, the Twelve, and the Seventy.

11

In case of transgression in his office the Bishop should be called in question before the council which is provided for in the law, to which court all the general officers of the church are to be subject.

12

After much thought and pondering upon what I had seen as related above, together with the information contained in the answers to my inquiries, I did not see my way clear to present the matters therein contained in yesterday's session until the church had by its votes sustained the officers of the quorums referred to.

13

It will be seen that there is an apparent invasion of the rule which has been supposed to govern the selection of evangelical ministers, but for this I am not responsible; and the whole matter is hereby submitted for the approval or disapproval of the church.

Joseph Smith

Lamoni, Iowa, April 18, 1902

Section 127

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Thus saith the Spirit unto the Church:

1

- A.** It is the will of the Lord that a sanitarium, a place of refuge and help for the sick and afflicted, be established by the church, at Independence, Missouri, as my servant Joseph Smith has already stated to you.
- B.** This should be done as soon as it is found to be practicable, and without unnecessary delay.
- C.** The Presiding Bishop and his counselors and the Bishopric of the Independence Stake should take counsel together in locating and establishing this sanitarium.

2

- A.** It is also expedient that these should be assisted by the advice and counsel of one of my servants who is acquainted with the laws of health and the practice of medicine, and who may have charge when the institution is established.
- B.** It is in accordance with the instruction given to my servant Joseph Smith that my servant Joseph Luff, who has been giving his attention to the study of medicine and has been preparing himself for usefulness in this direction, be associated with this sanitarium as a medical director and physician to the church and be put in charge,
- C.** that he may be an assistant to those who seek the aid of this institution of the church, in his spiritual office and his calling as a physician,
- D.** with those who from time to time may be called to administer in laying hands upon the afflicted and sick, where they may be removed from the influences and environments unfavorable to the exercise of proper faith unto the healing of the sick.
- E.** And this my servant Joseph Luff may do and retain and exercise his apostleship.

3

There should also be a home for children established, and the efforts of the Daughters of Zion should be approved and carried unto completion as soon as is consistent with the necessary demands of the work of the church in other directions.

4

- A.** In the establishment of the sanitarium and the home for children, debt should not be contracted nor too large nor expensive buildings be built at the outset.
- B.** Those to whom this work is assigned should exercise the necessary degree of wisdom that the work be effectual for the intent and purposes designed.

5

- A.** It is necessary that some one or more be sent to the South Sea Islands. The heaving of the sea beyond its bounds has been trying to the faith of many of the Saints in that far-off region.
- B.** They should be visited and comforted and encouraged.
- C.** Some one of experience and knowledge of the situation should be sent, accompanied by another, who should be prepared to make a stay of years, if necessary, in the mission to those islands.
- D.** My servant Joseph F. Burton, though aged, will be an efficient officer and representative of the faith, and, choosing some one to go with him, may be intrusted with this difficult mission.

6

It is the will of the Lord that the mission to Utah and the west should be continued, and suitable representatives of the church be sent and maintained there under the conditions prevailing at the present time. It is essential that the church have proper representatives there.

7

- A.** As the Saints have heretofore been instructed in reference to the gathering, they are now again admonished that the gathering must not be in haste, nor without due preparation,
- B.** and must be done in accordance with the revelation given to the church upon Fishing River and in accordance with the counsel and advice of the elders of the church whose duty it has been made to counsel and advise the Saints.
- C.** The spirit of speculation, the exhibition of greed for gain is unseemly in the Saints and officers of the church, and should be avoided. It has the appearance of evil.
- D.** Heed should be paid to the admonitions of those who from time to time preach and write upon the gathering to remove the principle of selfishness from the hearts of the Saints and especially from those upon whom rests the burden of the church and its ministrations abroad.

A. Inasmuch as misunderstanding has occurred in regard to the meaning of a revelation hitherto given through my servant Joseph Smith in regard to who should be called to preside in case my servant should be taken away or fall by transgression,

B. it is now declared that in case of the removal of my servant now presiding over the church by death or transgression, my servant Frederick M. Smith, if he remain faithful and steadfast, should be chosen, in accordance with the revelations which have been hitherto given to the church concerning the priesthood.

C. Should my servant Frederick M. Smith prove unstable and unfaithful, another may be chosen, according to the law already given.

Independence, Missouri

April 14, 1906

Section 128

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Preface

To the Eldership; Brethren: So far as the burden of the conference and its peculiar conditions have enabled me to do I have steadfastly presented the matter stated by the Bishop for our consideration to the Lord for instruction. Whether that which has come to me will bring relief to the situation, I know not; but such as it is, I hereby present it.

1

A. The conditions surrounding the work, the increase of the membership of the church, the increasing desire for gathering together, and the necessity existing for the obtaining places for settlement in the regions round about,

B. under the existing laws of the United States, and especially the state of Missouri, require that the Bishopric be authorized to take such measures as will bring to pass the organization of those who are desirous and willing to form parts in colonization under terms of association in different localities

C. where settlements may be made and may lawfully secure and hold property for the benefit of themselves and their fellow church members and the whole body of the church when organized.

2

A. The work to be done belongs to those who are by command of God made the custodians of the properties of the church;

B. and these by their appointment are empowered to prosecute the work of caring for and using such properties as are confided to their care to accomplish the end designed.

3

A. The Bishop and his counselors, together with the other bishops of the church, and such other officers as the Bishop may call together, with whom he may confer in council, are authorized to devise the methods of procedure;

B. and they will be guided by the spirit of wisdom and revelation to do the work intrusted to their care.

4

- A.** Counsel has already been given to those gathering into the regions round about to consult with the elders and the bishops before removing into those regions,
- B.** that such removal may be accomplished through the having of all things prepared before them who seek to remove and become resident in the regions round about.

5

It is well to understand that the term regions round about must mean more than a small area of country round about the central spot, and that the necessity of the great majority of the church in gathering together can only be provided for by settling carefully together as many in one region as may be practicable and profitable and in accordance with the feelings of the people under the laws existing in the places where such settlements are to be made.

6

- A.** The great variety of callings, avocations, and professions will present difficulties precluding the practicability of all settling and living in near proximity to each other.
- B.** It is therefore within the province of those upon whom the burden of organization may rest to provide for other organizations or associations than those simply pastoral or agricultural.
- C.** Under this head there may be placed industrial associations of such sorts as the varied qualifications existing among workmen may demand.

7

- A.** It has been prophesied that the Gentiles shall assist in rebuilding the waste places of Zion.
- B.** This cannot refer to the inhabitants of Zion who are the pure in heart, but must refer to the places which have been occupied or which it may be contemplated to occupy in the regions round about.
- C.** The Saints cannot occupy in any place on the land of Zion which is not under the domination of civil law, and as citizens of the state, holding their liberties under the law, there must be a proper recognition and observance of these laws.
- D.** The Lord has said that this condition of obedience to law must continue until he comes whose right it is to come and assumes to reign over his people.
- E.** Under the provisions of the laws these organizations or associations must be instituted and carried to completion if they shall be of benefit to those who shall be engaged in them.

8

A. The Spirit saith further: That these organizations contemplated in the law may be effected and the benefits to be derived therefrom be enjoyed by the Saints, in such enjoyment they cannot withdraw themselves so completely from a qualified dependence upon their Gentile neighbors surrounding them as to be entirely free from intercommunication with them;

B. yet it is incumbent upon the Saints while reaping the benefits of these organizations to so conduct themselves in the carrying into operation the details of their organizations as to be in the world but not of it,

C. living and acting honestly and honorably before God and in the sight of all men, using the things of this world in the manner designed of God, that the places where they occupy may shine as Zion, the redeemed of the Lord.

9

The Bishop should be directed and authorized to proceed as soon as it shall be found practicable by consultation with the general authorities of the church who are made the proper counselors in spiritual and temporal things to carry out the provisions of the law of organization which are by the law made the duty of the Bishop.

Joseph Smith

Lamoni, Iowa, April 18, 1909

Section 129

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Preface

To the Church: After constant meditation and prayer, both before and after coming to conference and during the sessions, so far as the peculiar conditions obtaining in our sittings had permitted, I was in the Spirit during the nights of the 15th and 16th of the month and the day passing between at such times during the calm that occasionally ensued and the quiet of the night when the burden of my care forbade sleep. My dreams also have been enlightening and encouraging.

1

A. The voice of the Spirit to me is: Under conditions which have occurred it is no longer wise that my servant R. C. Evans be continued as counselor in the Presidency;

B. therefore it is expedient that he be released from this responsibility and another be chosen to the office. He has been earnest and faithful in service and his reward is sure.

2

A. My servant Joseph Luff cannot fulfill the duties of a member of the Quorum of Twelve in actively looking after and caring for the missionary work in the field and discharge the duties of his calling as a physician ministering to the many seeking his advice and aid with safety to himself and others.

B. It is wise therefore that the church release him from the responsibilities of the active apostleship as a member of the quorum, that he may act unreservedly in his calling.

C. Another may be chosen to the office in the quorum. He has been faithful, and his record and reward are in my hand.

3

A. That the historian of the church, my servant Heman C. Smith, may more freely and efficiently pursue his duties and privileges as historian, the church may release him from the burden attendant upon him as an apostle in the quorum and choose another to occupy therein.

B. He has been long in the service, has done his duties well in the spirit of self-sacrifice, and his reward is with me. He will be blessed in diligent service in his calling as historian when relieved of the double responsibility.

4

These my servants who are relieved from their responsibilities of the quorum work have wrought well in their service with their fellow-servants, and must retain their right to labor in the ministry, holding the high priesthood and entitled to all that appertains to that calling when need requires or wisdom directs.

5

The Spirit saith further to me: To fill the vacancy caused by the releasing of Counselor R. C. Evans, present the name of my servant Elbert A. Smith, the son of my servant David H. Smith, who was taken and who awaits his reward, to be chosen, appointed, and ordained as counselor to my servant Joseph Smith and to be one of the Presidency.

6

A. The Spirit saith further: In order that the places of those taken from the Twelve may be supplied and the quorum filled that it may act as a whole, my servants J. F. Curtis and Robert C. Russell may be chosen and set apart to the office of apostles and be enrolled and sustained in the quorum.

B. Other servants there are who will be called and appointed ere long, but not now.

7

A. Those who are holding the office of patriarchs are to be enrolled with the high priests, the same as the bishops, who are acting in their office by virtue of their being high priests.

B. These men in their office are an order in the priesthood, the same as the high councils of the church and the stakes and as the bishops who hold as high priests, as the quorum of the twelve, and as the presidency are but orders in the priesthood, there being but two priesthoods; and these are orders in the Melchisedec priesthood.

C. There is no difference in the priesthood, though there may be and is in the office in which the several orders may occupy and act.

8

A. The Spirit saith further: The attention of the church is called to the consideration of the revelation, given in answer to earnest supplication, with regard to temporal things.

B. The word has been already given in agreement with revelations long since delivered to the church, that the temporalities of the church were to be under the charge and care of the Bishopric, men holding the office of bishop under a presiding head acting for the church in the

gathering, caring for, and disbursing the contributions gathered from the Saints of moneys and properties under the terms of tithing, surplus, free will offerings, and consecrations.

C. The word which has been given at a late period should not have been so soon forgotten and disregarded by the church or any of its members.

D. “I am God; I change not”; has been known to the church and the eldership since the coming of the angel with the message of restoration.

E. Under it the church has sought the Lord and received from time to time that which was deemed sufficient for the time to govern the church and its ministers, both of the spiritual and the temporal divisions of the work.

F. The church has been directed to accede to the rendition of the Bishopric with respect to the temporal law;

G. and until such heed is paid to the word which has been given, and which is in accordance with other revelations given to the church, which had been before given, the church cannot receive and enjoy the blessings which have been looked for when Zion should be fully redeemed.

H. Therefore, hearken once again unto the voice of inspiration, in warning and instruction, and conform to that which is given and receive what is awaiting the upright and the pure in heart.

9

A. The Spirit saith further unto the church: The Lord is well pleased with the advancement which has been made in approaching unity during the conference year;

B. and though there may have been differences of opinion, these differences have been held in unity of purpose and desire for the good of my people, and will result in helping to bring to pass a unity of understanding.

C. So be ye encouraged and press on to the consummation designed of God for his people—unity, honor, sanctification, and glory. Amen.

Joseph Smith

Lamoni, Iowa, April 18, 1909

Section 130

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

In obedience to the spirit and design of the day of fasting and prayer, I observed the day with the church. I have hitherto made supplication to the God whom we serve and renewed my supplication in the spirit of the desire of the church, for instruction and light, and I am now prepared to lay before the church what has come to me as the presiding officer, through whom the Master may speak to his people.

2

A. Thus saith the voice of the Spirit: In order that the Quorum of Twelve may be placed in better condition to carry on the work of the ministry in various fields of occupation,

B. it is expedient that Elders W. H. Kelley, I. N. White, and J. W. Wight be released from the active duties of the apostolic quorum, on account of increasing infirmities of age and incapacity, caused by illness of body,

C. and stand with their associates among the high priests and patriarchs of the church for such special service as may be open to them, according to wisdom and the call of the Spirit.

3

A. It is also expedient that Elder Frederick A. Smith be released from the quorum activities, that he may take the place of his father, Elder Alexander H. Smith, as the Presiding Patriarch of the church.

B. According to the tradition of the elders he should be chosen and ordained to this office, thus releasing Elder Joseph R. Lambert from the onerous duties in which he has faithfully served since the death of the Presiding Patriarch.

4

A. To fill the vacancies caused by the release of these elders from the apostolic quorum, Elders James E. Kelley, William M. Aylor, Paul M. Hanson, and James A. Gillen may be chosen and ordained as apostles to take with others of the quorum active oversight of the labors in the ministerial field.

B. These servants, so called and chosen, if faithful, will receive the blessings which those have enjoyed who have preceded them in the apostolic quorum,

C. and will be entitled to receive such ministration of the Spirit as will continue to qualify them for the discharge of the duties of the position whereunto they are called.

D. The Twelve in its reorganization for its work may choose its own officers (president and secretary) by nomination and vote.

5

A. The Spirit saith further: Elder E. A. Blakeslee is hereby called into the more active participation of the duties of the Bishopric than he has hitherto engaged in,

B. in order that he may give such assistance to the Bishop, E. L. Kelley, as is essential unto the success of the work intrusted to the Bishopric.

C. It is also expedient that he be ordained unto the office of Bishop, that he may serve as did his father, George A. Blakeslee, who has preceded him.

6

A. The Spirit saith further: That the Bishopric may be still further put in condition to perform the duties of the office of caring for the temporalities of the church, the imminent necessity of which appears clear to all,

B. the church should authorize the Presiding Bishop to make choice of someone who may be qualified to take active participation in the work of the Bishopric and become in due time a part thereof;

C. and this one so chosen should receive the support and sanction of the church until he shall have approved or disapproved himself as a servant of the Master, in the office whereunto he shall be called.

7

A. The Spirit saith further unto the church assembled and at large:

B. In order that the temporal affairs of the church may be successfully carried on and the accumulated debt of the church in its respective departments where debts have accumulated may be properly met and in due time discharged,

C. the church is instructed, both as members and as the body at large, to avoid the unnecessary building of houses of worship or places of entertainment or otherwise expending the tithes and offerings of the church in that which may not be essential unto the continued onward progress of the general work;

D. and both in private and in public expenditure carry into active exercise the principle of sacrifice and repression of unnecessary wants;

E. and thus permit the accumulation of tithes and offerings in such amounts as may be needful to properly discharge the existing indebtedness of the church as a body. And the Spirit counseleth the church in this regard.

8

A. The Spirit saith further: That the elders and delegates assembled in business capacity are counseled to cease permitting the spirit of recrimination and accusation to find place in their discourse, either public or private,

B. as it tends to destroy confidence and create distrust not only in those present at councils where they occur, but to those to whom the knowledge of such a course of procedure comes by the voice of those who are present and witness what is said and done.

C. There should be harmony, and the Spirit enjoins it upon all, that the Master may be remembered as in meekness and due sobriety he carried on the great work to which he was called.

9

A. The Spirit saith further: That the church has been warned heretofore that the sons of the leading officers of the church are called and may be chosen to the respective offices to which the Spirit may direct,

B. and the church should be prepared when necessity arises to properly choose such officers as may be pointed out as those who should fill the positions to which they are respectively called.

C. There are others still in reserve who are fitted through the testimony that Jesus is the Christ and the doctrine is true to serve as those who are sent as apostles of peace, life, and salvation to those who are laboring in the valleys of humiliation and distress of spirit.

Lamoni, Iowa, April 14, 1913

Section 131

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

1

A. In agreement with the notice for the general fast of the church to be observed on the first Sunday, being the fifth day of April, 1914, I, Joseph Smith, President of the church, in common with the custom of the brotherhood, observed the rule requiring the fast, and spent that day in meditation and prayer upon the work of God and our present duty in the affairs intrusted to our care.

B. Before the hour of breaking the fast came, I was blessed by the presence of the Holy Spirit resting upon me in quiet assurance and in power.

C. In the still small voice which giveth light and understanding to the intelligence of man, exalting the soul and sanctifying the spirit, there came unto me the directing voice of Him whose work we are engaged in.

2

A. Thus saith the Spirit unto the church: The time has now come when the necessities of the work require that the servants of the church, Bishops Edwin A. Blakeslee and Edmund L. Kelley, should be more closely associated in the carrying on of the financial affairs of the church and caring for the various organizations requiring the expenditure of moneys collected from the membership of the church and the care of the properties belonging to the church as an organization under the laws of the church and of the land.

B. To accomplish this object the servant of the church, Edwin A. Blakeslee, should make himself more thoroughly acquainted with the affairs in the office of the Bishopric, that he may be better prepared to advise, strengthen, and aid in controlling the affairs of the Bishopric to the successful accomplishment of the object in view when he was called and ordained to the Bishopric.

3

A. The Spirit saith further, that it is expedient that additional aid be given to the Bishopric in charge of the general affairs of the finances,

B. and to do this Richard C. Kelley, son of my servant Bishop Edmund L. Kelley, should be called and ordained to the office of an elder, that he may act with the Bishopric in case of necessities and to work in the office of the Bishop in looking after and caring for the affairs appertaining to that office;

C. and in due time, if he approve himself in this work, he should receive an ordination to the high priesthood which would authorize him to act fully as a part of the Bishopric.

4

A. The Spirit saith further, that the spirit of distrust and want of confidence in those who are called and ordained to act in the various responsible positions in the priesthood and in authority in the church is unbecoming those professing faith in God, Jesus Christ his Son, and the Holy Spirit of truth, and evinces a serious lack of that charity which Paul, an apostle of Christ, declared to be the quality of Christian virtue which thinketh no evil.

B. Those who go out from the assemblies and solemn conclaves of the church should exercise great care in their ministration abroad both to the branches where they may officiate and in their preaching the gospel to those outside, to avoid sowing seeds of distrust and suspicion either in public ministration or in private conversation.

C. The church has been admonished heretofore in this respect and the Spirit saith again, It is unbecoming to the character and calling of those who administer in the name of Jesus Christ the Lord.

5

In witness whereof I, Joseph Smith, president and servant of the church, hereto set my hand this fourteenth day of April, in the year of our Lord, 1914.

(Signed) Joseph Smith

Section 132

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Preface

The matter of selecting one to succeed Bishop E. L. Kelley in the office of Presiding Bishop has received by me careful and prayerful consideration.

1

I am therefore now prepared to say that the voice of the Spirit to me is, that Bishop E. L. Kelley should be released from the responsibilities of Presiding Bishop, though he may act as traveling bishop, counseling and advising on the law of temporalities in harmony with his successor and the Presidency.

2

Let Benjamin R. McGuire be set apart and ordained Presiding Bishop of the church, and two of the brethren be set apart as counselors to him, one to be selected by him and supported by the conference, the other to be Bishop James F. Keir.

3

A. I admonish the church, and particularly those of the priesthood, that the hastening time being upon us there is great necessity for confidence in the men of the church chosen for positions of great responsibility,

B. and all should consecrate of their talents, abilities, and substance for the prosecution of the great work intrusted to us.

4

Everywhere the demand for great activity exists, and for the accomplishment of our work the great essential is fraternal cooperation in service to man and devoted consecration to God and his work.

Your servant,

Frederick M. Smith
Independence, Missouri
April 5, 1916

Section 133

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Preface

To the Church: Having given to the general missionary needs of the church and the condition of the Quorum of Twelve much thought and prayer, I am permitted to say to the church by way of instruction, through inspiration received:

1

Let Francis M. Sheehy and Peter Andersen be released from the Quorum of Twelve; and to fill the vacancies created by these releases let Myron A. McConley and Thomas W. Williams be ordained apostles.

2

A. Let the Quorum of Twelve be admonished that to discharge the responsibilities of the burden of the missionary work upon them, they should in humility before God and in sincerity of purpose apply themselves to this great task with unreserved devotion. The work in this line must be hastened.

B. Let them not be unduly concerned with the work of the standing ministry, only as they shall be directed by the Presidency therein; and let contention cease concerning the prerogatives of the leading quorums.

C. The work awaiting the efforts of the missionary forces is great and there is no time for contentions.

D. Let the apostles move out, as they have in the past been directed, in the task of taking to the peoples of the world the message of peace, and they shall find comfort and satisfaction in their labors.

Frederick M. Smith
President of the Church
Independence, Missouri
April 7, 1920

Section 134

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Preface

To the Church: To the matter of filling the leading quorums of the church in which vacancies now exist I have given prayerful and careful consideration and meditation, and the voice of inspiration to me is:

1

Let Floyd M. McDowell be ordained counselor to the president as a member of the First Presidency to fill the vacancy now existing.

2

Let Gomer T. Griffiths, Ulysses W. Greene, Cornelius A. Butterworth, and Robert C. Russell be released from further responsibility as apostles, to devote their activities as their strength and opportunity might permit, to local work or as evangelical ministers as might be determined by subsequent procedure.

3

To fill the vacancies in the Quorum of Twelve let the following be ordained apostles: Clyde F. Ellis, John F. Garver, Daniel T. Williams, F. Henry Edwards, Edmund J. Gleazer, Roy S. Budd.

4

Let James A. Gillen be ordained president of the Quorum of Twelve.

5

A. The field is large and the time opportune.

B. Let the missionary work be prosecuted with great vigor, and if the Twelve will devote themselves wholeheartedly to this work the church will be greatly blessed through their ministrations.

6

A. And let the Quorum of Twelve be further admonished that upon them rests the onerous burden of the missionary work of the church,

B. and be not concerned with local administrative work except in emergencies or as sent by the Presidency, leaving the care of the local work to those officers previously indicated in the law.

7

Let contention cease.

Frederick M. Smith
Independence, Missouri
October 2, 1922

Section 135

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Preface

To the Church: Before and since the decision of the conference to have a season of prayer for divine direction in the matter before the conference I have presented to the Lord the needs of the people; and through the voice of inspiration I am directed to say to the church:

1

It is wisdom that the brethren of the present Presiding Bishopric be released from further responsibility in that office, and that Albert Carmichael be ordained to act in the office of Presiding Bishop for a time, he to choose from among the bishops two to act as counselors.

2

A. It is well that the documents from the joint council of April, 1924, have been approved; and the church is admonished once again that the great task laid upon it cannot be accomplished if contention continues.

B. The hastening time is here and greater unity than ever before is necessary if the forces of opposition are to be met;

C. and such unity will prevail if those holding the priesthood will remember their commission to preach the gospel, and each officer will strive to discharge his own duty and magnify his calling.

3

A. The promise has been given that no power shall stay the hand of God in the accomplishment of his purposes among his people;

B. and as the church shall move forward in its great work, the fulfillment of prophecy may cause the Saints to tremble at the exhibition of divine power, yet they shall rejoice in the protection of his grace.

4

The authorities of the church whose duty it is to appoint men to missionary tasks should remember the previously given instructions to send out by twos; and so far as practicable let the missionaries be so sent. There is wisdom and safety in this.

Your servant,

Frederick M. Smith
Kansas City, Missouri
April 18, 1925

Section 136

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Preface

To the Church: To the condition of the church and the personnel of the Quorum of Twelve and Presiding Bishopric I have in official capacity as well as in personal meditation and prayer given much thought, and have earnestly sought divine wisdom and guidance. Believing that such wisdom and inspiration have been given me, I present the following as the word of the Lord to us now:

1

A. Under conditions existing it is well that Bishop Albert Carmichael should be released from further responsibility as Presiding Bishop, he being commended for the faithful devotion to the onerous tasks which have been his to perform.

B. In his stead let Bishop L. F. P. Curry be chosen to give such time and energy to this office as opportunity and the conditions surrounding him will permit, working toward the time when he can give his full time and attention to the work of the office to which he is thus called.

C. In the work of the office Bishop G. Leslie DeLapp should be associated as counselor, and one other be named by Bishop Curry, as wisdom and the voice of inspiration may indicate, the selection to be ratified by the conference.

2

To fill a vacancy existing in the number of the Twelve, let George G. Lewis be set apart and ordained as an apostle, and take his place with that quorum, and enter with his brethren upon the active work of the apostolic quorum and as representatives of the church.

3

A. The movements toward better understanding of ministerial responsibilities, duties, and goals, and toward unity of endeavor in teaching, preaching, evangelizing, and the perfecting of the Saints, are pleasing to the Lord.

B. Contentions, bickerings, and strife are unseemly, hinder the work of the church, and should not find place among the Saints.

C. Only in the peace of fraternity and the unity of those caught up in the spirit of Zion's redemption can the work of the Lord be accomplished. To this task let the church devote its energies.

Frederick M. Smith
President of the Church
Independence, Missouri
April 14, 1932

Section 137

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Preface

To the Church: Since the creation of two vacancies in the Quorum of Twelve I have been quite concerned about the condition of that quorum, as well as other bodies in the church, and after due meditation and prayer for divine light, I am permitted to present the following for the consideration and action of the conference members:

1

Let J. Frank Curtis, of the Twelve, who has long and faithfully served in that quorum, be honorably released from further responsibility as an apostle, and take place in the ranks of the order of evangelists.

2

To fill the vacancies in the Quorum of Twelve, let the following named brethren be ordained and set apart as apostles: C. George Mesley, Arthur A. Oakman, and Charles R. Hield.

3

It is wise that Frederick A. Smith, who has become aged in long years of faithful service to the church in various offices, be released from further responsibility as active president of the order of evangelists, though he may be given the honor of being president emeritus of that order.

4

A. To maintain the working condition of the order of evangelists, let Elbert A. Smith be released from further responsibility as counselor to the president of the church, to take up the work of presiding over the order of evangelists.

B. And let the church be admonished that the functioning and work of this order is of great importance in the work of perfecting the Saints, and the appointing authorities be reminded that the members of the order so far as possible are to be relieved of administrative work and keep themselves in condition for better functioning as evangelists whose task is to build up faith in the gospel and the church and its work.

C. And let those whose duty it is to select from the members of the priesthood those for setting apart as evangelists be admonished that the work of this class of ministers requires vigor, deep faith, and unreserved consecration, and men should be selected accordingly.

5

Until such time as the vacancy in the First Presidency shall be duly filled, let the work of the presidency be carried on with the aid of such assistants as may be arranged without undue interference with other departments.

6

A. Let the church be admonished that the times are portentous and demand faithful adherence to the faith and work of the church, that mankind may be blessed by and find peace in those religiously social reforms and relationships which have been divinely imposed as a great task of achievement.

B. Remember and keep the commandments, be alert to keep out of the church and from its members those forces which make for disunity, and in harmony and saintly accord be about the task of freeing Zion from her bondage.

Frederick M. Smith
President of the Church
Independence, Missouri
April 7, 1938

Section 138

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

To the Saints in General Conference Assembled:

1

A. As a result of the conditions existing when the Joint Council of First Presidency, Quorum of the Twelve and Presiding Bishopric, met in October, 1938, Brother Floyd M. McDowell, Second Counselor, presented his resignation to me to take effect immediately.

B. This left the President without Counselors; and to meet the situation, acting under such inspirational impulses as were given me at the moment, I presented the names of Brethren Israel A. Smith and Lemuel F. P. Curry to fill the vacancies in the First Presidency, these selections being unanimously approved by the Quorum of Twelve.

C. I suggested to the brethren named the wisdom of at once entering upon their tasks in the Presidency.

D. This was done, and there was thrown upon Brother Curry a double responsibility, for it was thought best for him to continue his work as Presiding Bishop until further instructions were given.

E. Acting further under the impulsion referred to I now present the names of Israel A. Smith and Lemuel F. P. Curry for ratification as Counselors in the First Presidency, Brother Curry to be released from further responsibility as Presiding Bishop.

2

To effect necessary reorganization of the Presiding Bishopric let G. Leslie DeLapp be selected and ordained as Presiding Bishop, he being left free to nominate his counselors in due time.

3

A. Let the church again be admonished that the task of establishing Zion presses heavily upon us.

B. Barriers and hindrances to the achievement of this goal should be removed as speedily as possible and practicable.

C. To lay securely the foundations for Zion and her buildings the work should be accomplished in peace and harmony. Unity should prevail.

D. To this end all the Saints should work together in the rich fraternity which can and will prevail among them when they keep faithfully the commandments.

E. Great blessings are in store for the church if it will in faith and saintly devotion go forward in its tasks.

Frederick M. Smith
President of the Church
Independence, Missouri
April 10, 1940

Section 139

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Preface

To the Quorums and to the General Conference;

Beloved Brethren:

Realizing our urgent need to receive light and instruction in order that the quorums might be filled, I have wrestled in prayer to God in my weakness, on behalf and in the interest of the church, sensing deeply that it has been but a few hours ago when the burden of the church was laid upon me, yet in confidence and faith that God will not fail the church when called upon.

In the early hours of yesterday and today I was blessed by the Spirit in power and assurance such as I have never before experienced. The mind of the Lord was manifested to me, and in the order named my brethren have been presented to me, as follows, and accordingly I have written:

1

A. “It is my will, saith the Spirit, that my servants of the Quorum of Twelve, John F. Garver and F. Henry Edwards, be ordained and set apart to be counselors to my servant, the president of the church, and to be presidents in the Quorum of the First Presidency.

B. They are my chosen vessels and are qualified by experience. Their apostleship is extended in presidency and if they will go forward in loving service, their ministry will be very effective.

2

A. To fill one of the vacancies in the Quorum of Twelve Apostles, I have presented to my servant the name of D. Blair Jensen of the High Priests Quorum, who is called and chosen to this office, and should be ordained and set apart as a special witness in the Quorum of Twelve.”

B. My heart has been made to rejoice, as I feared that through my weakness and inexperience, the work of the church might suffer loss. I present this word to you soon after its reception, and, as I write, it is confirmed again unto me.

C. May God bless you in your deliberations; and if the quorums and the body shall have this message confirmed unto them, I shall rejoice, and I have faith that the church thereby will be blessed.

Your servant in Christ,

Israel A. Smith
President of the Church
Independence, Missouri
April 9, 1946

Section 140

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Preface

To the Quorums and Councils of the Church and to the General Conference:

For some time I have given prayerful consideration to the church and its present needs, in harmony with the call for prayer, and I am directed to present the following as the will of the Lord:

1

- A.** The unity among my people and in the councils of the church is commendable.
- B.** If those of the priesthood will perform their responsibilities in good fellowship, and sustain each other, they will be supported by the faith and prayers of the church and the work will go forward with increasing power.

2

To fill vacancies already existing, let Roscoe E. Davey and Maurice L. Draper, now serving as Seventies, be ordained Apostles and occupy with their brethren in the Quorum of Twelve.

3

My servant John W. Rushton has served his generation and the church long and faithfully, and he is honorably released from further responsibility as a member of the Quorum of Twelve, continuing to minister in his priesthood as he can and may desire, without specific assignment. His works are with me and his reward is sure.

4

A. W. Wallace Smith is called and should be ordained an Apostle and take his place in the councils of the church.

B. This call was made known before, but my servant withheld it from the body for reasons that he believed were sufficient.

5

A. The church is admonished again that all movements toward Zion and the gathering and temporalities connected therewith are within my law, and all things should be done in order,

B. the advice and counsel of the elders and of the Bishop and his council be sought and honored when received, as before enjoined, though of necessity their counsel when given is not intended to dictate or to deny any man his agency.

C. The work of preparation and the perfection of my Saints go forward slowly, and Zionic conditions are no further away nor any closer than the spiritual condition of my people justifies;

D. but my word shall not fail, neither will my promises, for the foundation of the Lord standeth sure.

Respectfully submitted,

Israel A. Smith
Independence, Missouri
April 7, 1947

Section 141

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Preface

To the Quorums, Councils and Orders of the Church and the General Conference:

Since the day set for a fast and especially since the loss by death of Apostle Lewis, I have been led to seek the divine mind respecting the needs of the body. Light and intelligence have been manifested as a result, and I am permitted to present the following by way of encouragement and direction:

To the Church:

1

My servant George G. Lewis has been taken for mine own purposes. He has been faithful, and his labors have been acceptable to me.

2

My servant Myron A. McConley is honorably released from further duty as an Apostle, and he should be ordained to the office of evangelist and labor as a member of that order.

3

In order that the Council of Twelve may be filled and the work of that Quorum be carried forward, it is my will that my servants Percy E. Farrow and Reed M. Holmes be ordained and set apart unto the apostolic office and appointed to mission responsibility.

4

A. There are others of the leading councils who have likewise served faithfully, whose ministry in my wisdom is continued for a season, but who may be taken to myself, or because of age or infirmity released in mine own due time.

B. There are those with the body of my priesthood who are called and who will be chosen to succeed them, if faithful; therefore, all are admonished to qualify themselves in spirit by ministry and by witnessing for Christ.

5

The hastening time is upon us; the period until the next General Conference, as already provided, must be one of unusual preparation for my church as an organization, for my people, and especially for my priesthood if there shall be those who will be qualified to assume and to carry the responsibilities of those who fall or fail or who are released.

6

A. Let the Seventies under appointment as far as practicable relieve my servants of the Quorum of Twelve from labor in outlying or undeveloped areas, and let the Twelve seek to perfect the work in regions closer to the Center, opening up the work in new places.

B. In these labors, the standing ministers, and especially district and stake authorities, are called to assist.

C. Many of the elders not under appointment have a desire and will labor in new places if requested and given responsibility.

7

A. The unity and spirit of tolerance evidenced by my servants in the councils of the church are commended of me.

B. Each should strive prayerfully for sustained and greater devotion to the work whereunto he is called.

C. My servants should not become weary of well-doing. The adversary is quick to discourage and thus destroy their effectiveness.

8

A. The church is admonished again that joint responsibility is laid on all.

B. Properly and equally borne, this responsibility will insure success, the consummation will be glorious, and all will share in that glory.

Israel A. Smith
Servant of the Church
Independence, Missouri
October 2, 1948

Section 142

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Preface

We approach the General Conference with a vacancy in our official circle. The death of President Garver left the Quorum of the First Presidency incomplete. This and other conditions have given me grave concern for the church.

I have earnestly sought divine guidance, and it is with gratitude that I am able to transmit through the appointed channels that which the voice of inspiration directs me to say:

To the Elders and the Church:

1

A. It is wisdom that the leading quorums should be filled. Therefore, to take the place of my servant John F. Garver, whose sacrifices and labor were acceptable to me,

B. it is my will that William Wallace Smith be ordained and set apart to take his place as counselor to the president of the high priesthood and as a member of the Quorum of the First Presidency, to which office he is now called.

2

To fill the vacancy thus created in the Quorum of Twelve, Donald O. Chesworth is called. He should be ordained to the office of an apostle, and be relieved of his present bishopric, and assume the duties of a special witness in that council.

3

My servants of the Joint Council are commended for the spirit of moderation which they have shown in their deliberations. I have accordingly blessed their efforts, and the Cause has been measurably enriched.

4

A. The church as a whole is commended for the spiritual growth and the preparation of the priesthood during the conference period, and this necessary work should proceed.

B. It will be profitable for my servants of the eldership to meet often for study, under the direction of those having responsibility to teach, at such times and places as may be practicable, in

preparation for the greater endowment of spiritual power which has been promised and which awaits the time when they can receive it.

5

A. The hopes of my people and the goals of my church, while not yet fully realized, and at times and to many seemingly distant, are closer to realization than many recognize.

B. It is yet day when all can work. The night will come when for many of my people opportunity to assist will have passed.

Your Servant,

Israel A. Smith
Independence, Missouri
April 2, 1950

Section 143

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

To the Councils, Quorums, and Orders of the Church and to the General Conference:

1

A. When I was in England in 1952 I was given the assurance that Donald V. Lents, a high priest, was called to be an apostle.

B. Now that there is a vacancy in the Council of Twelve, and realizing the great need for apostolic ministry and direction, I have made it a subject of prayer, and I am directed to submit this name to you, the voice of inspiration to me being:

2

My servant Donald V. Lents is called and he is now chosen to the holy office of an apostle and should be ordained to that office as soon as practicable. Pending that time he should be placed in charge of the English and European Missions.

3

A. The voice of inspiration to me also is as follows:

It is wisdom for the church to accept the direction of the Council of Presidents of Seventy and complete their organization. My servants of this council should not be overcareful in selecting elders, under the law, to occupy as Seventies.

B. The field of opportunity in new places is great in all areas, and there are many who earnestly desire to do missionary work who are called to be Seventies, and when they are ordained to that office the church should devise ways and means, as far as practicable, for them to be given missionary assignment.

4

The growing desire for missionary work will be amply rewarded, and the church will be blessed even more than in the past.

Israel A. Smith
Servant of the Church
Independence, Missouri
April 7, 1954

Section 144

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

To the church and to the Council of Twelve Apostles:

1

As I am about to go overseas and realize the usual hazards of travel, and being ever conscious of the uncertainties of life and the certainty of death, and in order that my demise, whether soon or longer postponed, may not cause confusion, I hereby declare that in the event of my death, whenever it shall occur, my brother, William Wallace Smith, should be selected to succeed me as president of the high priesthood of the church, this having been manifested to me by the Lord at the time he was chosen and set apart as an apostle and again when he was called to be a counselor and member of the Quorum of the First Presidency, at the General Conference of 1950.

2

I feel at liberty to make this appointment at this time because he has become better acquainted with the members since he was called in 1947 and has proved himself to the body.

3

This action is taken by me pursuant to the authority vested in me by the terms of Section 43 of the book of Doctrine and Covenants, in connection with other references in the law, notably paragraph 8 of Section 127, all as interpreted by my father, the late President Joseph Smith, in the Saints' Herald of March [13th], 1912, and all of which I believe is in complete harmony with precedents established by the church in General Conferences of 1860, 1915, and 1946.

(Signed) Israel A. Smith

Witnessed this 28th day of May, 1952

F. Henry Edwards

G. Leslie DeLapp

Section 145

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Preface

Since it became apparent that the burden of its prophetic leadership would be mine, I have given additional prayerful consideration to the needs of the church, and have sought earnestly for light with such powers of mind and body as are at my command. As a result of this, and other experiences which I deem inspirational, I bring this word to the Saints as being the mind and will of God unto his people.

It is now almost seven weeks since the initial experience took place. As I write, these things are confirmed unto me.

To the Elders of the Church and the General Conference:

1

I have taken unto myself my own. It was wisdom that my servant Israel A. Smith be released from his onerous duties. He has found his reward with the faithful.

2

It is my will that F. Henry Edwards be sustained as a counselor to the President of the High Priesthood and the Church, and as a member of the quorum of the First Presidency. He is called to this office by reason of his preparation through long years of faithful service and should be ordained for the strength and support he can give to his associates and in the councils of my church.

3

To fill the other vacancy in the quorum of the First Presidency Maurice L. Draper is called from among his brethren. His apostleship is extended in presidency as he takes his place as a counselor to the President of the Church and a member of the quorum of the First Presidency.

4

A. Due to the infirmities of the flesh, my beloved and faithful servant Elbert A. Smith has responded to the direction of the Spirit in resigning his office as Presiding Patriarch of the church.

B. To fill this position in my church Roy A. Cheville is called and should be chosen and set apart to this high and holy office, and be given the responsibility of presiding over the brethren of the

patriarchal order as Presiding Patriarch. This is in harmony with my instructions to the Saints at an early date.

5

A. The wisdom of changes in the Council of Twelve was a continuing question in the mind of my servant who has gone to his reward. It is a continuing grave concern of the one whom I have designated to lead you as his successor and, while I am not yet ready to reveal all that shall be, the following changes should be made.

B. Few in my church have served as long and as faithfully as my servant, Paul M. Hanson. He is honorably released from his responsibilities as a member of the Council of Twelve, but is free to labor as a member of the high priesthood wherever and whenever the opportunity is present and his strength will permit.

C. Likewise my servants, Daniel T. Williams and Edmund J. Gleazer, who have also served in the councils of the church over a long period and with evident distinction, are honorably released from their responsibilities in the Council of Twelve.

6

A. While there is but one office in the patriarchal order, there are multiple functions. All my servants who have been called to this office will not be equally proficient in each of the separate functions.

B. My servant Daniel T. Williams has ability to counsel, advise, and give blessings. If faithful, my servant Edmund J. Gleazer will be especially blessed in the ministry of the preached word while he maintains his health and vigor.

C. These, my sons, are now called to be patriarchs, and should be ordained pursuant to and in harmony with my will revealed through the spirit of wisdom. This should be done as soon as practicable in order that not one jot or tittle of their ministerial effectiveness be lost to me.

7

In harmony with my will now revealed to you, Charles D. Neff and Clifford A. Cole should be ordained apostles and take their places in the Council of Twelve along with their brethren whose duty it is to spread the gospel into all the world as especial witnesses.

8

It is my will that the day shall soon come when the provisions within the law may be sufficiently understood to enable the bonds of indecision to be loosed and the fulfillment of my purposes to be accomplished.

There are others of my priesthood who are called to the apostleship who, if faithful, will find their places in due course. Though it is desirable for the quorums to be filled it is not expedient that it shall be done at this time. As I have made known to my servant, the time is yet a little while until all shall be made clear. Amen.

Your servant in Christ,

W. Wallace Smith
Independence, Missouri
October 8, 1958

Section 146

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Preface

Having made the needs of the church a matter of almost constant thought every waking hour for many months I engaged in prayer as is my custom before retiring. On the night of March 27 the burden of my prayer had to do with the filling of the vacancies in the Council of Twelve Apostles, and other matters which had claimed my attention.

As a result of this concern, and in answer to my prayers, I am prompted by the Spirit of Almighty God to bring his word to the church.

To the Elders of the Church and the General Conference:

1

A. My servants Cecil R. Ettinger and Duane E. Couey have discharged their duties and responsibilities in humility and faithfulness before me, and are now called to serve as apostles in my church.

B. Accordingly they should be set apart and take their places with their brethren in the labors of the apostolic office as members of the Council of Twelve.

2

A. My servants of the leading councils and quorums of my church are commended for the unity of purpose which they have demonstrated.

B. They are now counseled to take full advantage of the willingness of my people to follow the leadership which I have provided and to which my people have given their consent.

C. This principle is at the heart of the gospel which I restored through my servant Joseph and which is preserved in the reorganization of my people.

3

Let any remaining contention over minutiae cease in order that my purpose, already revealed in my word to the church, may be fulfilled and my work continue to prosper in love. Amen.

Your humble servant in Christ,

W. Wallace Smith
President of the Church

Independence, Missouri
April 2, 1960

Section 147

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Preface

With the needs of the church constantly before me I have made these matters the burden of my prayers. In seeking the will of my heavenly Father as a guide to the church I was awakened early on the morning of March 11 and was directed by the Spirit to write the following as instruction to you who are assembled in Conference and to the church at large.

To the Councils, Quorums, and Orders of the Church and to the General Conference:

1

My servant, Charles R. Hield, who has served in the Council of Twelve with devotion and in the spirit of sacrifice, is relieved of his duties as a member of the quorum, but his apostolic witness is to be extended to the church through continued research and translation. He will also continue to make his ministry felt among my people by bearing his testimony of the restored gospel through preaching and writing ministries as a high priest in my service.

2

My servant, Roscoe E. Davey, has served faithfully in the councils of the church for many years. His contribution made in these positions is acceptable and will be rewarded accordingly. He has been blessed by the presence of my spirit in ways and at times of great need known to him and will continue, if faithful, to receive direction as he continues his witnessing ministry in the Order of Evangelists to which office he is now called and should be ordained.

3

Arthur A. Oakman has magnified the gift of communicating the beauties of the gospel through the spoken word as he has served in the councils of my church. In order that he may have more freedom to advance my work through his special talents in ministry he is relieved of his duties as a member of the leading missionary quorum and should be give an assignment within the patriarchal order, as an evangelist, to which order he is called, to carry on revival witnessing in key centers of church establishment and expansion.

4

To fill two of the vacancies thus created my servants Russell F. Ralston and William E. Timms are called from their present positions to become apostles in the Council of Twelve of my

church. They should be ordained and take their place with the others of the council as soon as practicable.

—

5

A. Stewardship is the response of my people to the ministry of my Son and is required alike of all those who seek to build the kingdom. The spiritual authorities are urged to so teach with renewed vigor in recognition of the great need, and let nothing separate them from those who have more specific responsibilities in the temporal affairs of the church.

B. In this regard you are reminded of the instructions given to you through one of my servants at an earlier time. Repression of unnecessary wants is in harmony with the law of stewardship and becomes my people.

6

A. As your leader I have sought diligently for light on the question of representation in the General Conferences of the church. As a result of the prompting of the Spirit I bring the following as guidance to the church in this important matter:

B. Nothing which has been given hitherto by way of instruction should be so interpreted as to restrict the right of the General Conference to determine its own membership or to exercise its best judgment on legislative matters. It is required only that the body shall act according to the basic principles already made known: leadership by the general presiding authorities of the church, and common consent according to covenants of the church and the prayer of faith.

7

I am further permitted to say by the Spirit: Instruction which has been given in former years is applicable in principle to the needs of today and should be so regarded by those who are seeking ways to accomplish the will of their heavenly Father. But the demands of a growing church require that these principles shall be evaluated and subjected to further interpretation. This requisite has always been present. In meeting it under the guidance of my spirit, my servants have learned the intent of these principles more truly.

W. Wallace Smith

President of the Church

Presented this sixth day of April in the year of our Lord, 1964.

Section 148

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Preface

During the last inter-Conference period I have given continuing consideration to the condition of the councils and quorums and orders of the church. This has been done hoping that I would receive light on matters of grave importance to the future of the church. In this I have sought earnestly for divine guidance and also that I might have wisdom to rightly conduct the affairs entrusted into my care. This has been done through personal meditation and prayer.

On one of these occasions after retiring I was awakened and made aware that I would again have the responsibility of communicating the will of the Lord to his people.

Believing that such inspiration and direction have been given me, I present the following as the word of the Lord to us and ask the consideration and action of the members of the Conference upon the matters thus presented.

To the Councils and Quorums and Orders of the Church and to the General Conference:

1

My servant F. Henry Edwards has served my church long and well in the capacity of a missionary elder, an apostle and, with his apostleship being extended in presidency, as a counselor to the President of the High Priesthood and the church. He is now honorably released from the Presidency and from the heavy responsibilities which he has borne nobly and well. Thus relieved of presiding he should find satisfaction in pursuing his talents of writing and teaching without the heavy administrative requirements which have been placed upon him in recent years. As a high priest he is free to minister through his apostolic witness to the church as his health and circumstances permit and opportunities develop.

2

To fill the vacancy thus created Duane E. Couey is called from the ranks of the Council of Twelve to become a member of the Quorum of the First Presidency and a counselor to the President of the High Priesthood and the church. In this capacity his apostolic witness is extended in presidency and his ordination should take place as soon as practicable.

—

The following changes in the personnel of the Council of Twelve are presented after careful and prayerful consideration and with the confirmation of the spirit of inspiration:

3

My servants D. Blair Jensen and Percy E. Farrow have each made a significant contribution to my work through their ministry in many fields of labor. The last twenty years of Apostle Jensen's ministry have been given as a member of the Council of Twelve. Apostle Farrow has served as a seventy, President of Seventy, and for the past eighteen years as a member of the Council of Twelve. The time has come when they should be honorably released from the council and be left free to serve as high priests in those fields of ministry which later may be designated for them by the appropriate councils and quorums involved.

4

To fill the places thus left vacant by the brethren relieved of their responsibility in the Council of Twelve, Earl T. Higdon, Alan D. Tyree, and Aleah G. Koury are called to be apostles in my church. They should be ordained as special witnesses as soon as practicable and be given assignments commensurate with their abilities and devotion.

—

I have also given the matter of the reorganization of the Presiding Bishopric a great deal of careful and prayerful consideration.

5

My servant G. Leslie DeLapp, having given service to the church over a long period of time in the capacity of Presiding Bishop, should be honorably released from the onerous responsibilities he has been carrying, though he may act as a traveling bishop and in other capacities, counseling and advising on the law of temporalities in relation to spiritual purposes in harmony with his successor and the First Presidency. He has served the church and his fellowmen with a high degree of skill, evident devotion, great distinction, and at times with a great deal of personal sacrifice on the part of himself and family. He is commended for his good work.

6

Henry L. Livingston should be relieved of his responsibilities as a counselor to the Presiding Bishop. My servant has given many years of service to my Cause through the church in a variety of capacities and places, in all of which he has performed nobly. I commend him for the kindness and goodness which he displays in so many ways. He is called and, if willing, should be ordained to the office of patriarch to act as a spiritual father to the Saints.

7

Walter N. Johnson should be chosen and ordained as Presiding Bishop to serve in this capacity for a time.

8

To assist him as counselors and to serve as members of the Presiding Bishopric my servants Francis E. Hansen and Harold W. Cackler are called and should be ordained and set apart in their places.

—

The spirit of the Lord prompts me to say further:

9

A. The hastening time is at hand when the principles of stewardship, accounting, and Zionics procedures must be applied more fully than hitherto. This should be done with care to avoid the appearance of a desire by the Saints to take what does not rightly belong to them. But if they will move with assurance under the direction of those who are knowledgeable, capable, and dedicated, my purposes can be achieved more fully even now.

B. In this the Presidency, Twelve, and Bishopric each has a part to play according to their several callings. But others of my priesthood who are prepared are also to be enlisted so that their skills may be applied to the work which is entrusted to all.

10

A. To more fully effect the unity of my church, the Presidency and Council of Twelve should be associated more closely in their mutual endeavors. The members of the Council of Twelve are commended for their desire to work diligently to accomplish my purposes.

B. They should continue to exercise their calling as the “second presidency” in harmony with their primary responsibility in new fields. As such second presidency, the council should share with the First Presidency in reviewing and determining policies of church administration, but at the same time should recognize that the burden of the care of the church is laid upon him who is called to preside over the high priesthood of the church and on those who are called to be his counselors.

C. As the members of the Council of Twelve withdraw from detailed administration in organized areas, responsibility to carry on the work in stakes and regions will fall more heavily upon those who have been chosen for this purpose. Their work is necessary and they should be honored in their places, each working with each to perfect my kingdom.

D. Thus freed from detailed administrative duties, the Council of Twelve can give more attention to their primary work of pushing the work into new fields at home and abroad. To this the Council should give major attention even though some apostles may be assigned to general supervision of the work in organized areas and to church-wide functions.

E. In this manner the power of the testimonies of those who are called as special witnesses in my church will add spiritual depth and meaning to my work, both in reviewing and determining principles and procedures in spiritual and temporal realms and in redemptive evangelism at home and abroad.

Your servant in Christ,

W. Wallace Smith
President of the Church
Independence, Missouri
April 18, 1966

Section 149

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Preface

[I have] come to know that such direction is not necessarily limited to a once-per-biennium expression of the will of our heavenly Father. However, since the church must give its approval to any document which I may present purporting to contain the will of God, I have limited the presentation of any prophetic utterance for the guidance of the church as a whole to a time when such a message could have almost immediate consideration. Thus having given prayerful consideration and having received what I consider the confirmation of the Spirit of God, I am prepared to bring the following message to you for your consideration and action.

To the Councils, Quorums, and the Church:

1

In order to fill the existing vacancy in the Council of Twelve, Howard S. Sheehy, Jr., is called to be an apostle of Jesus Christ. While the knowledge of the call came to my servant at a previous time, it was withheld to permit the confirmation of the Spirit so necessary in such matters. He should be set apart without undue delay and take his place among his brethren in the Council of Twelve, so that the church shall have the benefit of his contribution as soon as possible.

—

My servant is further directed to say:

2

My word to the leaders in stakes and other jurisdictions is to be diligent in seeking ways to implement the program called for in the principles of spiritual leadership so necessary to the effective carrying out of my purpose.

3

Instructions given formerly are to be observed, and since the office of bishop is a “necessary appendage” to the high priesthood and members of the Order of Bishops are charged with the ministry of temporalities, they will act in support of leadership given by the spiritual authorities for the achievement of the purposes of my church. Temporal officers are to be supported in their rightful place, but must be guided by the needs of the field in their work of helping to furnish the means to finance my program.

4

Some of you have sought security in the words and phrases by which the faithful of earlier days have expressed their knowledge of me. My ways are still the ways of my Son. My servants of the holy priesthood will need to be alert as never before to see that my work is not vitiated by the designs of the adversary. They must also bring to their searching for truth and their service to my people all the treasures of understanding I have opened for them elsewhere. It is necessary for all to promote unity so that my blessings can be yours as you willingly bend your strength to kingdom-building enterprises.

5

My servants of the leading quorums are commended for their diligence in seeking more light and truth from all available sources. For have I not told you that my glory is intelligence and he that seeketh learning by study and by faith will be rewarded in this life and the life to come? Your efforts to find ways to more successfully implement the goals of my church must be continued.

6

A. The time has come for a start to be made toward building my temple in the Center Place. It shall stand on a portion of the plot of ground set apart for this purpose many years ago by my servant Joseph Smith, Jr. The shape and character of the building is to conform to ministries which will be carried out within its walls. These functions I will reveal through my servant the prophet and his counselors from time to time, as need for more specific direction arises.

B. Money for this purpose should come from the consecration of surplus by my people inasmuch as the building of houses of worship is one of the purposes of the Storehouse.

C. As you are diligent in moving to effect this project I will pour out the blessings of my Spirit and you will know that I am God.

7

I have not forsaken you, my people, even though you have at times and in diverse ways failed to live up to your potential under the direction you have received from me through my servants. I change not; neither are my purposes to fail by the evil designs of men.

Your servant in Christ,

W. Wallace Smith
President of the Church
Independence, Missouri
April 1, 1968

Section 149A

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Preface

Having made the needs of the church a matter of earnest prayer during the time that the document which is now Section 149 was being considered by the councils, quorums, and orders, I became acutely aware that there was need for additional instruction as guidance for the church. As a consequence, I was awakened at a very early hour on the morning of April 4 and, being motivated by the Spirit of the Lord, prepared the following document as further guidance in relation to matters already under consideration pertaining to the work of the bishop and the building of the temple.

To the Councils, Quorums, Orders, and the Church:

1

Nothing contained in the April 1 document is in derogation of the work of the bishop. On the contrary it recognizes him as a “necessary appendage belonging unto the high priesthood” (Doctrine and Covenants 83:5). The emphasis in this case is on “necessary.” The instructions given in Doctrine and Covenants 128:2, 3 and 129:8 are still valid for the guidance of the church, but the work alluded to must necessarily be carried out under the general guidance of those who are rightfully in charge of the work as the presidency in any jurisdictional division of the church.

2

This further means that the bishop, when assigned, will be recognized in his rightful place as a bishop in his own right to initiate in consultation with the local authorities those programs which under the law are recognized as necessary in his ministry, being responsible in such matters to the local, stake, regional, or district conference having jurisdiction.

3

In further interpretation of the role of the bishop, it is necessary to understand that his support of programs will be sought by administrative officers in consultation at time of formulation and when agreed will be administered in accordance with that agreement and budgets applicable thereto; it being understood that those in the administrative line will give general direction and be kept fully informed as to the progress being made.

4

It should be further understood that in cases of difference, the rightful line of appeal is to the proper administrative officer in that jurisdiction with final appeal to the First Presidency.

5

In explanation of the use of the word "surplus" in reference to building the temple so that no one shall be denied an opportunity to participate as fully as possible, surplus shall be construed in its wider meaning to include that amount available for special appropriation from the tithes and offerings of the Saints after the budgetary needs of the church have been met, as well as those funds which are consecrated as surplus under the more restrictive use of the term.

6

It is also to be noted that the full and complete use of the temple is yet to be revealed but that there is no provision for secret ordinances now or ever, although there will be provision for instructional opportunities which will of necessity be restricted to the particular category concerned, viz, high priests, patriarchs, bishops, seventies, elders, Aaronic priesthood, and so forth.

Beyond these more specific instructions I am extremely happy to be able to express my deep appreciation for the devotion evidenced in the support you have given to the work entrusted to all. Be faithful and diligent and the blessings of God will be yours in abundance.

Your servant in Christ,

W. Wallace Smith
President of the Church
Independence, Missouri
April 5, 1968

Section 150

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Preface

After seeking diligently for light regarding the welfare and needs of the church, I present the following as the will of the Lord for his church, interpreted and brought to you through the spirit of inspiration and wisdom. In explanation and for clarity, I awoke extremely early on the morning of February 16, 1972, and wrote as the Spirit directed me.

Now by virtue of my position I am permitted to bring this inspired message to you as guidance to the church in these latter days. Your prayerful consideration and acceptance are sought in the spirit of humility and goodwill.

1

A. To my servant, Donald O. Chesworth: Your services as an apostle have been acceptable unto me. You are now to be relieved of your duties as a member of the Council of Twelve.

B. You are called to continue to minister to the Saints in the capacity of an evangelist-patriarch with the emphasis on revival preaching. If willing, you should be set apart in this office as soon as practicable and take up your ministry with your brethren in the Order of Evangelists.

2

A. To fill the vacancy thus created, my servant, John C. Stuart, is called to be an apostle and should be set apart as a member of the Council of Twelve so that his ministry as a high priest can be extended into apostleship.

B. As a special witness he will take his place with his brethren of the council as soon as ordination can be provided for in order that there shall be no interruption of the work of spreading the gospel in this and other lands where my name must be known.

3

A. In times of stress and under trying circumstances my servant, Walter N. Johnson, has served to capacity in discharging his duties as a bishop. As Presiding Bishop for the past six years he has done much to promote the work of the church and to advance the cause of the kingdom.

B. He is now to be relieved of his onerous task and is to take his place among the high priests as a bishop. He will serve in this capacity in various geographic locations as time and circumstances permit but without specific assignment.

4

A. To fill a need thus created and in harmony with my will now revealed through my servant, the prophet, Francis E. Hansen is called and should be set apart as Presiding Bishop of my church in these latter days.

B. As such he will be charged with the responsibility to act as president of the Aaronic priesthood in matters of teaching and training in harmony with provisions in the law of the church.

5

A. Further in harmony with my will and in order to give continuity in office, Harold W. Cackler is called to remain in the Presiding Bishopric as a counselor.

B. To complete the organization in the Presiding Bishopric my servant, Gene M. Hummel, is called as a counselor to the Presiding Bishop and should be set apart to this office.

—

The Spirit prompts me to reveal further words of advice and direction.

6

Collectively and individually you, my people, are commended for your excellent response to the needs of my church, both in sharing the gospel and bringing new members into the body of Christ, and also for making your accounting and paying your tithing. By compliance you have furnished the funds necessary to finance projects which have brought ministry to many in need of spiritual and physical assistance.

7

These are portentous times. The lives of many are being sacrificed unnecessarily to the gods of war, greed, and avarice. The land is being desecrated by the thoughtless waste of vital resources. You must obey my commandments and be in the forefront of those who would mediate this needless destruction while there is yet day.

8

Continue your study toward defining the purpose and selecting a place for erecting a temple in my name for the teaching of my priesthood. If you will be faithful in this, continuing to raise funds, even if for a time it may seem a sacrifice, you will be blessed with enough and to spare.

9

You are admonished to support your officers whom I have chosen to be set apart that I may honor them by my Spirit also. In this manner instructions given to you regarding membership participation and priesthood training may go forward at an accelerated rate and according to instruction given in previous commandments.

10

A. Monogamy is the basic principle on which Christian married life is built. Yet, as I have said before, there are also those who are not of this fold to whom the saving grace of the gospel must go.

B. When this is done the church must be willing to bear the burden of their sin, nurturing them in the faith, accepting that degree of repentance which it is possible for them to achieve, looking forward to the day when through patience and love they can be free as a people from the sins of the years of their ignorance.

11

A. To this end and for this purpose, continue your ministry to those nations of people yet unaware of the joy freedom from sin can bring into their lives. In this way they will be brought to a knowledge of the teachings of my gospel and be made ready and willing to help spread the message of reconciliation and restoration to other worthy souls.

B. In this ministry and apostolic council, as the chief witnesses of the gospel, are directed to interpret and administer the doctrines and ordinances of the gospel in a manner appropriate to the circumstances in which they find such persons.

12

A. The spirit of unity must prevail if my church is to survive these perilous times and continue as a viable force in the world, fulfilling its destiny. You, my people, have been called apart to assist in this great work in these last days.

B. Put aside petty differences and join together as never before that all may labor together according to the gifts with which I have endowed you, and my Spirit will be with you now and forever more. Amen.

Your servant in Christ,

W. Wallace Smith
President of the Church
Independence, Missouri
April 11, 1972

Section 151

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Preface

To the Councils and Quorums and Orders of the Church and to the World Conference:

After serious and prayerful consideration and in the spirit of inspiration and wisdom I bring the following word regarding changes in the general leadership of the church as well as counsel and advice to the membership as a whole.

1

A. Roy A. Cheville, who has served as Presiding Patriarch for the past sixteen years, is relieved of this responsibility and should be given the honor of superannuation and the title of Presiding Patriarch Emeritus to the church.

B. Thus in retirement he can make his contribution but in a less demanding way and without the stress of presiding authority in the order or assignment to the field.

2

Reed M. Holmes, having served acceptably as an apostle—an especial witness—for many years, is called and, if willing, will become the Presiding Patriarch, assuming the duties and responsibilities of that office as soon as arrangement for his ordination can be made and consummated.

3

A. Cecil R. Ettinger, having prepared himself educationally and spiritually, has served as an apostle and has contributed much to the progress of the church in this capacity.

B. His apostolic witness is to be extended as a high priest in the Order of Melchisedec with specific responsibilities assigned and adjusted from time to time by the presidency of the high priesthood.

4

A. Earl T. Higdon responded to the call to become an apostle and serve with his brethren in the Council of Twelve knowing that his contribution in that capacity would be limited in time.

B. The time has come for him to be relieved of the arduous tasks imposed on him by the demands of travel and administrative detail. He will be given the honor of retirement in due time without further specific assignment.

—

To fill the vacancies thus created I am—under what I interpret as the direction of the Holy Spirit—calling upon the following brethren to accept positions in the Council of Twelve as apostles and especial witnesses of their Lord Jesus Christ, under whose leadership and guidance we all have our commission and derive our authority.

5

A. Elder William T. Higdon has the demonstrated capacity to be an especial witness to peoples throughout the world regardless of color, race, or creed. For this and other significant reasons he is called to become an apostle and is to be ordained and set apart to that office.

B. The call was made known at a previous time but, because of circumstances having such far-reaching importance to the youth of the church in his capacity as president of Graceland College, it was withheld from consideration. His ordination is now timely and should be consummated and arrangements made to relieve him of his duties at the college as expeditiously as possible.

6

Elder Lloyd B. Hurshman is called to be an apostle. He will extend his outreach to a wider circle of influence as he makes his contribution, continuing in various ways now assigned to him but with the added authority bestowed upon him by ordination and setting apart as an apostle in these latter days.

7

Elder Paul W. Booth has demonstrated his ability to serve the church in various capacities. He is now called to be an apostle. He will be ordained and set apart to that office that he may make his contribution in concert with his brethren as a member of the Council of Twelve.

—

I have strong feelings regarding the future of the work which according to the word of God “has been entrusted to all.” Those feelings can be articulated under the influence of my heavenly Father as direction to the church.

8

A. Do not let pride of personal accomplishment turn you away from my purposes in you as brothers and sisters in Christ and objects of my creation. You are called apart to do the will of your heavenly Father in whose name you serve.

B. Seek to be reconciled one with another. Let not your differences over procedures and program materials separate you and thus vitiate my influence for good in the world which is torn asunder by the devastating powers of evil.

9

You who are my disciples must be found continuing in the forefront of those organizations and movements which are recognizing the worth of persons and are committed to bringing the ministry of my Son to bear on their lives.

10

Working together to this end will promote unity, resolve conflicts, relieve tensions between individuals, and heal the wounds which have been sapping the strength of the church, spiritually and materially. This you must do in the spirit of love and compassion as revealed in my Son during his journey in your midst.

—

In the spirit of humility but with the authority of my office and the confirmation of the power of God motivating my action I submit this document to the church through its councils, quorums, orders, and delegates for consideration and final action.

Your servant in Christ,

W. Wallace Smith
President of the Church
Independence, Missouri
April 1, 1974

Section 152

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Preface

In spite of the precedent which up to now has seen the president of the church remain in office until his death, the time has come for me to name my successor and also to designate the time for him to succeed me as the presiding officer of the church, to serve as Prophet, Seer, and Revelator and President of the High Priesthood and the church, subject to the will of the Conference (Doctrine and Covenants 43:2a).

I have given serious and sustained consideration over a long period of time to the question of “who shall be my successor in office.” Consequently, I have taken this matter to God in prayer repeatedly, petitioning for light so I might know the will of my heavenly Father, and knowing it have the wisdom and strength to do it.

Thus having sought the mind and will of God in matters pertaining to conduct and growth of the kingdom I am prepared to bring the following message.

To the Councils and Quorums and Orders of the Church and to the General Conference:

1

A. In order that my church shall continue to be led by my spirit through the heritage of its founder, my servant Elder Wallace Bunnell Smith is called into the service of the church as an assistant to his father and to the Quorum of the Presidency, with the title, prophet and president designate.

B. He will serve in this capacity during a period of spiritual preparation and study approximating two years, after which time, if he remain faithful, through the process of common consent of the body of my church, he is to be chosen as president to succeed his father.

C. At that time, if his life is extended, W. Wallace Smith, my servant who will have served as the leader of my church for a period of twenty years, shall retire and be given the title of president emeritus.

2

A. My servant, Elder Russell F. Ralston, having served in numerous capacities during the period of his appointment as a full-time minister in my church, the last twelve years of which as a member of the Council of Twelve, is to be honorably released from his responsibility as a member of that council.

B. As a faithful servant in my kingdom his reward is sure if he shall continue to uphold those tenets of the gospel which he knows to be true. His apostolic witness is to be extended through his high priestly ordination and the spirit of testimony which has motivated his ministry for so many years.

C. As a special representative under the direction of the president of the Council of Twelve he will be given opportunities to expound the gospel through preaching and teaching assignments as time and strength are available and circumstances permit, but without the burden of administrative responsibility or extensive travel in a specific geographic jurisdiction. If he continues in faith I the Lord will bless him and his family with a degree of health and strength and peace of mind equal to their needs.

3

To fill the vacancy thus created, Elder C. Eugene Austin, Sr., is called to be an apostle in my church. The consummation of this call by ordination as a member of the Council of Twelve should be accomplished as expeditiously as possible to ensure continuity of leadership in the various jurisdictions where members of the Council of Twelve serve as directed by the Presidency of the High Priesthood.

4

A. The Spirit saith further: I, God, have not forsaken you nor have I changed in regard to the great and important work of the Restoration which I have called you to do. Neither have I turned from you my people. This is true in spite of the fact that some of you have turned away from me and my purposes.

B. Some have been led to inactivity, yea and even lulled to sleep by the spirit of carelessness and indifference. Some have been overcome by the grosser sins of the world—the spirit of revelry, wanton living, use of drugs, drinking, and fornication—and have fallen away. And still others have turned away for personal aggrandizement, rejecting my leadership because of trivial offenses.

C. All who have done any of these things are counseled to repent with a contrite heart and heaviness of spirit while there is yet time. You are further admonished to covenant with me anew that you may again be clean men and women, and find peace.

D. My promises are sure; my yoke is easy and my burden is light for those who love me and walk in the light of my Spirit.

W. Wallace Smith
President of the Church
Independence, Missouri
March 29, 1976

Section 153

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Preface

Many times in the past few months as I have contemplated the role that was to be mine I have been concerned that because of my inexperience or inadequacy the church might be deprived of the spiritual guidance which otherwise ought to be brought to it by the prophet.

This feeling of unworthiness has persisted as I have sought diligently with prayer and fasting to know the mind and will of God concerning the church. Nevertheless, I have presented our collective needs to God in faith, and in this spirit I bring to the Conference what I believe does truly represent his will and his instructions for the guidance of the church.

To the Councils and Quorums and Orders of the Church and to the General Conference:

In light of the unprecedented circumstances surrounding the succession to the office of President and Prophet of the Church which presently obtain, I am permitted by the Spirit to offer the following counsel to the church:

1

A. My servant, W. Wallace Smith, having served the church faithfully as an apostle, as a counselor to the President of the High Priesthood, and for the last twenty years as Prophet, Seer, and Revelator and President of the High Priesthood and the Church, is now honorably released from his heavy burden.

B. Retired from that office with the title President Emeritus, he should be free to minister as widely as his strength, interests, and spiritual leadings might suggest. His reward is sure, as is that of his companion, Rosamond, who has been a strength and support over the years, oftentimes in ways known only to me. They should both now be afforded the honor and respect due them for their years of service.

—

I have sought further for direction regarding the organization of the Quorum of the First Presidency and present humbly, but with assurance, the following for guidance.

2

Duane E. Couey is called and should be ordained as a counselor to the President of the High Priesthood and the Church and as a member of the Quorum of the First Presidency. He has extensive knowledge of the workings of the quorum and brings to this office an unusual degree

of loyalty as well as a deep devotion to the cause of the kingdom. His ordination should be provided for as soon as practicable.

3

Maurice L. Draper has served as a counselor to the President of the High Priesthood and as a member of the Quorum of the First Presidency for nearly twenty years. During that time he has served with uncommon faithfulness and skill, and he is commended for his service in this regard. To relieve him of the pressing weight of administrative detail, however, and to allow him to respond to interests in teaching, writing, and ministerial development, he is to be free for assignment by the First Presidency as a high priest acting as a consultant to the Quorum of the First Presidency wherever and however his skills can be used most effectively in the continuing assessment and development of the educational and ministerial programs of the church.

4

To complete the organization of the Quorum of the First Presidency, Howard S. Sheehy, Jr., is called to extend his apostleship in presidency and without delay should be ordained as a counselor to the President of the High Priesthood and the Church and as a member of the Quorum of the First Presidency.

—

The Spirit prompts me to say further regarding the general councils and quorums and by way of instruction to the church:

5

William E. Timms, having served with distinction in the Council of Twelve since 1964, is now relieved of his responsibilities as an apostle. He is called to the office of patriarch within the Order of Evangelists and may minister with great power, especially among the people of his homeland, if he continues to seek me in faith and wisdom.

6

To fill the vacancies created in the Council of Twelve, Roy H. Schaefer and Phillip M. Caswell are called from their present duties. They should be ordained as my apostles so that they may take their places with their brethren who serve as special witnesses for the promulgation of my gospel throughout the world.

7

My servant, Harold W. Cackler, is honorably released from his responsibilities as a counselor to the Presiding Bishop. He should be allowed to retire and be afforded the honor of

superannuation, although he should be free to serve in the office of bishop as his time and circumstances permit.

8

To fill this vacancy and to complete the organization of the Presiding Bishopric, Ray E. McClaran is called as counselor to the Presiding Bishop and should be ordained and set apart to that office.

9

A. Let my word be preached to the bruised and the brokenhearted as well as those who are enmeshed in sin, longing to repent and follow me. Let the truths of my gospel be proclaimed as widely and as far as the dedication of the Saints, especially through the exercise of their temporal stewardship, will allow.

B. My Spirit is reaching out to numerous souls even now and there are many who will respond if you, my people, will bear affirmative testimony of my love and my desires for all to come unto me.

C. Be steadfast and trust in the instructions which have been given for your guidance. I will be with you and strengthen you for the tasks that lie ahead if you will continue to be faithful and commit yourselves without reservation to the building of my kingdom.

Wallace B. Smith
President of the Church
Independence, Missouri
April 6, 1978

Section 154

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Preface

With the needs of the church and its work constantly before me, I have sought frequently, prayerfully, and expectantly for direction concerning those needs. My earnest desire is always that, to the extent I am enlightened by the Holy Spirit, I might discern what God desires for the church and then have the strength and courage to convey that understanding to the church. In that spirit I humbly but confidently present the following as representing the divine will.

To the Councils, Quorums, and Orders of the Church and to the General Conference:

1

It is my will that Clifford A. Cole be honorably released from his duties in the Council of Twelve Apostles. His calming spirit and reasoned approach many times have been a great blessing, especially in his role as president of the council. He should now be relieved of the burdens of the office of apostle to serve under the direction of the First Presidency, especially in the areas of teaching and writing by which, among his many other skills, the church has greatly benefited over the years.

2

A. Donald V. Lents and Aleah G. Koury are also relieved of their responsibilities as apostles in my church. Both have labored diligently, often under considerable hardship and conditions of discomfort. They are commended for their years of service which for Apostle Lents extend over the administrations of three presidents of the church.

B. Both are called and, if willing, should be ordained as patriarchs and take their place in the Order of Evangelists—Apostle Koury, if chosen, serving as secretary of the order.

3

To fill the vacancies in the Council of Twelve Kiusuke Sekine, Everett S. Graffeo, and Kenneth N. Robinson are called from their present responsibilities to be apostles in my church. They should be ordained as soon as practicable and take their places in the apostolic quorum.

—

The Spirit saith further by way of instruction:

4

A. The Council of Twelve Apostles should continue to pursue the strategies and methods by which the missionary work may be promoted and my gospel most meaningfully communicated to the world. As the chief missionary quorum they are encouraged to devote sufficient time to this task that they may develop a unity of purpose concerning the missionary work and go forth in great power to witness of me.

B. The brethren of the council are also commended for their collective stewardship in the identifying, evaluating, and recommending of missionary development projects. The opportunities for such outreach are limitless; however, because of the limited resources which are available for such projects, every effort should be made to assure that these resources are expended in the areas of greatest evangelistic potential.

5

A. The Presiding Bishop and his counselors are encouraged to continue to seek ways of effecting a greater understanding of the meaning of the stewardship of temporalities as a response to my grace and love so that the understanding of the principle may stir the hearts of the people as never before.

B. Redefinition of terms within the basic law of temporalities, for clarification and to meet the needs of a growing church, is in harmony with my will. However, let this be done with due deliberation and with full consent of the body after sufficient study and discussion, all to the end that the people may come to provide more fully and joyfully for the great work to which all are called.

6

Likewise, it is the responsibility of all who labor in the field, either by general church appointment or otherwise, to continue always to be aware of the need to render unreserved and fully accountable service—"good measure, pressed down, and shaken together, and running over." As they do so, there will be a confidence inspired and a desire to respond engendered in those who look to my servants for leadership.

7

A. Be of good cheer, O my people. Neither be discouraged by uncertainties nor disheartened by the seeming lack of understanding on the part of some regarding the kingdom-building task. If you will move out in faith and confidence to proclaim my gospel my Spirit will empower you and there will be many who respond, even in places and ways which do not now seem clear.

B. Support one another in love, confident that my Spirit will be with you even as I have gone before you and shown you the way.

Wallace B. Smith
President of the Church
Independence, Missouri
April 8, 1980

Section 155

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Preface

Because of the duties and responsibilities which are peculiarly mine, the needs of the church are matters of continual concern in my prayers and meditations. As I have sought for light and understanding regarding those needs I have been blessed with a great degree of assurance that the instructions I now bring to the church do represent the divine will. With that assurance, I present the following for your prayerful consideration.

To the Councils, Quorums, and Orders of the Church and to the World Conference:

1

A. My servant, Reed M. Homes, having served honorably for many years as a special witness in the apostolic quorum and for the past eight years as Presiding Patriarch of the church, is released from his responsibilities and should be given the honor of superannuation.

B. He should continue to minister in the office of patriarch and evangelist as opportunities allow, but thus relieved of specific duties he will be free to pursue other interests, especially relating to Israel and the Holy Land.

2

A. Duane E. Couey is called to the office of patriarch and to be the Presiding Patriarch of the church. In that office he will bring rich ministry as a spiritual father to the church. This call, which was made known to my servant earlier, is now timely and the ordination should take place as soon as practicable.

B. Elder Couey's wisdom and spiritual maturity, so evident during his tenure as counselor to two presidents of the church, will be a great blessing to the people if he will accept this high and holy calling.

3

To fill the vacancy in the Quorum of the First Presidency, Alan D. Tyree is now called to extend his apostleship in presidency as a member of the quorum of the First Presidency and as a Counselor to the President of the High Priesthood and the Church. His gifts and knowledge, strengthened by nearly thirty-two years of missionary and administrative experience, will be of great value in this new responsibility and he should be ordained without delay.

4

A. My faithful servant, John C. Stuart, is honorably released from his duties in the Council of Twelve Apostles. His labor of many years is acceptable unto me and he should be accorded the honor of superannuation.

B. He is called to be a patriarch and, if willing, should be ordained and take his place in the Order.

5

My servants, Joe A. Serig and James C. Cable, are called to be apostles in my church. Let them be relieved of their present assignments as soon as it is expedient so that they may be ordained and take their places as special witnesses of my gospel.

—

The Spirit prompts me to say further regarding the work:

6

Some of you have felt confusion as you have sought to labor in the midst of the many voices which are competing for a following, claiming to know my will. At a time when my word has clearly sent you forth to witness of my gospel, there are many who still are temporizing, looking for further confirming signs of the truth of those instructions which have already been given.

7

Know, O my people, the time for hesitation is past. The earth, my creation, groans for the liberating truths of my gospel which have been given for the salvation of the world. Test my words. Trust in my promises for they have been given for your assurance and will bear you up in times of doubt. Be not overly concerned with method as you go forth to witness in my name. There are many techniques for proclaiming my word which may be used as needs and circumstances dictate.

8

The call is for workers in the cause of Zion; therefore, neither tarry, nor doubt that I am. I know your perplexities and I am aware of your uncertainties, but if you will call upon my name my Spirit will go before you into whatsoever place you are sent and I will continue to bless you as you have need.

Your servant in Christ,

Wallace B. Smith
President of the Church
Independence, Missouri
March 29, 1982

Section 156

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Preface

As I have continued to seek for greater understanding of the divine will in my role as prophet of the church, the burdens of that office have not become easier. In seeking to address some of the difficult and potentially divisive issues facing the church today, I have found myself spending much time in prayer and fasting, importuning the Spirit on behalf of the church.

Because of the nature of that which I am now presenting, I have sought over and over for confirmation. Each time the message has been impressed upon me again, consistently and steadily. Therefore, I can do no other than to bring what I have received, in all humility, and leave it in your hands, believing with full assurance that it does truly represent the mind and will of God.

To the Councils, Quorums, and Orders of the Church, to the World Conference, and to the Church:

1

It is my will that Charles D. Neff be released from the Council of Twelve Apostles. His long association with the developing national churches, beginning with the Orient field in 1960, has been a great blessing to the church. Likewise, his leadership in the council, especially in regard to field organization and structure, has been of particular value in a time of expanding witness of my gospel. Now, in order to pursue his continuing interest in human and community development in emerging countries, he should be allowed to retire and be afforded the honor of superannuation.

2

To fill the vacancy in the Quorum of Twelve, Geoffrey F. Spencer is called to be an apostle in my church. In this office and calling his strong pastoral sense and unique ministerial gifts will enrich the church, and he should be ordained without delay.

—

The Spirit prompts me to say further by way of guidance to the church:

3

My servants have been diligent in the work of planning for the building of my temple in the Center Place. Let this work continue at an accelerated rate, according to the instructions already

given, for there is great need of the spiritual awakening that will be engendered by the ministries experienced within its walls.

4

A. Indeed, these ministries shall be the means of great blessing for you, my people, if you will heed the counsel of my servants of the First Presidency who are rightly charged with the responsibility of developing the specific details of these ministries.

B. The priesthood offices already provided for in my church have always had the potential of supplying these blessings. Some of their functions, however, will be expanded and given additional meaning as the purposes of temple ministries are revealed more fully.

5

A. The temple shall be dedicated to the pursuit of peace. It shall be for reconciliation and for healing of the spirit.

B. It shall also be for a strengthening of faith and preparation for witness.

C. By its ministries an attitude of wholeness of body, mind, and spirit as a desirable end toward which to strive will be fostered.

D. It shall be the means for providing leadership education for priesthood and member.

E. And it shall be a place in which the essential meaning of the Restoration as healing and redeeming agent is given new life and understanding, inspired by the life and witness of the Redeemer of the world.

6

Therefore, let the work of planning go forward, and let the resources be gathered in, that the building of my temple may be an ensign to the world of the breadth and depth of the devotion of the Saints.

—

The following is also presented as the voice of the Spirit:

7

A. Hear, O my people, regarding my holy priesthood. The power of this priesthood was placed in your midst from the earliest days of the rise of this work for the blessing and salvation of humanity.

B. There have been priesthood members over the years, however, who have misunderstood the purpose of their calling. Succumbing to pride, some have used it for personal aggrandizement.

C. Others, through disinterest or lack of diligence, have failed to magnify their calling or have become inactive.

D. When this has happened, the church has experienced a loss of spiritual power, and the entire priesthood structure has been diminished.

8

A. It is my will that my priesthood be made up of those who have an abiding faith and desire to serve me with all their hearts, in humility and with great devotion.

B. Therefore, where there are those who are not now functioning in their priesthood, let inquiry be made by the proper administrative officers, according to the provisions of the law, to determine the continuing nature of their commitment.

9

A. I have heard the prayers of many, including my servant the prophet, as they have sought to know my will in regard to the question of who shall be called to share the burdens and responsibilities of priesthood in my church.

B. I say to you now, as I have said in the past, that all are called according to the gifts which have been given them. This applies to priesthood as well as to any other aspects of the work.

C. Therefore, do not wonder that some women of the church are being called to priesthood responsibilities. This is in harmony with my will and where these calls are made known to my servants, they may be processed according to administrative procedures and provisions of the law.

D. Nevertheless, in the ordaining of women to priesthood, let this be done with all deliberateness. Before the actual laying on of hands takes place, let specific guidelines and instructions be provided by the spiritual authorities, that all may be done in order.

10

Remember, in many places there is still much uncertainty and misunderstanding regarding the principles of calling and giftedness. There are persons whose burden in this regard will require that considerable labor and ministerial support be provided. This should be extended with prayer and tenderness of feeling, that all may be blessed with the full power of my reconciling Spirit.

A. Dear Saints, have courage for the task which is yours in bringing to pass the cause of Zion. Prepare yourselves through much study and earnest prayer.

B. Then, as you go forth to witness of my love and my concern for all persons, you will know the joy which comes from devoting yourselves completely to the work of the kingdom. To this end will my Spirit be with you. Amen.

Wallace B. Smith
President of the Church
Independence, Missouri
April 3, 1984

Section 157

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Preface

In fulfilling my responsibilities as prophet of the church, I have sought with much prayer and fasting over many months to open myself to the leadings of the Holy Spirit, my only desire being to discern the will of the Lord on behalf of the church. In spite of my human weakness, this effort has once more been rewarding and I have been blessed abundantly on several occasions by the presence of the Holy Spirit in my labors to prepare that which I now present. Therefore, I confidently offer the following as representing the mind and will of God for the church.

To the Quorums, Councils, and Orders of the Church and to the World Conference:

1

A. It is my will that Lloyd B. Hurshman be released from the Council of Twelve Apostles. His service, often extended in conditions of hardship and physical danger, is fully acceptable unto me.

B. He should be free to minister as a high priest under the direction of the First Presidency where his organizational gifts and skills may be best utilized.

2

A. Roy H. Schaefer is also relieved of his onerous duties in the Council of Twelve Apostles. He has served honorably in spite of physical burdens and is commended for his faithfulness.

B. As a high priest, he should continue to serve where his talents and ministerial abilities may best assist in supporting the work of the gospel.

3

To fill the vacancies thus created, A. Alex Kahtava and John P. Kirkpatrick are called to be apostolic witnesses in the Quorum of Twelve. They should be ordained without delay, that the work may go forward effectively.

4

My servant, Francis E. Hansen, is commended for the diligent and faithful, yet kindly, way in which he has discharged his duties as Presiding Bishop over the last sixteen years. He is now released from the burden of those responsibilities and, if it be the will of the Conference, should be ordained to the Order of Evangelists. In his new calling he may continue to offer his talents in

assisting with the work of building the temple as well as in developing other ministries more directly related to the evangelist's duties.

5

Gene M. Hummel, who has functioned tirelessly and well as a counselor, is now called as Presiding Bishop. His gifts and skills commend him to this task, and he may serve as his health and vigor are extended. He should be ordained to that office without delay.

6

Ray E. McClaran is called to continue as a counselor to the Presiding Bishop. His loyalty and service are acceptable, and he should also be ordained as soon as is practicable.

7

Recognizing the need to complete the organization of the Presiding Bishopric as soon as possible, my servant, Norman E. Swails, is called to accept his place as a counselor to the Presiding Bishop and be ordained according to the will of the body.

—

In further word to the church, the Spirit counsels:

8

I, the Lord, am well pleased with the progress of your preparations toward the building of my temple in the Center Place. Those who have prepared themselves by training and education to assist, whether within the body or otherwise, will be blessed according to their need insofar as they seek me and call on my name. If they will thus open themselves, then I will pour out my Spirit on all the laborers together, to the end that a shining symbol of my love and my desires for my creation may rise in beauty before the world.

9

Nevertheless, do not be lifted up in pride as you contemplate the work of building, neither think to raise up my temple in vanity. The resources that are being gathered in for its physical structure and programs of ministry will in many cases be given at great sacrifice. Therefore, they must be utilized wisely, that all may be offered joyfully but humbly to a world in need.

10

The church is admonished once more to cease contending over matters of doctrine and scriptural interpretation. Where discussions on issues are necessary, let them go forward in

good spirit; and where differences are found let the procedures and remedies in the laws of the church be utilized, under the direction of the First Presidency, so that unity and resolution of conflict may be enjoyed.

—

It has further been made known to me that the instructions given on April 10, 1986, are as if they were given now and should be heeded as spiritual guidance to the church:

11

Hear, O my people of the church, I am Jesus Christ of whom you have sung and testified and in whose name you pray. I am the spirit of love and peace which is in the world and yet not known by the world.

12

I have heard your prayers which have been raised to me without ceasing, and I have sent my healing ministry as a dove to be in your midst. Therefore, lift up your hearts and rejoice in the promises which have been given for your assurance. Have I not said it is the Father's good pleasure to give you the kingdom?

13

A. Nevertheless, there are those of you who have been fearful and reluctant to trust in the instructions that my servant, the prophet, has brought for your guidance. As a consequence, some have faltered and lost faith.

B. Insofar as this has happened, you of my church have suffered and lost some of the spiritual strength with which I have longed to endow your ministries.

14

But know this, my people. My Spirit will not always strive with those who continue to resist my word. I am pleased with the measure of response many have made, in faith, to new responsibilities in priesthood and leadership. For them are awaiting the rewards and satisfactions which service in my name always brings.

15

Those who have allowed themselves to be lured away by other voices may never know such joy. They should be assured, however, that my invitation to come and be received is being extended even now so that the blessings of fellowship and participation in the body may be enjoyed once more. Come and be reconciled in my body is the healing word to those who are saddened and downhearted.

16

A. In the many places where you are called to labor, the forces of darkness and destruction are active indeed, and seem to hold sway. Your hearts are burdened by the magnitude of the tasks that are yours in bringing the light of my gospel into such darkness.

B. Nevertheless, I have heard your prayers when you have cried out to me, and I have been with you in the places where you occupy. I am aware of your desires to serve me and my assurance is that as you go forth, your offerings of faith and service are acceptable to me.

17

In all your efforts, therefore, continue to trust in my grace and respond in love to the leadings of my Spirit. If you will come before me in unity and love I will bless you with a great outpouring of compassion, both for one another and for the world into which you are sent. Amen.

Wallace B. Smith
President of the Church
Independence, Missouri
April 12, 1988

Section 158

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Preface

After much prayerful consideration and inquiry regarding the divine will, I have received the full assurance of the Holy Spirit in regard to the following instructions pertaining to the general councils and quorums. I present them as representing the mind and will of God and ask that they be received by the Conference assembled and acted upon as soon as it is appropriate.

To the Councils, Quorums, and Orders, to the World Conference, and to the Church:

1

A. Alan D. Tyree is released from the Quorum of the First Presidency. After forty-two years as an appointee minister he should be allowed to retire, it being recognized that his gifts in artistic expression and worship leadership may well be called upon in the developing ministries of the Temple.

B. To fill the vacancy in the First Presidency, W. Grant McMurray is called into the full-time appointee ministry of the church and should be ordained as a counselor to the President of the High Priesthood and the church and as a member of the Quorum of the First Presidency. To assure a smooth transition in the functioning of the quorum, his ordination should be provided for as soon as practicable.

2

Duane E. Couey is released from the duties of presiding over the Order of Evangelists and should be allowed to retire, having served the church many years with wisdom, devotion, and great spiritual power.

3

Paul W. Booth is released from faithful service in the Council of Twelve Apostles. He is called to be an evangelist and, if willing, should be ordained as Presiding Evangelist of the church. As he functions in this office, his depth of insight and sensitivity will assist in bringing added meaning to the spiritual blessings available through the ministry of the evangelist.

4

William T. Higdon is also released from the Council of Twelve Apostles. He has served with loyalty and dedication as a special witness of the Lord Jesus. As a retired appointee, he will be free to devote his full time and energy to serving as President of Graceland College.

5

Kisuke Sekine is likewise released from the Council of Twelve Apostles. He should be retired honorably and may continue to minister as a high priest as time and circumstances allow.

6

To fill the vacancies in the Council of Twelve Apostles, David R. Brock, Lawrence W. Tyree, and Stephen M. Veazey are called from their present assignments to be apostles and should be ordained as special witnesses of Jesus Christ as soon as provision can be made within the body.

7

A. Gene M. Hummel is released from the office of Presiding Bishop. His valuable service, especially during the construction of the Temple in Independence, has been well recognized and he should be allowed to retire from his labors.

B. To fill this vacancy, Norman E. Swails is called to be Presiding Bishop of the church. His demonstrated skills, especially in the task of gathering resources for the Temple, have been a blessing to the church and he should be ordained without delay.

8

A. Ray E. McClaran is also relieved of his responsibilities as a counselor to the Presiding Bishop. He should continue to function as a bishop at large, utilizing his gifts, especially in counseling the Saints in the exercise of wise stewardship over their temporal resources, to the benefit of the church.

B. To complete the organization of the Presiding Bishopric, Larry R. Norris and Dennis D. Piepergerdes are called as counselors to the Presiding Bishop and should be ordained as expeditiously as possible.

—

The Spirit prompts me to say further regarding the great work in which we are engaged:

9

A. I have heard the prayers of you, my people, who cry out in anguish over conditions both in the world and in the church. These conditions harden the hearts of many and cause them to turn from me and from the work to which all are called.

B. Your concerns have been my concerns and your tears my tears as divisions, separations, reductions in participation, and limited resources have jeopardized the vigor of my body, the

church. You, my people, are commended for the degree of faithful witness with which you have pursued the building up of the work in many places, despite temporary setbacks.

10

But know, dear Saints, the voice of doubt and the spirit of discouragement are strong and will continue to diminish your spiritual energy if you do not strive always to overcome them with a new outpouring of love and support for one another.

11

A. Therefore, continue to be strong in faith. To you who hear my voice and know my promises I will reveal myself and give my peace, even in the midst of your uncertainties.

B. Indeed, I am longing to pour out greater blessings than you have ever known if you, my people, will open yourselves through preparation, study, and prayer.

C. Look especially to the sacraments to enrich the spiritual life of the body. Seek for greater understanding of my purposes in these sacred rites and prepare to receive a renewed confirmation of the presence of my Spirit in your experiences of worship.

12

Your faith in progressing toward the completion of the Temple in Independence is pleasing to me. As my servants in the leading quorums and all the church together continue to seek for light and understanding regarding its ministries, my Spirit will fill you with joy and guide you into a new comprehension of the call to go into all the world, in my name and for the sake of the Kingdom.

Wallace B. Smith
President of the Church
Independence, Missouri
April 5, 1992

Section 159

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Preface

Over the years, as I have made the needs of the church the burden of my prayers, my joy is that the Holy Spirit has continued to bless us so abundantly. It is in that same spirit of appreciation and thanksgiving that I now bring to the church what I humbly believe to represent the mind and will of God. I present it for your consideration and action as appropriate.

To the Councils, Quorums, and Orders, to the World Conference, and to the Church:

1

Paul W. Booth is released from his duties as presiding evangelist. His wisdom and steady influence in the councils of the church have been a blessing over the years and he should be allowed to retire with honor.

2

A. Everett S. Graffeo is called from his present duties in the Council of Twelve Apostles to the office of evangelist and should be ordained and set apart as presiding evangelist of the church.

B. The gifts of compassion and spiritual sensitivity so necessary for this role are his in great abundance and the church will be greatly blessed if he will respond to this call.

3

Geoffrey F. Spencer is released from the Council of Twelve Apostles. His many ministerial gifts and skills, especially in presiding over the Council, have been a blessing to the church. After nearly forty years as an appointee minister, he should be given honorable retirement.

4

A. C. Eugene Austin, Sr., is also released from the Council of Twelve Apostles. Having served with devotion and distinction, he should be extended the honor of retirement from active appointment.

B. He is called to the office of evangelist and, if willing, should be ordained and take his place in the Order of Evangelists.

5

To fill the vacancies thus created, Danny A. Belrose, Dale E. Luffman, and Kenneth L. McLaughlin are called to be apostles and to serve in the Council of Twelve Apostles. They should be relieved of their present duties and ordained as soon as practicable.

—

Further guidance to the church, by the prompting of the Spirit, is as follows:

6

Be of good cheer, O my people. Your labors and your sacrifices by which the Temple in Independence has been built are fully acceptable to me. Let all who have worked and prayed for such an accomplishment rejoice in the fulfillment of the promises which were given in times past, but have now become a blessing for all generations.

7

Know also, dear Saints, at a time when careful study of the faith and doctrine of the church is being called for, strength and courage for this task will be given if you will trust my Spirit to sustain and uphold you. Do nothing in haste, but continue to trust in the enduring promises of the One in whose name you have been given life.

8

Then, as you gain ever more confidence in sensing the leadings of my Spirit, you will begin to see with new eyes, embrace the truths that are waiting for your understanding, and move joyfully toward the fulfillment of the tasks that are yours to accomplish.

Your servant,

Wallace B. Smith
President of the Church
Independence, Missouri
April 10, 1994

Section 160

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

To the Councils, Quorums, and Orders, to the World Conference, and to the Church:

1

In confirmation of the instructions contained in the pastoral letter dated September 19, 1995, naming him as successor in the office of President, my servant W. Grant McMurray is called and should be ordained without delay as Prophet, Seer, and Revelator, and as President of the High Priesthood and the Church, to the end that prophetic guidance and vision may continue to be brought to the church through the ministry of my Spirit.

2

Upon the ordination of his successor, Wallace B. Smith shall lay down the responsibilities of President and be retired with the title of President Emeritus.

3

Thus it is established according to my will and thus the conditions are fulfilled whereby succession in Presidency in my church is effected. Let it be so. Amen.

Your servant,

Wallace B. Smith
President of the Church
Independence, Missouri
April 14, 1996

Section 161

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Preface

On April 21, 1996, I brought to the church words of counsel which I felt led to share, without any specific instruction as to their ultimate disposition. I felt it was important that the church live with the words and not feel compelled to make any urgent decisions about them. During the intervening four years I have been led back to them many times and have pondered their meaning and their timeliness. Without clinging to every word or phrase, I have remained assured of the rightness of the message, but I have also sensed that it was incomplete, that there was more to be said. I did not then understand that our journey of transformation would instill new depth and insight.

I have continued to wrestle with the message, sensitive to the importance of expressing it with integrity and always aware of my own human failings and uncertainties. In accordance with the responsibilities I carry, filled with love for the church and its people, and grateful to a God who sustains me in my many weaknesses, I humbly present the following counsel to the church for whatever formal consideration may be appropriate. I do so confident that the Spirit which accompanied its preparation will also abide with those who embrace its challenge.

To the Councils, Quorums, and Orders, to the World Conference, and to the Church:

1

A. Lift up your eyes and fix them on the place beyond the horizon to which you are sent. Journey in trust, assured that the great and marvelous work is for this time and for all time.

B. Claim your unique and sacred place within the circle of those who call upon the name of Jesus Christ. Be faithful to the spirit of the Restoration, mindful that it is a spirit of adventure, openness, and searching. Walk proudly and with a quickened step. Be a joyful people. Laugh and play and sing, embodying the hope and freedom of the gospel.

2

A. Become a people of the Temple—those who see violence but proclaim peace, who feel conflict yet extend the hand of reconciliation, who encounter broken spirits and find pathways for healing.

B. Fulfill the purposes of the Temple by making its ministries manifest in your hearts. It was built from your sacrifices and searching over many generations. Let it stand as a towering symbol of a people who knew injustice and strife on the frontier and who now seek the peace of Jesus Christ throughout the world.

3

A. Open your hearts and feel the yearnings of your brothers and sisters who are lonely, despised, fearful, neglected, unloved. Reach out in understanding, clasp their hands, and invite all to share in the blessings of community created in the name of the One who suffered on behalf of all.

B. Do not be fearful of one another. Respect each life journey, even in its brokenness and uncertainty, for each person has walked alone at times. Be ready to listen and slow to criticize, lest judgments be unrighteous and unredemptive.

C. Be patient with one another, for creating sacred community is arduous and even painful. But it is to loving community such as this that each is called. Be courageous and visionary, believing in the power of just a few vibrant witnesses to transform the world. Be assured that love will overcome the voices of fear, division, and deceit.

D. Understand that the road to transformation travels both inward and outward. The road to transformation is the path of the disciple.

4

A. Do not neglect the smallest among you, for even the least of these are treasures in God's sight. Receive the giftedness and energy of children and youth, listening to understand their questions and their wisdom. Respond to their need to be loved and nurtured as they grow.

B. Be mindful of the changing of life's seasons, of the passage from the springtime of childhood and youth to the winter years of life. Embrace the blessing of your many differences. Be tender and caring. Be reminded once again that the gifts of all are necessary in order that divine purposes may be accomplished.

5

Be respectful of tradition. Do not fail to listen attentively to the telling of the sacred story, for the story of scripture and of faith empowers and illuminates. But neither be captive to time-bound formulas and procedures. Remember that instruction given in former years is applicable in principle and must be measured against the needs of a growing church, in accordance with the prayerful direction of the spiritual authorities and the consent of the people.

6

A. Stand firm in the name of the One you proclaim and create diverse communities of disciples and seekers, rejoicing in the continuing fulfillment of the call to this people to prophetically witness in the name of Jesus Christ.

B. Heed the urgent call to become a global family united in the name of the Christ, committed in love to one another, seeking the kingdom for which you yearn and to which you have always been summoned. That kingdom shall be a peaceable one and it shall be known as Zion.

7

The Spirit of the One you follow is the spirit of love and peace. That Spirit seeks to abide in the hearts of those who would embrace its call and live its message. The path will not always be easy, the choices will not always be clear, but the cause is sure and the Spirit will bear witness to the truth, and those who live the truth will know the hope and the joy of discipleship in the community of Christ. Amen.

W. Grant McMurray
President of the Church
Independence, Missouri
April 4, 2000

Section 162

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Preface

For many months I have struggled with a persistent conviction that God is calling the church to a clearer understanding of what it means to be a prophetic people. I have sensed as never before that we are uniquely called to be faithful witnesses to Jesus Christ and to claim again the principles of Restoration in our own time. These thoughts have haunted me, perhaps in part because I have resisted expressing them, painfully aware as I am of my own sinfulness and personal shortcomings. But still the urgency rested upon me, until one night I tossed fitfully in my bed, unable to yield to the sleep that needed to come. Finally, I arose and in the silence of the night tried to embrace what was written on my heart.

The words did not flow as if dictated, but were wrested out of my own encounter with the Spirit that had been working with me these many months. I wrote, and then in subsequent days I pondered the words, recasting them here and there as further clarification would come. Even as I present them to the church, I do so sensing that there is more to be said. But the same Spirit that leads me to write these words also compels me to invite the church to join in the task of discerning God's will for us. I am not yet sure what form that will take, but I believe it is our next step as we continue the process of becoming a prophetic people.

To the Councils, Quorums, and Orders, to the World Conference, and to the Church:

1

A. Listen, O people of the Restoration—you who would become a prophetic people, embodying in your life together the ministries of the Temple. Listen to the Voice that speaks from beyond the farthest hills, from the infinite heavens above, and the vast seas below.

B. Listen to the Voice that echoes across the eons of time and yet speaks anew in this moment. Listen to the Voice, for it cannot be stilled, and it calls you once again to the great and marvelous work of building the peaceable kingdom, even Zion, on behalf of the One whose name you claim.

2

A. Listen carefully to your own journey as a people, for it is a sacred journey and it has taught you many things you must know for the journey yet to come.

B. Listen to its teachings and discover anew its principles. Do not yearn for times that are past, but recognize that you have been given a foundation of faithful service, even as you build a foundation for what is yet to be.

C. As a prophetic people you are called, under the direction of the spiritual authorities and with the common consent of the people, to discern the divine will for your own time and in the places where you serve. You live in a world with new challenges, and that world will require new forms of ministry. The priesthood must especially respond to that challenge, and the church is admonished to prayerfully consider how calling and giftedness in the Community of Christ can best be expressed in a new time.

D. You have already been told to look to the sacraments to enrich the spiritual life of the body. It is not the form of the sacrament that dispenses grace but it is the divine presence that gives life. Be respectful of tradition and sensitive to one another, but do not be unduly bound by interpretations and procedures that no longer fit the needs of a worldwide church. In such matters direction will come from those called to lead.

E. Again you are reminded that this community was divinely called into being. The spirit of the Restoration is not locked in one moment of time, but is instead the call to every generation to witness to essential truths in its own language and form. Let the Spirit breathe.

3

A. Do not be discouraged. You have not been promised an easy path, but you have been assured that the Spirit that calls you will also accompany you.

B. That Spirit is even now touching alive the souls of those who feel the passion of discipleship burning deeply within. Many others will respond if you are persistent in your witness and diligent in your mission to the world.

4

A. Listen carefully to the many testimonies of those around the world who have been led into the fellowship of the Community of Christ. The richness of cultures, the poetry of language, and the breadth of human experience permit the gospel to be seen with new eyes and grasped with freshness of spirit. That gift has been given to you. Do not fail to understand its power.

B. It is for divine purpose that you have been given the struggles as well as the joys of diversity. So must it always be in the peaceable kingdom.

5

A. Do not be defined by the things that separate you but by the things that unite you in Jesus Christ.

B. Over and over again you have been counseled to be reconciled, to seek the unity that is imperative to the building of the kingdom. Again the Spirit counsels the church to not allow the forces of division to divert you from your witness.

C. Listen together to one another, without judgment or predisposition. Do not assume that the answers to matters of conflict have yet been perceived. There is much labor to be done. Reason together in love, and the Spirit of truth will prevail.

6

A. From the earliest days you have been given a sacred principle that declares the inestimable worth of all persons. Do not forget.

B. The One who created all humankind grieves at the shameful divisions within the human family. A prophetic people must work tirelessly to tear down walls of separation and to build bridges of understanding.

C. You hold precious lives in your hands. Be gentle and gracious with one another. A community is no stronger than the weakest within it. Even as the One you follow reached out to those who were rejected and marginalized, so must the community that bears his name.

7

A. There are many lives waiting to hear the redeeming words of the gospel, or to be lifted from hopelessness by the hands of loving servants. But they will be lost to you without the generous response of disciples who share from their own bounty that others may know the joys of the kingdom.

B. Many are fearful and believe their security is to be found in the accumulation of possessions. The answers you seek are not inherent in the things of this world but in a faith that places its trust in the promises given to all who would follow Jesus Christ.

C. You have been given the principles of generosity, rightly interpreted for a new time. These principles call every disciple to tithe faithfully in accordance with means and capacity. Those values, deeply rooted in the Restoration faith, affirm that stewardship and discipleship cannot be divided and are dependent upon each other.

D. The call to respond is urgent. Look to the needs of your own congregations, but look also beyond your walls to the far-flung places where the church must go. Each disciple needs a spiritual home. You are called to build that home and care for it, but also to share equally in the outreaching ministries of the church. In that way the gospel may be sent to other souls also yearning for a spiritual resting place.

8

A. You are a good and faithful people, but sometimes you fail to see the power that is resident in your own story and fellowship. Look carefully, listen attentively, and sense the Spirit among you.

B. Do not be unduly concerned with numbers. Be fervent in your witness, passionate in your discipleship, and vigorous in your labor on behalf of peace and justice. Where two or three such disciples form community, there will the Spirit be. Many will come to see.

C. Continue your journey, O people of the Restoration. You have been blessed thus far but there is so much yet to see, so much yet to do. Go forth with confidence and live prophetically as a people who have been loved, and who now courageously choose to love others in the name of the One you serve. Amen.

W. Grant McMurray
President of the Church
Independence, Missouri
March 29, 2004

Section 163

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Preface

Every day since being ordained as prophet-president, I have carried the needs of the church on my heart. Sometimes the weight of concern has seemed almost unbearable. Perhaps this is as it should be, because the heaviness of responsibility has pressed me to seek the mind and will of God as never before. Striving to be open to the guidance of the Spirit, while attempting to lay aside my own preconceived notions, has been a challenging but necessary learning experience. And, as I have sought to perceive God's will for the church through prayer, study, and listening for the Creator's voice in the voices of the faith community, I have been blessed by the Spirit in various, sometimes surprising ways.

The words and images that follow have been birthed through much struggle, not because of any lack of inspiration, but because of the limitations of the human vessel entrusted with responsibility for articulating divine encounter. Attempting to communicate in words what is ultimately beyond words always leaves one with a sense of incompleteness. Added to this is the challenge of creating phrases that can be translated into the languages of the international church without loss of essential meanings. Fortunately, we have the promise that one of the primary functions of the Holy Spirit is to bear witness of divine truth beyond the confines of language and culture.

Therefore, it is in deep humility and with heartfelt gratitude to God that I offer the following counsel as a witness of God's eternal purpose and continuing activity in the life of the church. In so doing, I place these words in the church's hands, trusting that the Spirit will enable the faith community to hear the call of God today with increasing clarity.

1

"Community of Christ," your name, given as a divine blessing, is your identity and calling. If you will discern and embrace its full meaning, you will not only discover your future, you will become a blessing to the whole creation. Do not be afraid to go where it beckons you to go.

2

A. Jesus Christ, the embodiment of God's shalom, invites all people to come and receive divine peace in the midst of the difficult questions and struggles of life. Follow Christ in the way that leads to God's peace and discover the blessings of all of the dimensions of salvation.

B. Generously share the invitation, ministries, and sacraments through which people can encounter the Living Christ who heals and reconciles through redemptive relationships in sacred

community. The restoring of persons to healthy or righteous relationships with God, others, themselves, and the earth is at the heart of the purpose of your journey as a people of faith.

3

A. You are called to create pathways in the world for peace in Christ to be relationally and culturally incarnate. The hope of Zion is realized when the vision of Christ is embodied in communities of generosity, justice, and peacefulness.

B. Above all else, strive to be faithful to Christ's vision of the peaceable Kingdom of God on earth. Courageously challenge cultural, political, and religious trends that are contrary to the reconciling and restoring purposes of God. Pursue peace.

C. There are subtle, yet powerful, influences in the world, some even claiming to represent Christ, that seek to divide people and nations to accomplish their destructive aims. That which seeks to harden one human heart against another by constructing walls of fear and prejudice is not of God. Be especially alert to these influences, lest they divide you or divert you from the mission to which you are called.

4

A. God, the Eternal Creator, weeps for the poor, displaced, mistreated, and diseased of the world because of their unnecessary suffering. Such conditions are not God's will. Open your ears to hear the pleading of mothers and fathers in all nations who desperately seek a future of hope for their children. Do not turn away from them. For in their welfare resides your welfare.

B. The earth, lovingly created as an environment for life to flourish, shudders in distress because creation's natural and living systems are becoming exhausted from carrying the burden of human greed and conflict. Humankind must awaken from its illusion of independence and unrestrained consumption without lasting consequences.

C. Let the educational and community development endeavors of the church equip people of all ages to carry the ethics of Christ's peace into all arenas of life. Prepare new generations of disciples to bring fresh vision to bear on the perplexing problems of poverty, disease, war, and environmental deterioration. Their contributions will be multiplied if their hearts are focused on God's will for creation.

5

A. The Council of Twelve is urged to enthusiastically embrace its calling as apostles of the peace of Jesus Christ in all of its dimensions. The Twelve are sent into the world to lead the church's mission of restoration through relevant gospel proclamation and the establishment of signal communities of justice and peace that reflect the vision of Christ. As the apostles move out in faith and unity of purpose, freeing themselves from other duties, they will be blessed with an increased capacity for sharing Christ's message of hope and restoration for creation.

B. To accelerate the work of sharing the gospel, the Twelve and the Seventy should be closely associated in implementing wholistic evangelistic ministries. The seventy are to be the forerunners of Christ's peace, preparing the way for apostolic witness to be more readily received.

C. Procedures regarding the calling and assignments of the Presidents of Seventy and members of the Quorums of Seventy shall be developed to facilitate the maximum level of collaboration with the Council of Twelve. The Twelve, the Presidents of Seventy, and the Quorums of Seventy should spend sufficient time together to ensure a mutual understanding of evangelistic priorities and approaches.

6

A. Priesthood is a sacred covenant involving the highest form of stewardship of body, mind, spirit, and relationships. The priesthood shall be composed of people of humility and integrity who are willing to extend themselves in service for others and for the well-being of the faith community.

B. Truly authoritative priesthood ministry emerges from a growing capacity to bring blessing to others. Unfortunately, there are some who have chosen to view priesthood as a right of privilege or as a platform for promoting personal perspectives. Others hold priesthood as a casual aspect of their lives without regard to appropriate levels of preparation and response.

C. The expectation for priesthood to continually magnify their callings through spiritual growth, study, exemplary generosity, ethical choices, and fully accountable ministry is always present. How can the Spirit fill vessels that are unwilling to expand their capacity to receive and give according to a full measure of God's grace and truth?

D. Counsel given previously regarding the need to develop ways whereby priesthood can magnify their ministry or determine their commitment to active service remains applicable and should be more intentionally implemented. The First Presidency will provide guidelines for processes to be applied in culturally respectful ways in the various fields of the church. Fundamentally, however, the ultimate responsibility for priesthood faithfulness rests on the individual in response to the needs and expectations of the faith community.

7

A. Scripture is an indispensable witness to the Eternal Source of light and truth, which cannot be fully contained in any finite vessel or language. Scripture has been written and shaped by human authors through experiences of revelation and ongoing inspiration of the Holy Spirit in the midst of time and culture.

B. Scripture is not to be worshiped or idolized. Only God, the Eternal One of whom scripture testifies, is worthy of worship. God's nature, as revealed in Jesus Christ and affirmed by the Holy Spirit, provides the ultimate standard by which any portion of scripture should be interpreted and applied.

C. It is not pleasing to God when any passage of scripture is used to diminish or oppress races, genders, or classes of human beings. Much physical and emotional violence has been done to some of God's beloved children through the misuse of scripture. The church is called to confess and repent of such attitudes and practices.

D. Scripture, prophetic guidance, knowledge, and discernment in the faith community must walk hand in hand to reveal the true will of God. Follow this pathway, which is the way of the Living Christ, and you will discover more than sufficient light for the journey ahead.

8

A. The Temple is an instrument of ongoing revelation in the life of the church. Its symbolism and ministries call people to reverence in the presence of the Divine Being. Transformative encounters with the Eternal Creator and Reconciler await those who follow its spiritual pathways of healing, reconciliation, peace, strengthening of faith, and knowledge.

B. There are additional sacred ministries that will spring forth from the Temple as rivers of living water to help people soothe and resolve the brokenness and pain in their lives. Let the Temple continue to come to life as a sacred center of worship, education, community building, and discipleship preparation for all ages.

C. As these ministries come to fuller expression, receptive congregations in the areas around the Temple and throughout the world will be revived and equipped for more effective ministry. Vital to this awakening is the understanding that the Temple calls the entire church to become a sanctuary of Christ's peace, where people from all nations, ethnicities, and life circumstances can be gathered into a spiritual home without dividing walls, as a fulfillment of the vision for which Jesus Christ sacrificed his life.

9

Faithful disciples respond to an increasing awareness of the abundant generosity of God by sharing according to the desires of their hearts; not by commandment or constraint. Break free of the shackles of conventional culture that mainly promote self-serving interests. Give generously according to your true capacity. Eternal joy and peace await those who grow in the grace of generosity that flows from compassionate hearts without thought of return. Could it be otherwise in the domain of God, who eternally gives all for the sake of creation?

10

A. Collectively and individually, you are loved with an everlasting love that delights in each faithful step taken. God yearns to draw you close so that wounds may be healed, emptiness filled, and hope strengthened.

B. Do not turn away in pride, fear, or guilt from the One who seeks only the best for you and your loved ones. Come before your Eternal Creator with open minds and hearts and discover the blessings of the gospel anew. Be vulnerable to divine grace.

11

A. God is calling for a prophetic community to emerge, drawn from the nations of the world, that is characterized by uncommon devotion to the compassion and peace of God revealed in Jesus Christ. Through divine grace and wisdom, this faith community has been given abundant gifts, resources, and opportunities to equip it to become such a people. Chief among these is the power of community in Christ expressed locally in distinctive fashions while upholding a unity of vision, foundational beliefs, and mission throughout the world.

B. There are many issues that could easily consume the time and energy of the church. However, the challenge before a prophetic people is to discern and pursue what matters most for the journey ahead.

—

In addition to the words offered above, I want to express my heartfelt love for the church as it is and as it is becoming. Despite the challenges involved, it is my pleasure to be able to serve you, my brothers and sisters in Christ, who have been claimed by the adventurous vision and spirit of the Restoration movement. May we journey into the future trusting one another, confident that the One who called the church into being continues to guide it toward fulfillment of divine purpose.

Grace and Peace,

Stephen M. Veazey
President of the Church
Independence, Missouri
March 29, 2007

Section 164

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Preface

While sharing with the church in prayer, discussion, and discernment about important issues, I received an increasingly strong sense of divine direction about conditions of membership and other pressing questions. A significant aspect of my experience was God's Spirit drawing me to consider various scripture passages. After I thoroughly explored many passages, the Holy Spirit focused my attention on Galatians 3:27–29:

“As many of you as were baptized into Christ have clothed yourselves with Christ. There is no longer Jew or Greek, there is no longer slave or free, there is no longer male and female; for all of you are one in Christ Jesus. And if you belong to Christ, then you are Abraham's offspring, heirs according to the promise.”

While I studied this passage, the Spirit helped me see much broader dimensions of God's grace working through Christ to transform human relationships in a divided world. As a result, I have an even-greater testimony than before of the power of the gospel of Christ to birth a new creation among those who dare to live its message in sacred community.

As the significance of what was unfolding became more obvious, the Spirit led me to consider a series of Doctrine and Covenants sections. Each addressed spiritual and relational dynamics of being a prophetic people. (For example, see Sections 10:6, 147:7, 149:4, 161:5, 162:2, and 163:7.) These include distinguishing between more-universal spiritual principles and particular expressions of them within the confines of human history and understanding. Being a divinely led prophetic people involves—as a necessity—reevaluating at times some existing understandings and customs to allow added insight and interpretation under the Spirit's guidance.

With that background in mind, I present the following counsel to the church in response to the guidance of God's Spirit. I offer this counsel in humility, fully aware of my limitations and weaknesses, which I always carry as a burden. I also present these words with full conviction of their truthfulness as an expression of the spirit of wisdom and revelation that flows from God's eternal being.

To the Councils, Quorums, and Orders, to the World Conference, and to the church:

1

All who actively engaged in prayer, discussion, and discernment about important issues in the church's life are commended for your faithful response. Your disciplined effort to open your lives more fully to God's Spirit in response to the call to be a prophetic people has become a blessing to the entire church. Your spiritual yearning for light and truth has created a favorable

environment for the Spirit's movement to provide inspired counsel as authoritative guidance for the church.

2

A. Instruction given previously about baptism was proper to ensure the rise and cohesiveness of the church during its early development and in following years. However, as a growing number have come to understand, the redemptive action of God in Christ—while uniquely and authoritatively expressed through the church—is not confined solely to the church.

B. God's grace, revealed in Jesus Christ, freely moves throughout creation, often beyond human perception, to achieve divine purposes in people's lives. In harmony with God's will, the Holy Spirit leads some people already committed to Jesus Christ through Christian baptism to further focus their response through church membership.

C. Individuals previously baptized of water in an attitude of humility and repentance and as an expression of faith in Jesus Christ may become church members through the sacrament of confirmation of the Holy Spirit.

D. Confirmation should follow a time of intentional preparation that includes exploring the church's mission, beliefs, and understanding of discipleship expressed through covenant with God and others in sacred community.

E. During the confirmation prayer include an acknowledgement of the grace and authority of Jesus Christ through which baptism occurs. Also, bear witness to the ministry of the Holy Spirit, which weaves people's giftedness into beautiful patterns of community to enrich their discipleship and to strengthen the fabric of the church.

3

A. All church members are urged to examine the depth of your baptismal commitment. Having been baptized and confirmed, become fully immersed in the servant life of Christ.

B. Live the meaning of your baptism daily as you grow in the skills and qualities of discipleship. Actively and generously support the ministries of the church, which was divinely established to restore Christ's covenant of peace, even the Zion of your hopes.

C. The Eternal Christ invites those who have yet to experience the blessings of baptism to "Follow me in the way of righteousness and peace." Be baptized of water and the Spirit and discover your spiritual home as a fully functioning member of the body.

—

Some have continued to express concerns about how the sacrament of the Lord's Supper should be conducted. In other places, the meaning and potential power of this sacrament has

been lessened by a lack of understanding and preparation. Because of these circumstances, the following counsel is given as confirmed by the Spirit:

4

A. Serve the sacrament of the Lord's Supper to all committed followers of Christ as a visible witness of loving Christian fellowship and shared remembrance of Jesus Christ's death and resurrection. Individuals may choose whether or not to receive the emblems according to their faith and understanding in harmony with guidelines provided by the First Presidency.

B. This pastoral provision does not lessen additional meanings associated with this sacrament in the church's life. When the church gathers for Communion, highlight the opportunity for members to reaffirm their baptismal covenant, to reconcile strained relationships, and to commit together to the church's mission of promoting communities of generosity, justice, and peacefulness.

C. Explore all the ways the Lord's Supper can spiritually form the church community into a true and living expression of the life, sacrifice, resurrection, and continuing presence of Christ. Inherent in this sacrament is the divine call for the church to be a sacramental offering for the blessing, healing, and peace of creation.

—

Serious questions about moral behavior and relationships continue to arise in many nations. These issues are complex and difficult to understand outside their particular settings because of strikingly different cultural histories, customs, and understandings of scripture. For example, the issues include female submission, female genital mutilation, child brides, forced marriages, and sexual permissiveness. They include cleansing and exploitation of widows, harsh conflicts over same-gender attraction and relationships, and varying legal, religious, and social definitions of marriage, to name just a few.

Over the last several years the need to resolve various moral and justice issues has intensified and become more complicated because of the growing international diversity of the church. The church has been told in previous counsel that we have been given the struggles and joys of diversity for divine purposes (Doctrine and Covenants 162:4). In response to my prayerful pleas for light regarding God's purposes being worked out through our difficult struggles over various issues, God graciously blessed me with the following counsel:

5

It is imperative to understand that when you are truly baptized into Christ you become part of a new creation. By taking on the life and mind of Christ, you increasingly view yourselves and others from a changed perspective. Former ways of defining people by economic status, social class, sex, gender, or ethnicity no longer are primary. Through the gospel of Christ a new community of tolerance, reconciliation, unity in diversity, and love is being born as a visible sign of the coming reign of God.

6

A. As revealed in Christ, God, the Creator of all, ultimately is concerned about behaviors and relationships that uphold the worth and giftedness of all people and that protect the most vulnerable. Such relationships are to be rooted in the principles of Christ-like love, mutual respect, responsibility, justice, covenant, and faithfulness, against which there is no law.

B. If the church more fully will understand and consistently apply these principles, questions arising about responsible human sexuality; gender identities, roles, and relationships; marriage; and other issues may be resolved according to God's divine purposes. Be assured, nothing within these principles condones selfish, irresponsible, promiscuous, degrading, or abusive relationships.

C. Faced with difficult questions, many properly turn to scripture to find insight and inspiration. Search the scriptures for the Living Word that brings life, healing, and hope to all. Embrace and proclaim these liberating truths.

7

A. A worldwide prophetic church must develop cultural awareness and sensitivity to distinguish between issues that should be addressed by the World Conference and those that are best resolved nationally or in other ways.

B. Fundamental principles of ethical behavior and relationships should be addressed by the World Conference. The Conference should not decide specific policies for all nations when those decisions likely will cause serious harm in some of them.

C. However, timely resolution of pressing issues in various nations is necessary for the restoring work of the gospel to move forward with all of its potential. Therefore, let the proper World Church officers act in their callings—as already provided in church law—to create and interpret church policies to meet the needs of the church in different nations in harmony with the principles contained in this counsel.

D. Where possible and appropriate, convene national or field conferences to provide opportunities for broader dialogue, understanding, and consent. In those gatherings, let the spirit of love, justice, and truth prevail.

—

The Council of Twelve and the Council of Presidents of Seventy have given ample attention to the previous instruction calling for the greatest collaboration possible among the leading missionary quorums. Because of their diligent efforts to create even-closer relationships to strengthen the church evangelistic and community-building mission, I now am free to offer the following counsel:

8

A. The importance of evaluating and aligning ministerial roles and relationships to reach individuals and nations most effectively with the liberating truths of the gospel is always incumbent on the church.

B. For this purpose, the number of quorums of seventy and presidents of seventy may be adjusted at times to respond to evangelistic strategies in apostolic fields. The First Presidency, in concert with the Council of Twelve and the Council of Presidents of Seventy, will provide procedures for determining the number, makeup, and roles of quorums of seventy and presidents of seventy.

C. Let the evangelistic ministries of the church accelerate.

—

While finishing this counsel, I paused for a time to rest with God in prayer and meditation, seeking added confirmation and clarity. From that devoted time with God, these closing words of challenge and promise unexpectedly sprang forth and found their place in this document:

9

A. Beloved children of the Restoration, your continuing faith adventure with God has been divinely led, eventful, challenging, and sometimes surprising to you. By the grace of God, you are poised to fulfill God's ultimate vision for the church.

B. When your willingness to live in sacred community as Christ's new creation exceeds your natural fear of spiritual and relational transformation, you will become who you are called to be. The rise of Zion the beautiful, the peaceful reign of Christ, awaits your wholehearted response to the call to make and steadfastly hold to God's covenant of peace in Jesus Christ.

C. This covenant entails sacramental living that respects and reveals God's presence and reconciling activity in creation. It requires whole-life stewardship dedicated to expanding the church's restoring ministries, especially those devoted to asserting the worth of persons, protecting the sacredness of creation, and relieving physical and spiritual suffering.

D. If you truly would be Community of Christ, then embody and live the concerns and passion of Christ.

E. The challenges and opportunities are momentous. Will you remain hesitant in the shadows of your fears, insecurities, and competing loyalties? Or will you move forward in the light of your divinely instilled call and vision?

F. The mission of Jesus Christ is what matters most for the journey ahead.

—

The burdens of the prophetic office have increased dramatically since the last World Conference. However, my dedication to the church, my love for our people, and my conviction regarding the church's divine calling have not waned, but have grown stronger.

With deep trust in the spiritual competency and maturity of the church, I turn the words of this counsel over to you for prayerful consideration and continued discernment. As we continue our journey together, may the gracious Spirit that blessed me similarly bless those who seek divine affirmation of this counsel.

Stephen M. Veazey
President of the Church
Independence, Missouri
April 11, 2010

Section 165

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Preface

For three years the church prayerfully studied the words of counsel given in 2013. The Holy Spirit confirms the church would be blessed by considering this counsel for inclusion in the Doctrine and Covenants. This document is offered humbly for that purpose as an expression of our cherished principle of Continuing Revelation.

While preparing the final document, I stayed open to more divine direction that might enhance the church's understanding now or in the future. Guidance refined some sentences. In several instances, it also added content for reasons known to God.

I also considered prayerfully what portions of the words of counsel applied specifically to when they were given and did not necessarily need to be in the Doctrine and Covenants. So some sentences have been removed. Those sentences either have fulfilled their purposes, or the concepts they highlighted are expressed sufficiently elsewhere in the Doctrine and Covenants.

The testimony I offer is assurance that God, the eternal One, lovingly and patiently guides the church according to divine purposes. Let us be grateful for that guidance. May it serve as a pathway of light and hope for all who seek to follow God's will.

To the councils, quorums, and orders, to the World Conference, and to the church:

1

A. Community of Christ, a divine vision is set before you. Presented over the years through various inspired phrases and symbols, it is expressed now through initiatives in harmony with Jesus Christ's mission.

B. As a spiritual venture, boldly follow the initiatives into the heart of God's vision for the church and creation. Then, in response to growing insight about God's nature and will, continue to shape communities that live Christ's love and mission.

C. Lovingly invite others to experience the good news of new life in community with Christ. Opportunities abound in your daily lives if you choose to see them.

D. Undertake compassionate and just actions to abolish poverty and end needless suffering. Pursue peace on and for the Earth.

E. Let nothing separate you from this mission. It reveals divine intent for personal, societal, and environmental salvation; a fullness of gospel witness for creation's restoration.

F. Continue to align your priorities with local and worldwide church efforts to move the initiatives forward. Additional innovative approaches to coordinating congregational life and supporting groups of disciples and seekers are needed to address mission opportunities in a changing world.

2

A. Free the full capacity of Christ's mission through generosity that imitates God's generosity.

B. Listen to the testimonies of those responding generously. Follow your soul's yearning to come home to God's grace and generosity. Let gratitude show you the way.

C. Remember, a basic discipleship principle is growing Christ's mission through local and world mission tithes according to true capacity. Giving to other worthwhile organizations, while an important part of A Disciple's Generous Response, should not diminish or replace mission tithes.

D. Tithing is a spiritual practice that demonstrates willingness to offer every dimension of one's life to God. When defined by faith, love, and hopeful planning, including resolving unwise debt, capacity to respond becomes much greater than initially assumed.

E. Stewardship as response to the ministry of Christ is more than individual giving. It includes the generosity of congregations and jurisdictions that give to worldwide ministries of the church to strengthen community in Christ in all nations.

F. Sharing for the common good is the spirit of Zion.

3

A. More fully embody your oneness and equality in Jesus Christ. Oneness and equality in Christ are realized through the waters of baptism, confirmed by the Holy Spirit, and sustained through the sacrament of Communion. Embrace the full meaning of these sacraments and be spiritually joined in Christ as never before.

B. However, it is not right to profess oneness and equality in Christ through sacramental covenants and then to deny them by word or action. Such behavior wounds Christ's body and denies what is resolved eternally in the life, death, and resurrection of Jesus Christ.

C. You do not fully understand many interrelated processes of human creation. Through its wonderful complexity, creation produces diversity and order.

D. Be not consumed with concern about variety in human types and characteristics as you see them. Be passionately concerned about forming inclusive communities of love, oneness, and equality that reveal divine nature.

E. Oneness and equality in Christ do not mean uniformity. They mean Unity in Diversity and relating in Christ-like love to the circumstances of others as if they were one's own. They also

mean full opportunity for people to experience human worth and related rights, including expressing God-given giftedness in the church and society.

4

A. Regarding priesthood, God calls whomever God calls from among committed disciples, according to their gifts, to serve and reach all humankind.

B. Priesthood policies developed through wisdom and inspiration provide a clear way for disciples to respond to calling. They also define the difference between a sense of call as potential and the need to align one's life with principles of moral behavior and relationships that promote the well-being of the church community.

5

A. Spiritual growth and guidance enrich involvement in Christ's mission. The presiding evangelist and the Order of Evangelists, with their colleagues in ministry, should concentrate on spiritually forming communities of disciples and seekers that live deeply and generously in Christ's Spirit.

B. Offer the sacrament of evangelist blessing not only to individuals and congregations, but to families, households, and groups seeking spiritual guidance to more completely give themselves to Christ's mission. Nothing in this instruction should be construed to lessen the importance of the sacrament of evangelist blessing for individuals.

6

A. Beloved Community of Christ, do not just speak and sing of Zion. Live, love, and share as Zion: those who strive to be visibly one in Christ, among whom there are no poor or oppressed.

B. As Christ's body, lovingly and patiently bear the weight of criticism from those who hesitate to respond to the divine vision of human worth and equality in Christ. This burden and blessing is yours for divine purposes.

C. And, always remember, the way of suffering love that leads to the cross also leads to resurrection and everlasting life in Christ's eternal community of oneness and peace. Trust in this promise.

Stephen M. Veazey
president of the church
Independence, Missouri
June 6, 2016